

2023-24 INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN

2021-2026



To be the best energy hub and ecotourism destination in Southern Africa

CONTENTS

ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS.....	9
VISION, MISSION, VALUES AND SLOGAN.....	10
FOREWORD BY THE EXECUTIVE MAYOR.....	11
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY OF MUNICIPAL MANAGER.....	12
CHAPTER 1: THE PLANNING FRAMEWORK.....	14
1.1 INTRODUCTION.....	14
1.2 LEGISLATIVE BACKGROUND AND POLICY IMPERATIVES.....	20
1.3 DISTRICT DEVELOPMENT MODEL WATERBERG DISTRICT ONE PLAN.....	27
1.4 SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS.....	32
1.5 table 1: POWERS AND FUNCTIONS OF THE DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY.....	35
1.6 table 2: MUNICIPAL PRIORITIES.....	36
1.7 INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENT.....	37
1.8 PROCESS OVERVIEW.....	38
TABLE 3: 2023/2024 WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY YEAR PLANNER.....	45
TABLE 4: MEETINGS SCHEDULES FOR THE DISTRICT IDP PUBLIC PARTICIPATION STRUCTURES.	47
TABLE 5: SUMARRY OF COMMUNITY NEEDS FOR ALL LOCAL MUNICIPALITY.....	53
1.8 TABLE 6: BASIS FOR IDP REVIEW PROCESS.....	54
1.9 TABLE 7: STRATEGIC PERFORMANCE OVERVIEW.....	86
1.10 TABLE 8: PROVISION OF BASIC SERVICES.....	98
CHAPTER 2: MUNICIPAL PROFILE.....	100
2.1 DESCRIPTION OF MUNICIPAL AREA.....	100
Map 1: Waterberg as located within the Province.....	102

Map 2: Locality Map of Waterberg	103
Map 3: Geographical Map	105
Map 4: WDM Topography and Hydrology	106
Map 5: Population distribution	107
2.2 DEMOGRAPHIC PROFILE	108
TABLE 9: POPULATION SIZE	108
TABLE 10: POPULATION TRENDS AND PERCENTAGE PER MUNICIPALITY	108
TABLE 11: POPULATION PER RACE	108
TABLE 12: POPULATION AGE GROUP	108
TABLE 13: AGE DISTRIBUTION BY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND GENDER	111
TABLE 14: UNEMPLOYMENT RATES	113
TABLE 15: WORKING AGE POPULATION IN WATERBERG 2009 AND 2019 [NUMBER]	116
TABLE 16: WATERBERG POPULATION BY INCOME LEVELS	117
TABLE17: PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES	118
TABLE18: Total population OF Waterberg, Limpopo and National 2009-2019 [Numbers percentage]	119
TABLE 19: Total population - local municipalities of Waterberg District Municipality, 2009, 2014 and 2019 [Numbers percentage]	120
TABLE 20: Population projections - Waterberg, Limpopo and National Total, 2019-2024 [Numbers percentage]	121
TABLE 21: POPULATION BY POPULATION GROUP, GENDER AND AGE - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2019 [NUMBER]	123
TABLE 23: NUMBER OF HIV+ PEOPLE - WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2009-2019 [NUMBER AND PERCENTAGE]	127
Map 6: Population distribution/ density	130
Map 7: Population Change:	131
TABLE 24: BI Monthly Grant Stats	132

TABLE 25: POPULATION OF WATERBERG BY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY WALKING AND CLIMBING STAIRS DISABILITY STATUS	134
CHAPTER 3: SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS	135
3.1 SPATIAL RATIONALE	135
Map 8: Spatial Structure	135
Map 9: Settlement Patterns/Hierarchy of Settlement	136
TABLE 26: MAJOR TOWNS/SETTLEMENTS	137
TABLE 27: DISTRIBUTION OF SETTLEMENTS WITHIN THE DISTRICT	137
Map 10: Hierarchy of Settlement / Growth Points Areas	138
TABLE 28: HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT / GROWTH POINTS AREAS	139
Map 11: Hierarchy of Settlement / Growth Points Areas	140
TABLE 29: LAND USE COMPOSITION - LAND USE MANAGEMENT SCHEMES AND SDFS (WDM SDF)	141
Map 12: WDM Settled Land claims	143
TABLE 31: ILLEGAL OCCUPATION OF LAND	144
TABLE 32: INFORMAL SETTLEMENTS IN WATERBERG	144
Map 13: Informal Settlement Map	146
TABLE 33: STRATEGICALLY LOCATED LAND IN WDM	146
TABLE 34: NUMBER OF LANDFILL SITES PERMITTED AND UNLICENSED PER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY	148
TABLE 35: TYPES OF DWELLING	148
TABLE 36: LODGED CLAIMS	149
TABLE 38: LAND ACQUISITION AS AT AUGUST 2019	149
TABLE 39: ONE HOUSEHOLD ONE HECTARE PROGRAMME	150
TABLE 40: RECAPITALIZATION AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME	150
TABLE 41: SIGNING OF PLAS LEASES	151
3.2 Environmental Analysis	152
Map 14: Environmental Analysis	152

TABLE 43: AVAILABILITY OF ENVIRONMENTAL ORGANISATIONAL STRUCTURE	185
TABLE 44: WASTE FACILITIES AND WEIGHBRIDGES	189
15. Biodiversity and Conservation	192
TABLE 45: FORUMS.....	201
3.2 BASIC SERVICE AND DELIVERY	207
3.2.1 WATER ANALYSIS	207
TABLE 46: WATER RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME	207
TABLE 47: LEVELS OF DAMS IN LIMPOPO FALLING IN THE LIMPOPO WMA 1	207
Map 16: mokolo and crocodile river (west) water augmentation project – locality and phasing	208
TABLE 48: WATER SOURCES IN MUNICIPALITIES	209
TABLE 49: ACCESS TO WATER PER MUNICIPALITY	210
TABLE 50: WATER BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY	211
3.2.2 SANITATION ANALYSIS	212
TABLE 51: ACCESS TO SANITATION PER MUNICIPALITY	212
TABLE 52: FREE BASIC SERVICES	213
3.2.3 ENERGY AND ELECTRICITY	216
TABLE 53: ENERGY FOR COOKING, HEATING AND LIGHTING FOR WATERBERG MUNICIPALITY	216
TABLE 54: TYPES OF ENERGY SOURCES USED BY HOUSEHOLD	217
TABLE 55: ACCESS TO ELECTRICITY	218
TABLE 56: HOUSEHOLD ACCESS TO ELECTRICITY	218
TABLE 57: ELECTRIFICATION BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY	219
3.2.4 ROADS AND STORM WATER.....	220
TABLE 58: ROAD LENGTH AND SURFACE	220
Map 17: Classification of Roads Network	221
TABLE 59: WDM MAJOR ROADS IN DISTRICT GROWTH POINTS.....	222
TABLE 60: ROUTES CLASSIFICATION IN THE MUNICIPALITY	222

TABLE 61: BACKLOGS ON ROADS, STORM WATER AND ANY OTHER RELEVANT INFORMATION REGARDING ROADS AND STORM WATER.	223
Map 18: Road Freight Corridors.....	224
3.2.5 WASTE MANAGEMENT	225
TABLE 62: REFUSE REMOVAL BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY	226
TABLE 63: WATER, ELECTRICITY SANITATION AND REFUSE REMOVALS BACKLOGS	226
TABLE 64: ACCESS TO REFUSE REMOVAL SERVICES	227
TABLE 65: BELA-BELA NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS IN RECIEIVING WASTE COLLECTION AS DEFINED BY THE WASTE COLLECTION SERVICE STANDARDS, MUNICIPAL DATA	228
3.2.6 PUBLIC TRANSPORT	229
TABLE 66: PUBLIC TRANSPORT CORRIDORS	229
TABLE 67: TAXI OPERATIONS IN WDM	230
TABLE 68: BUS OPERATIONS IN WDM	231
Map 19: Networks & Corridors	234
Map 20: Rail Facilities.....	235
3.3 SOCIAL ANALYSIS	236
3.3.1 HOUSING	236
TABLE 69: WDM HOUSING DEMAND/BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY	237
3.3.2 EDUCATION	238
TABLE 70: SCHOOLS AND LEARNER ENROLMENT PER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY (2020)	241
TABLE 71: POPULATION OF WATERBERG BY MUNICIPALITY AND HIGHEST EDUCATION LEVEL	243
TABLE 72: ENVIRONMENTAL STRUCTURES IN WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	245
Map 21: 2016 Education - No Schooling.....	246
Map 22: Primary and Secondary schools.....	248
TABLE 73: WATERBERG MUNICIPALITY - NUMBER OF SCHOOLS	249
TABLE 74: DISTRICTS PERFORMANCE	249
3.3.3 HEALTH AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT	250

TABLE 75: TOP 5 WORST PERFORMING VITAL IDEAL CLINIC ELEMENTS IN PHC FACILITIES	252
TABLE 76: SOCIAL SERVICES–HEALTH FACILITIES	252
TABLE 77: EMS (STATIONS).....	253
TABLE 78: EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT	254
TABLE 79: DROP IN CENTRES	255
TABLE 80: COMMUNITY NUTRITION CENTRES	255
3.3.4 SAFETY AND SECURITY	256
TABLE 81: POLICE STATIONS.....	256
TABLE 82: WATERBERG DISTRICT POLICE STATIONS	256
TABLE 83: WATERBERG CRIME STATS SIMPLIFIED	256
TABLE 84: WATERBERG CRIME STATS SIMPLIFIED	257
TABLE 85: CRIME OVERVIEW	259
3.3.5 SPORT, ART AND CULTURE	260
TABLE 86: SPORTS FACILITIES PER MUNICIPALITY	260
TABLE 87: MUNICIPALITY HALLS AND PARKS	261
TABLE 88: DISTRICT WIDE LIBRARY INFRASTRUCTURES	263
TABLE 89: CEMETRY.....	264
CHAPTER 4: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT ANALYSIS	265
Map 23: Geographic spread of minerals in Waterberg	275
TABLE 90: MINERAL GEOGRAPHIC SPREAD	276
Map 25: Protected Areas	282
TABLE 91: AGRICULTURE PRODUCTION AREA.....	283
Map 26: Vegetable Production Areas	284
Map 28: Groundnuts and Sorghum Production Areas	287
TABLE 92: SUMMARY OF GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF CROP PRODUCTION.....	288
Map 29: Citrus Production Areas	289

Map 30: Red and White Meat Production Areas	290
CHAPTER 5 – FINANCIAL ANALYSIS.....	298
5.1 REVENUE MANAGEMENT & BILLING	298
5.2 EXPENDITURE & CASHFLOW MANAGEMENT	298
5.3 FINANCIAL REPORT.....	299
TABLE 98: STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE.....	299
5.4 FINANCIAL POLICIES, STRATEGIES & SYSTEMS	300
5.5 MTREF ALLOCATION	301
5.6 AUDIT	302
5.7 AUDIT OPINION	303
TABLE 97: AUDIT OUTCOME TREND AND MATTERS AFFECTING THE AUDIT REPORT FOR THE PAST 5 YEARS [2017/18-2021/22].....	303
5.8 AUDIT OUTCOME TRENDS FOR WATERBERG DISTRICT-WIDE FOR THE PAST 5 YEARS [2017/18-2021/22]	303
5.9 AUDITED STATEMENTS	304
5.10 2021/22 AUDIT ACTION PLAN REPORT.....	305
5.11 RISK AND INTERNAL CONTROL	316
5.12 FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT & VIABILITY: KEY ISSUES & CHALLENGES	318
CHAPTER 6 – GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION ANALYSIS	319
6.1 FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPAL COUNCIL AND COMMITTEES.....	319
6.2 FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPAL PUBLIC ACCOUNTS COMMITTEE, WARD COMMITTEES and cdws	320
6.3 INTERGOVERNMENTAL RELATIONS (IGR).....	320
CHAPTER 7 – INSTITUTIONAL ANALYSIS	322
7.1 INSTITUTIONAL STRUCTURE	322
7.3 VACANCIES RATE AS AT 31 MARCH 2022.....	337
7.4 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (PMS).....	340
7.5 SKILLS DEVELOPMENT	341

TABLE 100: TRAINING NEEDS IDENTIFIED	342
TABLE 102: NUMBER OF OFFICIAL CAPACITATED IN TERMS OF THE WORKPLACE SKILL PLAN.....	343
7.6 SUCCESSION PLAN AND RETENTION PLAN	344
7.7 COMPLAINTS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM	344
7.8 WDM SWOT ANALYSIS	345
CHAPTER 8 – CROSS CUTTING ISSUES (DISASTER MANAGEMENT)	348
8.1 DISASTER RISK ANALYSIS	348
8.2 MUNICIPAL PRIORITization.....	349
CHAPTER 9 - STRATEGIC PHASE.....	350
9.1 STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	350
9.2 OPERATIONAL STRATEGIES.....	353
9.3 DEVELOPMENTAL STRATEGIES AND STRATEGIC ALIGNMENT	358
9.4 FIVE YEAR DISTRICT WIDE STRATEGIC OUTCOMES & TARGETS.....	361
9.5 2022/2023 INSTITUTIONAL SERVICE DELIVERY INDICATORS AND TARGET	366
CHAPTER 10 - PROJECT PHASE	374
10.1 WATERBERG district 2022/23 to 2024/25 projects	374
10.2 CATALYTIC PROJECTS AND/OR PROGRAMMES FOR IMPLEMENTATION WITHIN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY.....	375
10.3 waterberg national one plan catalytic projects	376
10.4 waterberg proposed project	377
10.5 2023/2024 SECTOR DEPARTMENTS PROJECTS	381
10.6 WATERBERG – BUDGET SUMMARY	390
CHAPTER 11 - INTERGRATION PHASE	390
11.1 STATUS OF SECTOR PLANS	390
11.2 STATUS OF SECTOR PLANS AND YEAR REVIEWED PER MUNICIPALITY	392
CHAPTER 12 - APPROVAL PHASE.....	395

ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

IDPIntegrated Development Plan
WDMWaterberg District municipality
NDPNational Development plan
LDPLLimpopo Development Plan
GPNPCGreen Paper on National Planning Commission
GOAGuide to Outcome Approach
IGRInter – Governmental Relations Framework
PFMAPublic Finance Management Act 1 of 1999
NPFNational Planning Framework
RDPReconstruction and Development Programme
LGDPLocal Government Development Program
SPLUMASpatial Planning and Land Use Management Act
SDFSpatial Development Framework
PGDSProvincial Growth and Development Strategy
NSDPNational Spatial Development Perspective
CoGHSTADepartment of Cooperative Governance Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs
MFMAMunicipal Finance Management Act, No 56 of 2003
MTEFMedium term Expenditure framework
MTSFMedium Term Strategic Framework
MDGsMillennium Development Goals
SDBIPService Delivery Budget Implementation Plan
PMSPerformance Management System
ITPIntegrated Transport Plan
EMPEnvironmental Management Plan
WSDPWater Services Development Plan
WSPWater Services Provider
MSAMunicipal Systems Act, No 32 of 2000
SIPStrategic Infrastructure Project
NGONon-Governmental Organization
CBOCommunity Based Organization
ToRTerms of Reference
PPPPublic Private Partnership
SMMESmall, Medium and Macro Enterprises
LMLocal Municipality
CPIConsumer Price Index
KPAKey Performance Area
KPIKey Performance Indicator
LEDLocal Economic Development
EPWPExpanded Public Works Programme
DWASDepartment of Water Affairs and Sanitation
CIPComprehensive Investment Plan
B2BBack to Basics



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

VISION, MISSION, VALUES AND SLOGAN

VISION : In line with the National Development Plan, the strategic vision of the Waterberg District Municipality was revised during the strategic planning session.

The **Vision** of Waterberg District Municipality is:

“To be the best energy hub and ecotourism destination in Southern Africa”

MISSION: The strategic **Missions** speak about what the purpose of the Waterberg District Municipality is. The Mission is:

“To invest in a constituency of talented human capital who are motivated and innovative to build a sustainable economy in the field of energy, minerals and eco-tourism for the benefit of all our communities.”

VALUES: Values are deeply rooted principles or standards which are universally accepted among the Employees, Councillors and Community members of a municipality and which explicitly guide what they believe, their attitude toward service delivery, and ultimately, how they behave.

The values that drive the attitudes and behaviour of politicians and administration of the Waterberg District Municipality are confirmed as:

➤ Honesty ➤ Respect ➤ Fairness ➤ Integrity	➤ Accountability ➤ Accessibility ➤ Effectiveness ➤ Ubuntu
--	---

SLOGAN: Considering all the developmental growth needs and opportunities in the district the slogan of Waterberg District Municipality, remains very relevant, and it is therefore proposed that the slogan remains the same. The slogan of Waterberg District Municipality is:



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

FOREWORD BY THE EXECUTIVE MAYOR

The purpose of the IDP is to map out the core issues that affect our people and to collectively agree on the manner in which each one of those aspirations are going to be addressed.

The effectiveness of the development of the IDP aims to bring about the desired developmental objectives of stakeholders and communities alike. The results of the process are found in a planned, measured and coordinated strategy, which focuses on monitoring, adherence to compliance in respect of regulations, identification of strengths and weaknesses in ensuring that undesired community exasperation is mitigated.

Additionally, the IDP process remains a strategic governance mechanism which enables the municipality to interface with communities and stakeholders on their needs.

In this context the IDP has to be construed and applied. In the preceding financial year, numerous achievements in the implementation of the District Development Model as introduced by the President were realised. The intergovernmental relations was able to strengthen which led to private sectors committing and investing more resources to catalytic projects identified within the district.

We can mention in the same vein that whilst there is immense progress which also led to the crafting and adoption of the One Plan by Council, more work still lays ahead in terms of addressing all the needs and expectations of the District Development Model.

Government departments, both provincial and national are still encouraged to come on board in a bid to avoid fragmented planning and implementation of projects and programmes.

It is critically important to acknowledge our consciousness towards the fact that it cannot be business as usual; our people have waited so long for us to be developmental in our quest to provide services. This is the reason why our proposed Budget and IDP are structured in such a way that will turn around our business models to be in consistent with the national guidelines to ensure hastening of service delivery to our communities.

It is worth-noting that the Waterberg District Municipality obtained a Clean Audit for the 2020/21 financial year, which is a clear indication of absolute compliance, dedication, commitment, hard work and team spirit displayed by both the administration and political leadership. Special thanks to the Municipal Manager, Chief Financial Officer, Management team, staff and our predecessor council for once again putting Waterberg on the map.

The IDP we presenting this year is a result of yet another extensive consultative processes by all stakeholders in local government. It is yet a result of the high level Strategic Planning Session which turned as a theatre of planning and gave effect to the developmental needs and strategies to address same.

We are committed to the District Development Model as the Waterberg District Municipality and very optimistic that with its implementation, our priorities will consistently be addressed in line with the municipality's five years vision.

CLLR S.M. MATABOGE
EXECUTIVE MAYOR



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY OF MUNICIPAL MANAGER

Waterberg District Municipality (WDM) as a category C municipality comprises of five local municipalities which is Bela-Bela, Lephalale, Thabazimbi, Mogalakwena and Modimolle-Mookgophong. The Waterberg District is located within the south western part of the Limpopo Province. It is adjacent to the South African border with Botswana to the west and is bordered by the North West, Gauteng and Mpumalanga provinces to the south. Limpopo's Sekhukhune and Capricorn District Municipalities border the WDM to the east. Informed by its powers and functions, it cannot provide basic services but it coordinates support in line with section 88(2) of the municipal system act to its local's municipalities. Within its scope of powers and functions WDM provide disaster management and firefighting services.

The draft of the 2023/2024 was initiated through the adoption of IDP framework /process plan which served as blueprint for the development and review of the Integrated Development Plan. The IDP is deliberately called the principal strategy since all scarce resources should be used to implement it successfully. The IDP is a management tool to assist municipalities in achieving their developmental objectives and fulfil its mandates as per section 152 of the constitution of the Republic of South Africa.

The development of IDP cannot be creditable if it excludes public participation, where various stakeholders will be given opportunity to make meaningful contribution and inputs before can be adopted and the involvement of various stakeholders was given the deserving attention. The complexity of the developmental issues demands that the various stakeholders should not only identify challenges but also make concerted efforts in addressing those challenges collectively as some of challenges are beyond borders of local government legal mandate. To coordinate the inputs at the IDP Reps forums this convened to give the stakeholders an opportunity to find their interests in the IDP document of the municipalities. The three spheres of government must not only deliberates and adopt the Integrated approach towards development but also inform one another of programme in the interests of corporative governance.

Over the past the past Five years IDP documents of the district municipality was honoured with a highly credible rated label which label must be defended at all costs. A helping hand was even extended to all local Municipalities evidence by the fact that all Local Municipalities including Waterberg District Municipalities, their IDP was rated high and aligns for 2020/2021 MEC IDP assessment and is only District achieved 100%. This makes them to be the best District in the province items of IDP Compilation and this milestone achievement must be defended and sustained. This achievement and outcome demonstrate that, we having most hardworking, Dedicated and competent IDP teams in our District and its Locals as we having Five years defending this great milestone achievement.

On 26 November 2019, the President launches District Development model at Lephalale local Municipality which known as KHAULEZA. The primary Objective of this model is to address the silos in planning and improve the coherence and impact of government service delivery with focus on 44 District and 8 Metros around in the country. The Waterberg District Municipality was identified as the one of the pilot Municipality together with OR Tambo District Municipality because of its mining activities and opportunities. This model will refocused planning at the level of District and strengthen the corporative governance between National, Provincial and Local Government through ONE DISTRICT, ONE PLAN, ONE BUDGET AND ONE APPROACH.

It's been three years since the introduction of the DDM and the District has tabled the ONE PLAN on 27 May 2021 for the approval. The One Plan is an intergovernmental plan that outlines a common vision and desired future outcomes in our District space. It sets out a long term strategic framework (25-30 years) to guide investment and service delivery in our District, this One Plan will bring together all spheres of government, the private sector and civil society required them to both agree on a long term vision for Waterberg. The Waterberg HUB has been established to facilitate intergovernmental join planning and providing a functional network of support as key institutional mechanism to operationalize DDM which is aimed at improving Cooperative Governance and building a capable, Ethical developmental state. The review process of One Plan was launched by Cogta on 25 June 2022, where all District

Municipalities in conjunction with their Locals are expected to go back to their drawing board to redefine their long term goals during the review of One Plan. Waterberg District though the support of the DDM Hub have concluded the process and reviewed One Plan will be noted by council when it note the draft 2023/2024 IDP.

As Waterberg District Municipality we have observed positive respond by National, provincial and private companies in responding to the Presidents call to extend their hands to respond to DDM by investing in our Municipality though infrastructure Development and capacity development. We further observed the high level of appetite in the affairs of the local government by private sector and civil society where we have recorded high number of attendees during our strategic planning. The stakeholders such as United Nations and its urgencies, Common Wealth Local Government Associations, Public Private Growth Initiatives, National Business Initiatives and TAMDEVE and Development Bank of South Africa play pivotal role in ensuring that the dream of DDM is achieved.

The response of mining houses such as Anglo American Platinum Mine, Exxaro Mine and Ivan Plats Platinum Mine was amazing as they pledge funding for major infrastructure projects both Lephalale and Mogalakwena where they operate and further fund some of capacity development programme in our District.

We further observe major Universities such as University of Pretoria, University of Limpopo, University of South Africa and University of the Witwatersrand partnering with District Municipality on the number programme and projects. Today as WDM we are receiving number of National Department in our space bringing very innovative and credible programme aim to capacitate our District and its Locals

These stakeholders mentioned above managed bring full bucket of programme such as

- Assist WDM with development of District Economic Discovery Plan
- Leadership training for both councillors and administrative staff and delegates from private sector and civil society formations
- Mentoring programme for senior and middle managers from District Municipality and Locals utilizing the retirees on a mentorship/technical experts
- And many more that we can not count.

Having regard to all these efforts and iniatives, WDM managed to achieve Clean Audit opinion for the second time. This achievement must be translated to successful achievement of implementation of 2023/2024 IDP. The consistent performance of Municipal Manager, Senior Managers and entire staff component will remain secret weapon to achieve strategic dream, TO BE BEST ENERGY HUB AND ECOTOURISM DESTINATION IN SOUTH AFRICA.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

CHAPTER 1: THE PLANNING FRAMEWORK

1.1 INTRODUCTION

The Integrated Development Planning (IDP) is a process through which Municipalities prepare strategic development plans for a five-year period. An IDP is one of the key tools for Local Government to cope with its developmental role and seeks to arrive at decisions on issues such as Municipal budgets, land management, promotion of local economic development, and institutional transformation in a consultative, systematic and strategic manner.

According to the Municipal Systems Act (MSA) of 2000, all municipalities have to undertake a process to produce IDP's. As the IDP is a legislative requirement it has a legal status and it supersedes all other plans that guide development at local government level. The budget is the annual plan in rands and cents that sets out the amounts each Department can spend on specific pre-determined items. The legislation governing the drawing up of the budget is the Municipal Finance Management Act (No. 56 of 2003). The relevant Sections of the Act setting out the different timeframes are as follows:

Section 21(1)(b) – The Mayor must at least 10 months before the start of the budget year 1 September table in the Council a time schedule outlining key deadlines for:-

- (i) The preparation, tabling and approval of the annual budget;
- (ii) The annual review of:-
 - The integrated development plan in terms of section 34 of the Systems Act and
 - The budget related policies
- (iii) The tabling and adoption of any amendments to the integrated development plan and the budget related policies.

Section 16(2) – The Mayor must table the annual budget at a Council meeting at least 90 days before the start of the budget year (1 April).

Section 24(1) – The Council must at least 30 days before the start of the budget year (1 June) consider approval of the annual budget.

Section 24(2) (a) – The annual budget must be approved before the start of the budget year (1 July).

The Municipal Finance Management Act provides for an adjustment budget which is a review of the current budget and would normally take place mid-way through the budget cycle i.e. December or January.

The Framework Plan

The function of the Framework plan is to ensure that the process of the district IDP and local IDP's are mutually linked and can inform each other ensuring co-operative governance as contained in section 41 of the Constitution. The Framework Plan is a co-ordination tool for the district to ensure that interrelated parallel planning processes within the district are coordinated to obtain maximum benefit for the district as a whole.

Various processes within the IDP should be smoothly interlinked to ensure optimal effectiveness as well as ensure this agreement on joint time frameworks that need to be reached between the various local municipalities and the district municipality.

- The District Municipality is in charge of the Framework Plan, which has to be agreed upon by all local municipalities and will be used by the local municipalities in finalising their Process Plans.

- The District Municipality will, through inter-municipal IDP Management Committee (MC) monitor the compliance of the actual IDP process of all municipalities with the Framework Plan. This will ensure that the District Municipality will be in a position to undertake corrective action in time if a Local Municipality fail to adhere to the Framework Plan and the timeframes contained therein.
- Each Local Municipality will, however, be responsible for monitoring its own process plan and ensure that the Framework Plan is being followed as agreed.
- (Bela-Bela Local Municipality(LIM366),Lephalale Local Municipality(LIM362), Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality(LIM368), Mogalakwena Local Municipality(LIM367), Thabazimbi Local Municipality(LIM361). (Each municipality has an IDP Manager to steer the local IDP process within that municipality.)

Framework Programme

This process is dynamic and could be adapted to accommodate the consultation process which is circumstantial of nature. The total programme spans over an expected ten (10) month period and has been categorised as:

- Phase 0 – Preparation
- Phase 1 – Analysis
- Phase 2 – Strategies
- Phase 3 – Projects
- Phase 4 – Integration
- Phase 5 – Approval

MECHANISMS AND PROCEDURES FOR ALIGNMENT AND PARTICIPATION

OVERVIEW

Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000(4, 5), requires the IDP review process to involve an intensive and structured public and stakeholder's participation process. The aspect of public participation has been entrenched in the constitution and chapter 4 of the Municipal Systems Act as a legislative requirement. Participation by interested parties ensures that IDP addresses real issues that are experienced by communities within the local municipality.

The existing IDP Representative Forum will continue to be used as a mechanism for community and stakeholder participation. IDP representative forum meetings will be held four times per financial year at the District level, but however local municipalities ward conferences, consultation, imbizo's, and Representative Forum will be used by both District and Local Municipalities to deepen community and stakeholder participation.

Due to the regulations highlighted above the dates on the Framework/Process Plan may not be held as scheduled. Other mechanisms such as Social media platforms and Website will be used as a form of consultation.

A. Mechanisms and procedures for alignment

Alignment is at two levels, horizontal and vertical. Largely the two levels influence each other. Though one can be done independent from each other, if this is done, a clear picture of what is happening will not be achieved. The strategy that we are going to follow applies to both horizontal alignments between the District and Local Municipalities, and vertical, between the

Municipalities, the Province and the National Departments and Parastatals. The alignment that is mentioned in here between Municipalities on the one hand involves ensuring that their planning activities and processes are co-ordinated and addressed jointly.

On the other hand, alignment between Local Government and other spheres of government as well as Parastatals or service providers ensures that the IDP is in line with National and Provincial Policies and Strategies so that it is considered for the allocation of departmental budgets and conditional grants. The District IDP should reflect the Integrated Planning in its IDP in which both Locals and Sector Departments' plans find an aligned expression in the document.

B. Management of alignment

For both alignment types, Horizontal and Vertical, the main responsibility lies with the District Municipality. The role of the IDP Manager at the District level is of utmost importance. IDP unit and external facilitators could be used to support the alignment process. However, the provincial department of local government and office of the Premier play an important role as co-ordinator to ensure alignment above District level and between Districts and Departments within the Province.

C. Functions and context for public participation

Four major functions can be aligned with the public participation process namely:

- Needs orientation;
- Appropriateness of solutions;
- Community ownership;
- Empowerment;
- Performance Monitoring

In the preparation of the IDP/Budget/PMS, the public participation process has to be institutionalised in order to ensure all residents have an equal right to participate.

Mechanisms for participation

i. IDP/Budget/PMS Representatives Forum (RF)

This Forum will represent all stakeholders and will be as inclusive as possible. Efforts will be made to bring additional organisations into the Representatives Forum (RF) and ensure their continued participation throughout the process. The Representatives Forum will meet as indicated in the attached programme.

- The first RF meeting will involve a presentation of the Process Plan as well as a Gap analysis identifying areas to be addressed in the IDP/Budget Process.
- The other two RF workshops will be held to provide feedback on the IDP/Budget/PMS Process as well as to acquire input from RF members on the Sector Plans and draft Budget.
- Ad-hoc RF meetings will be called as and when needed to inform the PMS Implementation process ie. Setting of targets etc.
- Inputs will be invited via the various Ward Committee meetings and Traditional Authority meetings in conjunction with the respective Local Municipality.

ii. Imbizos / Roadshows

This is an initiative that was undertaken during the consultation process of the draft Waterberg IDP and Budget (2020/21), whereby the Mayor and Municipal Officials at the District and Local Municipal level met with residents in the municipality to present and discuss the draft IDPs and Budgets of the District and Local Municipality. These meetings are widely publicised via the media and will be continued during the preparation process, held jointly (the District joining the Local Municipalities) in every public session for support and integration purpose.

Various Fora

This is an ongoing consultative process and involves the assimilation of issues raised at the various Fora established at the District and Local level which range from Water Forums, Summits to Community Based meetings.

Media

Local newspapers will be used to inform the community of the progress with the IDP/Budget/PMS process. A notice will be submitted to the local newspaper on the initiation and completion of the IDP/Budget/PMS process inviting stakeholder participation and inviting comments on the Draft Plan.

Information Booklets

At the completion of each of the Sector Plans, as well as the IDP/Budget/PMS, an information booklet will be prepared in the two dominant languages, namely Northern Sotho and English and consist of a summary of the IDP/Budget/PMS. The members of the Representative Forum, Officials and Councillors will be given copies of these information booklets and will assist in the distribution of the booklets. This should include some training on the content of the booklets to make them more meaningful to the general public. Waterberg District Municipality has included Braille in order to accommodate the people living with disability (blind) to have access to the IDP document.

Virtual Platforms and Social Media

Facebook, Twitter, Instagram and Whatsapp, Zoom and Microsoft teams

Virtual Platform

Sessions might held in a Hybrid form or total virtually.

Website

Waterberg District Municipality and Local Municipal Website

PRINCIPLES FOR MONITORING OF THE PROCESS PLAN AND AMENDMENT OF THE FRAMEWORK

It is expected of the District and all the Local Municipalities **to adhere to the timeframes as set out in the programme** above. Any Municipality that is not able to meet the deadline should timeously report to the IDP Manager at the District. At the same length, if the District is not going to be able to meet a deadline, the IDP Manager should inform the Municipalities on time. This is the principle that should also be adhered and respected by all Municipalities including the District.

In terms of monitoring, Municipalities would be expected to submit and make a presentation to the District Management Committee (DMC) which is comprised of all the IDP Managers within the District. That is, the IDP managers of Bela-Bela, Modimolle-Mookgophong, Mogalakwena, Thabazimbi, and Lephalale Local Municipalities. The DMC will hold its meeting as per the above schedule.

If it is clear that more than half of the municipalities are not going to be able to meet the set deadlines as per the above schedule, the DMC will decide on whether to change or amend the Framework to suite the circumstances. Furthermore, a Municipality may request that the Framework be amended. The DMC will deliberate on such request and make a decision. However, the due date for final approval by Municipal Councils will not be compromised.

The main roles and responsibilities allocated to each of the role players is set out in the following table:

Executive Mayor	Manage the drafting of the IDP; Assign responsibilities in this regard to the Municipal Manager; Submit the draft Framework Plan and Process Plan to the Council for adoption; Submit the draft IDP to the Council for adoption and approval; Preparation of Framework Plan; Preparation of the Process Plan;
Municipal Manager	Day-to-day management and coordination of the IDP process in terms of time, resources and people, and ensuring: The involvement of all relevant role-players, especially officials; That the timeframes are being adhered to; That the planning process is horizontally and vertically aligned and complies with national and provincial requirements; That conditions for participation are provided; and That the outcomes are documented. Chairing the IDP Steering Committee;



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Chairing the IDP Steering Committee:

IDP Steering Committee The IDP Steering Committee comprises of a technical working team of dedicated officials who support the Municipal Manager /Strategic Manager to ensure a smooth planning process. The Municipal Manager is responsible for the process but often delegates functions to the officials that form part of the Steering Committee. Chairperson: Municipal Manager Secretariat: The secretariat for this function is provided by the IDP Members: Heads of Departments (HODs) The IDP Steering Committee is responsible for the following: The IDP Steering Committee comprises of a technical working team of dedicated officials who support the Municipal Manager /Strategic Manager to ensure a smooth planning process. The Municipal Manager is responsible for the process but often delegates functions to the officials that form part of the Steering Committee. Chairperson: Municipal Manager Secretariat: The secretariat for this function is provided by the IDP Members: Heads of Departments (HODs) IDP Steering Committee The IDP Steering Committee is responsible for the following: Commission research studies; Consider and comment on: Inputs from subcommittee(s), cluster teams; Inputs from provincial sector departments and support providers. Process, summarise and draft outputs; Make recommendations to the Representative Forum; Prepare, facilitate and minute meetings Prepare and submit reports to the IDP Representative Forum	
IDP Representative Forum	The IDP Representative Forum comprises of WDM and its local municipalities, representatives from sector departments, parastatal bodies, NGOs, business people, traditional leaders, and other interested organized bodies. Chairperson: The Executive Mayor or a nominee Secretariat The secretariat for this function is provided by the IDP Unit Membership:
District IDP Management Committee(MC)	Invitations are submitted to the same members as the previous year, including the representatives of the consultative for a Monitor, evaluate progress & provide feedback. Provide technical guidance to IDP process at district level. Ensure and maintain Alignment.

	Standardise the planning process. Recommends corrective measures
Social, Institutional & Transformation and Infrastructure & LED Clusters, Climate change Committee	Ensure both vertical and horizontal alignment Integrated planning and implementation co-ordination
Government Departments	Provide data and information. Budget guidelines. Alignment of budgets with the IDP

1.2 LEGISLATIVE BACKGROUND AND POLICY IMPERATIVES

POLICIES AND LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORKS

BINDING LEGISLATION, POLICIES AND PLANNING REQUIREMENTS AT NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL LEVEL

National Legislation

- The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, (Act 108 of 1996)

Local Government

- Local Government: Transition Act Second Amendment Act, (Act 97 of 1996)
- Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, (Act 27 of 1998)
- Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, (Act 117 of 1998) and its amendments.
- Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, (Act 32 of 2000)
- Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, (Act 56 of 2003)
- Local Government: Property Rates Act, (Act 6 of 2004)
- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, (Act 13 of 2005)
- Promotion of Access to Information Act (Act 2 of 2000)
- White paper on local government, 1998
- Towards a policy on integrated development planning, 1998
- White paper on municipal service partnership, 2000
- Policy framework on municipal international relations, 1999

Finance

- Division of Revenue Act (Act 1 of 2007)
- Public Finance Management Act (Act 2 of 1999)

Land and Agriculture

- Development Facilitation Act, (Act 67 of 1995)
- Land use management Bill, 2001
- White paper on South African land reform, 1997
- Green paper on Development and Planning, 1997
- White paper on Agriculture, 1995
- Communal Land Rights Act, (Act 11 of 2004)

Transport

- National Land Transport Bill, 1999
- National Land Transport Transitional Act, 1999
- Moving South Africa, September 1998
- Moving South Africa, the Action Agenda, 1999
- White paper on National Transport Policy, 1996

Housing

- Housing Act, (Act 107 of 1997)

Water Affairs and Forestry

- Water Services Act, (Act 108 of 1997)
- National Water Act, (Act 36 of 1998)
- National Water Amendment Act, (Act 45 of 1999)
- White Paper in Water Supply and Sanitation, 1994
- White Paper on a National Water Policy for South Africa, 1997



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

Provincial Policies

- Limpopo Employment Growth and Development Plan
- Limpopo Spatial Rationale

National Policies

- Reconstruction and development programme (RDP), 1994
- Growth, Employment and Redistribution (GEAR); 1996
- Urban Development Framework, 1997
- Rural Development Framework, 1996
- Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiatives for South Africa (ASGISA **Natural environment**)
- Environmental Conservation Act, (Act 73 of 1989)
- National Environmental Management Act, (Act 107 of 1998)
- National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, (Act 39 of 2004)
- National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, (Act 57 of 2003)
- National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act, (Act 10 of 2004)
- White paper on integrated Pollution and Waste Management, 2000
- White paper on the Conservation and Sustainable use of South Africa's Biological Diversity, 1997
- White Paper on an Environmental Policy for South Africa, 1998
- National Forest Act (1998)
- Covid 19 Regulations 25 March 2020 - 43147

Tourism

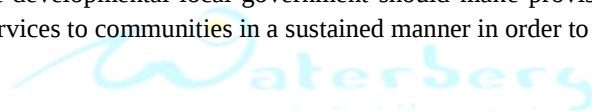
White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism, 1996 Tourism in Gear, 1997

A. POLICY AND LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORK

IDP is a management tool for assisting municipalities in achieving their developmental mandates. Every municipality is required by law to develop and adopt its IDP through the legal framework provided. The following pieces of legislations outline the development and implementation of the IDP.

A.1. CONSTITUTION OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA (Act 108 of 1996)

Section 151 of the Constitution, states that developmental local government should make provision for a democratic and accountable government for communities. It also encourages municipalities to ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustained manner in order to promote social and economic development.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Local government must promote a safe and healthy environment and encourage community involvement in matters of local government such as municipal transport, municipal health services, municipal roads, and municipal parks and recreation. Section 152 of the Constitution says that local government should provide democratic and accountable government for local communities. It should ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner, promote a safe and healthy environment as well as encourage the involvement of communities and community organizations in matters of local government. Section 153 of the Constitution states that each municipality should structure and manage its administration, budgeting, and planning processes to give priority to the basic needs of the community and to promote the social and economic development of the community. Municipalities should participate in national and provincial programmes and infrastructure development programmes. Section 153 of the Constitution also encourages municipalities to involve communities in their affairs.

A.2. WHITE PAPER ON TRANSFORMING PUBLIC SERVICE DELIVERY (BATHO PELE WHITE PAPER OF 1997)

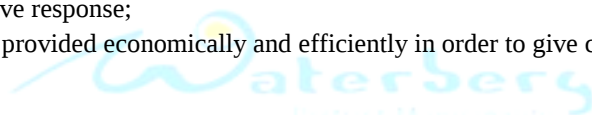
The paper flows from the White Paper on the Transformation on Public Service (1995). In terms of the White Paper, transforming service delivery is identified as one of government's priority areas. The White Paper is primarily about how public services are provided, and specifically about the efficiency and effectiveness of the way in which services are delivered. It "seeks to introduce a fresh approach to service delivery, an approach which puts pressure on systems, procedures, attitudes and behaviour within the Public Service and reorients them in the customer's favour, an approach which puts the people first". The introduction of the concept of Batho Pele, which means putting people first, provides the following eight service delivery principles in an attempt to ensure that the people, as customers to the public institutions, come first.

FURTHERMORE, THE ADOPTION OF THE CONCEPT "CUSTOMER" IMPLIES:

Listening to their views and taking account of them in making decisions about what services are to be provided;
Treating them with consideration and respect;
Making sure that the promised level and quality of services is always of the highest standard; and
Responding swiftly and sympathetically when standards of service fall below the promised standard.

In giving effect to the notion of treating the recipients of government services as customers, the White Paper articulates that public sector, including the local government sphere, should be governed by the following ethos (principles):

Consultation: citizens should be consulted about the level and quality of the public service they receive and wherever possible, should be given a choice about the services that are offered;
Service Standards: Citizens should be told what level and quality of public services they would receive so that they are aware of what to expect;
Access: All citizens should have equal access to the services to which they are entitled;
Courtesy: Citizens should be treated with courtesy and consideration; Information: Citizens should be given full, accurate information about the public services that are entitled to receive;
Openness and transparency: Citizens should be told how the national and provincial departments are run, how much they cost, who is in charge;
Redress: If the promised standard of service is not delivered, citizens should be offered an apology, a full explanation and a speedy and effective remedy, when complaints are made, citizens should receive a sympathetic, positive response;
Value for money: Public services should be provided economically and efficiently in order to give citizens the best possible value for money.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

A.3. WHITE PAPER ON LOCAL GOVERNMENT (1998)

The White Paper on Local Government (1998) paper views that Integrated Development Planning as a way of achieving developmental government. The Integrated Development Planning intends to:

- Align scarce resources around agreed policy objectives;
- Ensure integration between sectors with local government;
- Enable alignment between provincial and local government and
- Ensure transparent interaction between municipalities and residents, making local government accountable (RSA, 1998, 18).

The paper establishes a basis for developmental local government, in which, “local government is committed to working with citizens and groups within the community to find sustainable ways to meet their social, economic and material needs and improve the quality of their lives”. It also encourages public consultation on policy formulation and in the monitoring and evaluation of decision – making and implementation.

A.4. MUNICIPAL SYSTEMS ACT (Act 32 of 2000, as amended)

The Act regulates the IDP. It requires the municipality to undertake developmentally oriented planning so as to ensure that it strives to achieve the objectives of local government set out in Section 152 and 153 of the Constitution. Section 25 (1) requires the Municipal Council, within a prescribed period after the start of its elected term, to adopt a single, inclusive and strategic plan for the development of the municipality which:

- Links, integrates, co – ordinates and takes into account proposals for the development of the municipality;
- Aligns the resources and capacity of the municipality with the implementation of the plan;
- Forms the policy framework and general basis on which annual budgets must be based;
- Complies with the provisions of Chapter 5, and
- Is compatible with the national and provincial department plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of legislation.

Section 26 of the Act further outlines the core components of the integrated development plan of a municipality. It requires the integrated development plan of the municipality to reflect:

- The municipal council’s vision for the long term development of the municipality with special emphasis on the municipality’s most critical development and internal transformation needs;

- An assessment of the existing level of development in the municipality, which must include an identification of communities which do not have access to basic municipal services;

- The council’s development priorities and objectives for its elected term;

- The council’s development strategies which must be aligned with any national or provincial sector plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of the legislations;

- The council’s development strategies which must be aligned with any national or provincial sector plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of the legislations;

A spatial development framework which must include the provision of basic guidelines for a land use management system of the municipality;

The council's operational strategies;

Applicable disaster management plan;

A financial plan, which must include budget project for at least the next three years, and

The key performance indicators and performance targets determined in terms of section 41.

A.5. MUNICIPAL FINANCE MANAGEMENT ACT (ACT 56 OF 2003)

The Municipal Finance Management Act (56 of 2003) was promulgated to secure sound and sustainable management of the financial affairs of municipalities and other institutions in the local sphere of government. The Act provides a mandatory provision that relate to financial and performance management. Section 2 of the Act stipulates that the object is to secure sound and sustainable management of the financial affairs of the local government institutions to which this Act applies by establishing norms and standards for:

Ensuring transparency, accountability and appropriate lines of responsibility in the fiscal and financial affairs of municipalities and municipal entities;

The management of revenues, expenditures, assets and liabilities and the handling of financial dealings, budgetary and financial planning processes;

The coordination of those processes with those of the other spheres of government,

Borrowing;

Supply chain management; and

Other financial matters.

Waterberg District Municipality's involvement in the budget process is to ensure compliance with the provision of the Municipal Finance Management Act. It is crucial that the IDP review process facilitate community participation, provide ward level information, encourage discussion on priorities and provide an opportunity for feedback.

THE MAIN STRATEGIC OUTPUTS OF THE BUDGET REFORM ARE TO ENSURE:

Modernizing financial management and improving accountability;

Multi – year budgeting;

Deepening and improving the budget preparation process, by involving the political leadership and community;

Ensuring that the IDP and budgets are linked, and that the IDP takes account of budgetary resources, and contain proper capital and maintenance plans;

Improving the in – year implementation of the budget; and

Improving the auditing and performance reporting after the financial year has ended.

A.6. TRADITIONAL LEADERSHIP AND GOVERNANCE FRAMEWORK AMENDMENT ACT (ACT 41 of 2003)

This Act makes clear the role of the traditional leadership in the democratic and co – operative governance. The Act envisages an active involvement of the traditional leadership in the formulation and the implementation of the integrated development plans. Section 4 of the Act provides for the establishment of traditional councils that should:

Support municipalities in the identification of community needs;

Facilitate the involvement of the traditional community in the development or amendment of the integrated development plan of a municipality in whose area that community resides;

Participate in the development of policy and legislation at the local level; and

Promote the ideals of co – operative governance, integrated development planning, sustainable development and service delivery to promote indigenous knowledge systems for sustainable development and disaster management.

Section 5 (2) of the Act affirms that any partnership between a municipality and a traditional council must:

- a. Be based on the principles of mutual respect and recognition of the status and roles of the respective parties; and
- b. Be guided by and based on the principles of co – operative governance.

One village resides in traditional authority governed area. To this effect, Bela Bela Municipality has involved the traditional leader in both the IDP review process and any other developmental matter involving their areas of governance.

A.7. INTER – GOVERNMENTAL RELATIONS FRAMEWORK ACT (ACT 13 of 2005)

The Act is a response to the limited successes in the alignment efforts among the three spheres of government. The Act creates a framework to support intergovernmental cooperation and coordination as required by the Constitution in its definition of “cooperative governance”. It provides for the obligation of all spheres to participate in the planning processes of the municipality and in turn allow their own planning processes to be influenced by the municipal IDP’s. Municipal IDPs are regarded as important planning frameworks to integrate both the national and provincial programme in specific local area. The municipality is participating in the district – planning forum, district – municipal managers’ forum, district – mayors forum and as well as in the Premier’s Intergovernmental Forum. The participation is aimed at ensuring proper alignment and coordination of local, district and provincial plans. The Act establishes structures and processes that enhance inter – governmental planning and monitoring processes for local, provincial and national spheres of governance.

A.8. PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A municipality’s Performance Management System entails a framework that describes and represents how the municipality’s cycle and processes of performance, planning, measurement, review, reporting and improvement will be conducted, organized and managed, including determining the roles of the different role – players.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

It is critical that political leadership, managers and staff be involved to ensure that the municipality embraces the IDP and its implementation – which is performance management in practice. Implementing the processes and systems needed to operationalize the IDP will determine the ultimate success of the municipality. The following needs to be taken into consideration when starting to implement the IDP:

Plan for performance by clarifying objectives and outputs to be achieved;

Clarify performance expectations by setting standards and targets for each indicator to assess and evaluate performance in practice;

Monitor, measure, assess and evaluate performance, and

Link strategic priorities, goals and objectives agreed in the IDP by:

Enabling staff to understand how their job contributes to the aforementioned;

Ensuring resources are directed and used in efficient, effective and economic ways by each person in the municipality;

Including communities and other stakeholders; decision – making, monitoring and evaluation;

Learning from experience and use it to continuously improve what's achieved, and maintaining transparency and accountability and promoting good governance articulated in the Batho Pele principles.

1.3 DISTRICT DEVELOPMENT MODEL WATERBERG DISTRICT ONE PLAN

Background

On the 26 November 2019, the President launched the District Development Model (DDM) in Lephalale, Waterberg. This was followed by the launch of the DDM Hub and its associated expertise and services by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA), Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma on the 5th September 2020. The outcome of the first step in the DDM institutionalization.

Government is using the DDM as a practical method to improve cooperative governance and promote integrated planning, budgeting and implementation on the basis of stakeholder and community involvement, and thereby build a capable and ethical Developmental State with strong local government that can respond to current and future needs and effectively implement national priorities.

The objective of the DDM will be achieved through the One Plan. According to the DDM content guide, the One Plan serves as a strategic framework:

The One Plan is a Strategic Long-Range Framework including short, medium and long-term objectives/interventions to guide all state and private investment within the district and metropolitan areas. It is not a detailed or comprehensive plan covering the full range of departmental and municipal responsibilities.

This One Plan as a key instrument of the DDM, it is championed at the highest level by the President and is facilitated by the Minister for Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs. The Waterberg One Plan is based on the DDM Theory of Change which postulates six transformation areas (1. Demographic change and people development, 2. Economic Positioning, 3. Spatial Restructuring and Environmental Sustainability, 4. Infrastructure Engineering, 5. Integrated Services Provisioning, and 6. Governance and Management) to move from the current state of underdevelopment to a desired better future. The Waterberg One Plan aims to ignite the self-reinforcing sustainability cycle of the district by establishing Waterberg as a well-managed district that enables a participative, investment-friendly and diversified economy.

This will result in the Waterberg being a desired investment destination that leverage from its locational advantage with respect to the Gauteng global city region and various international border posts, its global resource competitiveness relating to mineral resources and the unique world heritage site and finally the social potential rooted within the district.

To achieve the aspiration of a well-managed district, respective role players will aim to stabilize governance framework and policies and improve intergovernmental communication and collaboration through the hub in order to focus on appropriate service delivery, focusing on existing asset maintenance and the provision of bulk basic services such as renewable energy and water supply.

The purpose of this Waterberg District One Plan is:

- i. To give effect to the District Development Model approved by cabinet as a practical method to improve service delivery and development impact in the Waterberg space through integrated planning, collaborative budgeting and focused delivery by all three spheres of government working together with stakeholders and communities;
- ii. To achieve the objectives of the National Development Plan (“NDP”), the National Spatial Development Framework (“NSDF”), the Integrated Urban Development Framework (“IUDF”) and other key national provincial and local socio-economic and spatial development policies;
- iii. To jointly and coherently as all government and stakeholders develop a common vision and approach in addressing the current and future development needs and challenges and key priorities of the Waterberg district space;
- iv. To restructure the Waterberg economy from a focus on primary activities such as mining and agriculture to secondary and tertiary activities which include manufacturing and downstream beneficiation opportunities;
- v. To create an environment which is conducive for investment;
- vi. To stabilize governance and financial management practices in the Waterberg district;
- vii. To capacitate people, in particular the vulnerable groups such as women, youth and the disabled through skills redevelopment and development to meaningfully participate in the economy; and
- viii. To focus on infrastructure planning, maintenance and expansion.

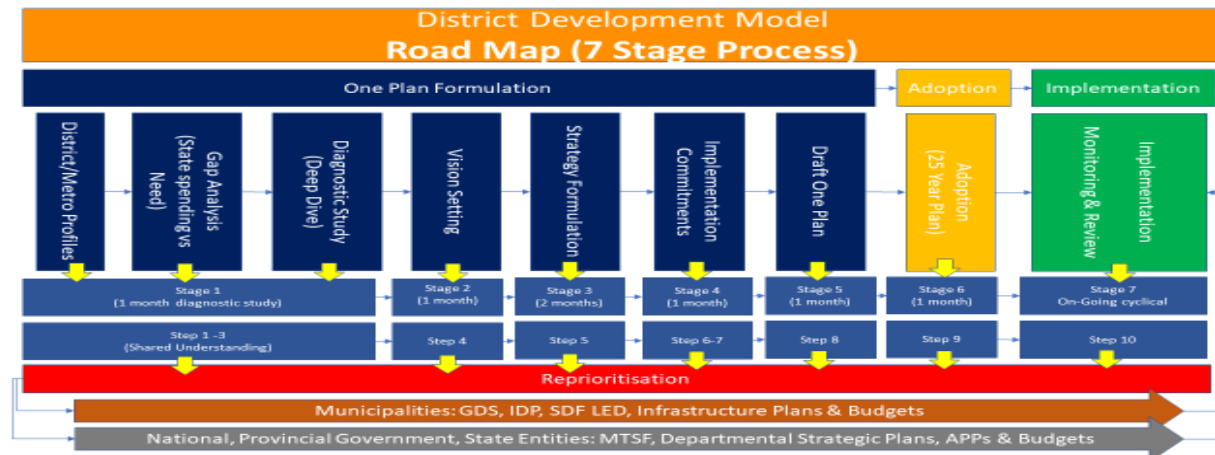
The Waterberg One Plan provides multiple spheres of government, stakeholders, communities, and investors with a strategic direction unique to the district in moving from the current situation to the desired future to which to aspire to. The strategic direction is represented by a set of key strategies and an action plan to start moving towards the realization of the desired future state. In fact, it is a product of a multi-sphere government approach with stakeholders and communities as strategic partners to change the fortunes of the people of Waterberg. Only through collaboration, internalization and a whole-of-society embedding of what needs to be done to tap into the potential of Waterberg – and respond to that – will the One Plan be successful.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

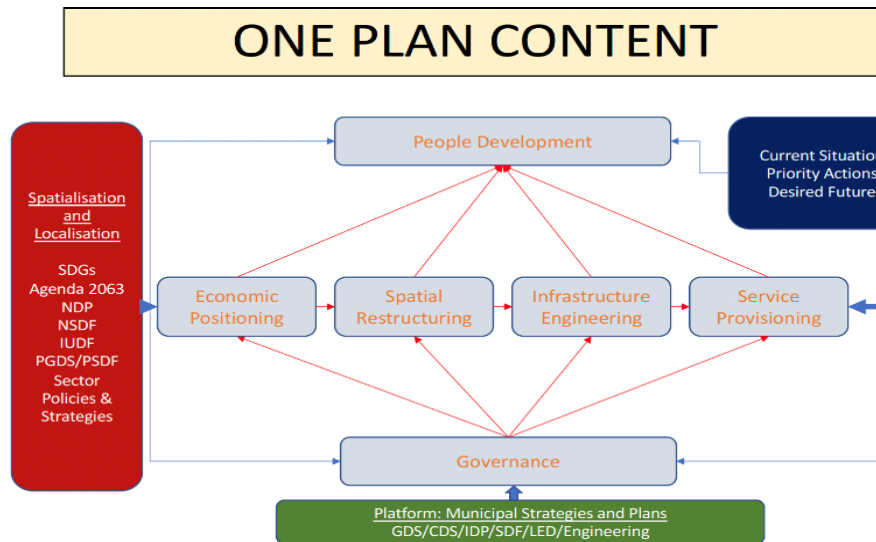
on the Go for Growth

The One Plan formulation process followed the seven DDM stages roadmap as depicted in the following diagram.



The One Plan content, catered on the Waterberg Vision 2050, follows the DDM theory of Change and logical framework and is structured in relation to the six DDM Transformation Focal Areas or Goals to ignite the self-reinforcing sustainability cycle of the district by establishing Waterberg as a well-managed district that enables a participative, investment-friendly and diversified economy.

One Plan content: Relationship between themes



Vision

Waterberg - A tourism and energy hub that enables a participative, investment friendly and diversified economy

on the Go for Growth

Figure 2: Vision framework

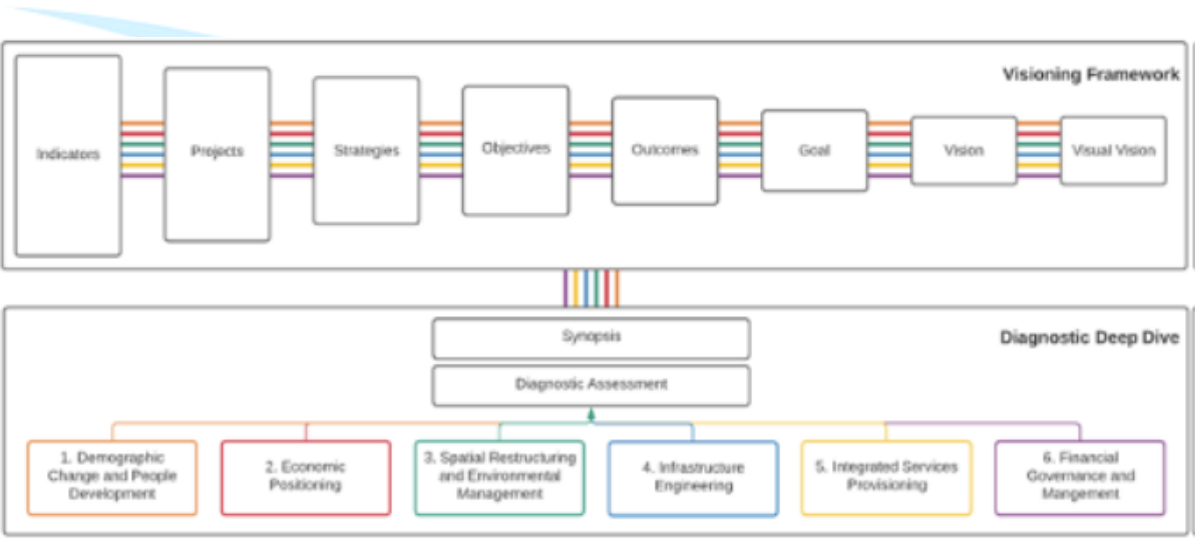


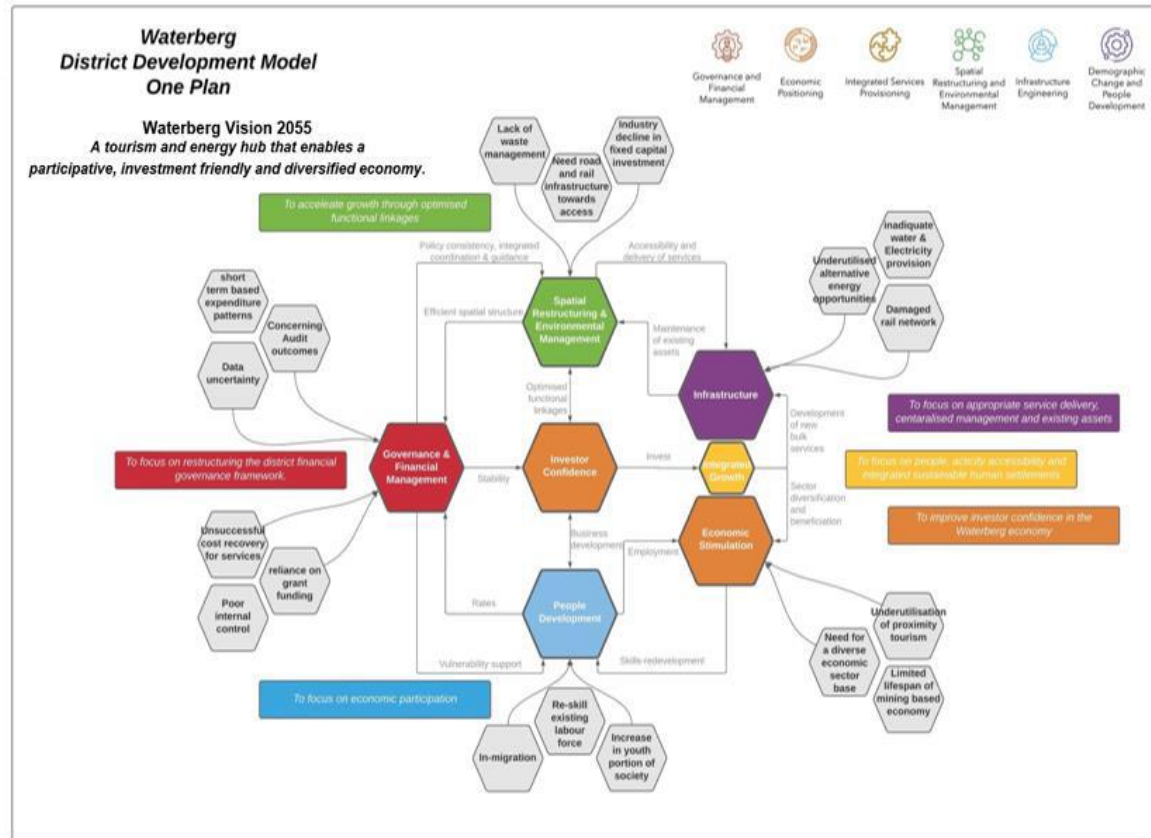
Figure below, highlights the self-reinforcing upliftment and sustainability cycle which indicates the interplay of the 21 strategies and various programmes emanating from the diagnostics. The sequencing is informed by the root causes and vision alignment. There are no one to one strategy and theme relationship. There is a complex interplay of governance, socio, economic, spatial elements that requires a whole system approach rather than a per-theme based approach. The figure shows the inter-relatedness and interdependence relationships of various strategies with the potential to positively reinforce each other.

Figure : Self-reinforcing upliftment and sustainability cycle



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth



One Plan Strategies

The strategic goals below provide direction for all of government and the private sector in order to bring about the desired future in the Waterberg district and achieve the set vision. The strategies for each goal are outlined in this section and these strategies of a competitive nature, as well as strategies related to the operations of public sectors active in the district.

One Plan Strategic Goals



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

DDM Focal Area	Strategic Goal
Demographic change and People Development	To focus on economic participation
Economic Positioning	Improve investor confidence in the Waterberg economy
Spatial Restructuring and Environmental	Accelerate growth through optimised functional linkages between activities
Infrastructure Engineering	Focus on appropriate service delivery, centralised management, and existing asset maintenance.
Integrated Service Provisioning	Focus on people, activity accessibility and integrated sustainable human settlements.
Governance and Financial Management	Focus on restructuring the district financial governance framework.

1.4 SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS

#Envision2030: 17 goals to transform the world for persons with disabilities



Imagine the world in 2030, fully inclusive of persons with disabilities

In September 2015, the General Assembly adopted the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development that includes 17 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs). Building on the principle of “leaving no one behind”, the new Agenda emphasizes a holistic approach to achieving sustainable development for all.

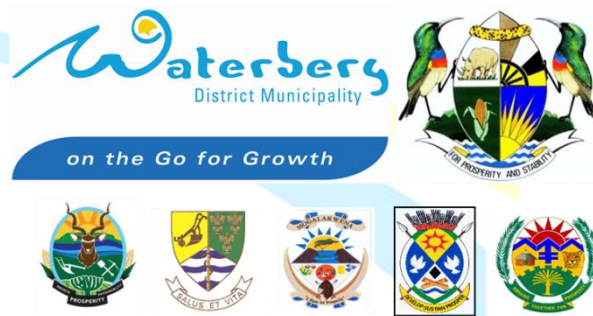


© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth



SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS




SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS



The 17 sustainable development goals (SDGs) to transform our world:

GOAL 1: No Poverty

GOAL 2: Zero Hunger

GOAL 3: Good Health and Well-being

GOAL 4: Quality Education

GOAL 5: Gender Equality

GOAL 6: Clean Water and Sanitation

GOAL 7: Affordable and Clean Energy

GOAL 8: Decent Work and Economic Growth

GOAL 9: Industry, Innovation and Infrastructure

GOAL 10: Reduced Inequality

GOAL 11: Sustainable Cities and Communities

GOAL 12: Responsible Consumption and Production

GOAL 13: Climate Action

GOAL 14: Life Below Water

GOAL 15: Life on Land

GOAL 16: Peace and Justice Strong Institutions

GOAL 17: Partnerships to achieve the Goal



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

The SDGs also explicitly include disability and persons with disabilities 11 times. Disability is referenced in multiple parts of the SDGs, specifically in the parts related to education, growth and employment, inequality, accessibility of human settlements, as well as data collection and the monitoring of the SDGs.

Although, the word “disability” is not cited directly in all goals, the goals are indeed relevant to ensure the inclusion and development of persons with disabilities.

The newly implemented 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development holds a deep promise for persons with disabilities everywhere.

The year 2016 marks the first year of the implementation of the SDGs. At this critical point, #Envision2030 will work to promote the mainstreaming of disability and the implementation of the SDGs throughout its 15-year lifespan with objectives to:

- Raise awareness of the 2030 Agenda and the achievement of the SDGs for persons with disabilities;
- Promote an active dialogue among stakeholders on the SDGs with a view to create a better world for persons with disabilities; and
- Establish an ongoing live web resource on each SDG and disability.

The campaign invites all interested parties in sharing their vision of the world in 2030 to be inclusive of persons with disabilities.

1.5 TABLE 1: POWERS AND FUNCTIONS OF THE DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

POWERS AND FUNCTIONS	RESPONSIBLE DEPARTMENT
Integrated Development, Planning for the district municipality as a whole.	Municipal Manager's Office
Refuse dumps and solid waste.	Social Development & Community Services
Cemeteries and crematoria.	Social Development & Community Services
Municipal Health Services	Social Development & Community Services
Firefighting services	Social Development & Community Services
Air Quality	Social Development & Community Services
Municipal roads which form an integral part of road transport system for the district area as a whole	Infrastructure and Development
Municipal Abattoir	Planning & Economic Development
Promotion of local tourism for the area of the district municipality.	Planning & Economic Development
Municipal transport planning	Planning & Economic Development

1.6 TABLE 2: MUNICIPAL PRIORITIES

NO.	PRIORITY
1	Municipal Health & Environmental Management
2	Air Quality
3	Fire fighting Services
4	Disaster Management
5	Abattoir
6	Local Economic Development & Tourism
7	Community Participation and Good Governance
8	Financial Viability
9	Municipal Roads & Storm Water
10	Municipal Support & Institutional Development
11	Sports, Arts and Culture
12	Water & Sanitation
13	Electricity
14	Transport

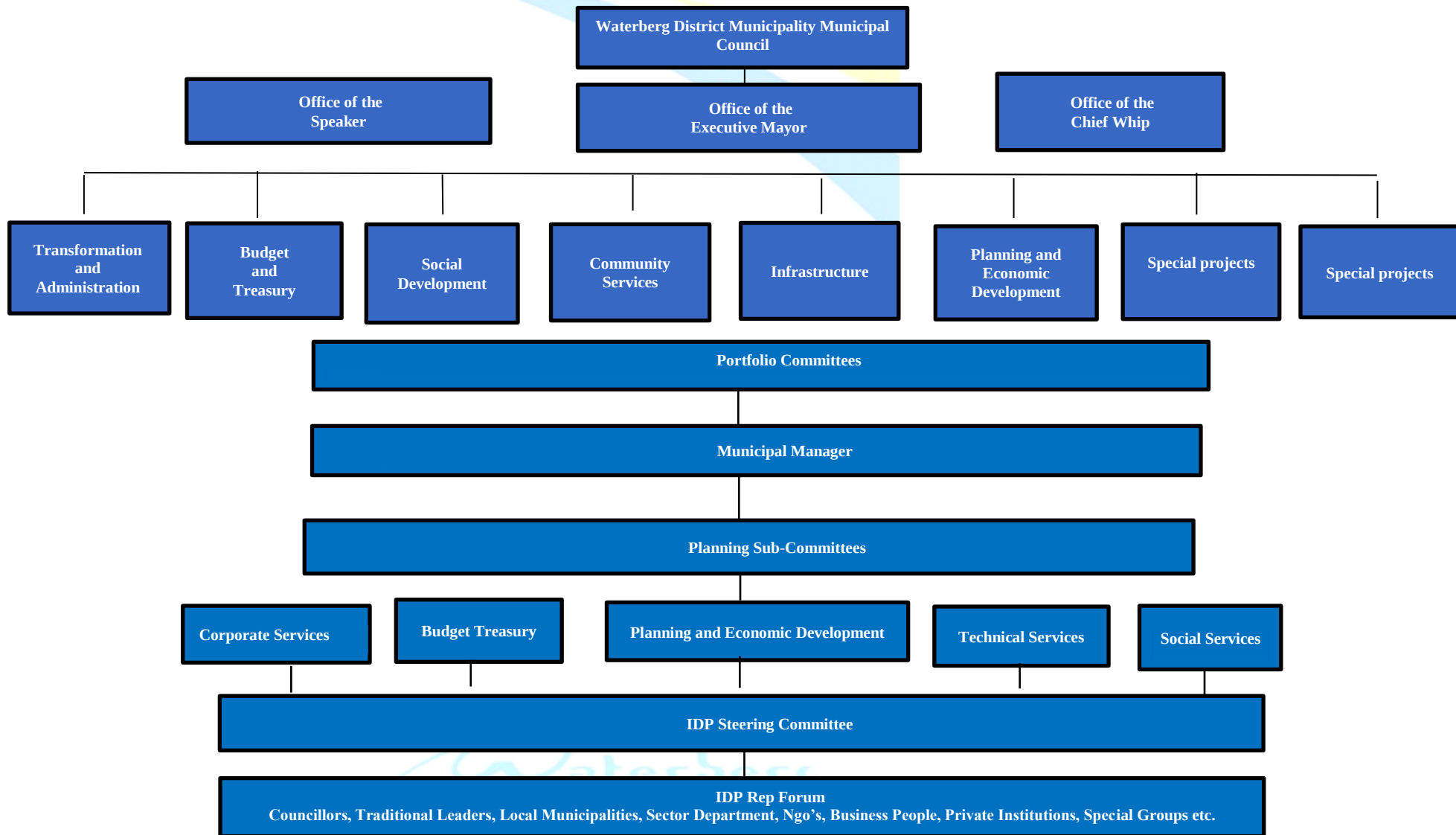


© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

1.7 INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENT

MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND ORGANIZATIONAL DEVELOPMENT



1.8 PROCESS OVERVIEW

Waterberg District Municipality adopted a 2023/24 IDP Review Framework and Process Plan, which informed all 5 local municipality's process plans and it was adopted by the Municipal Council. The main purpose of the Process Plan is to integrate all the processes and activities, institutional arrangements and time frames of the various sector departments, NGOs, Parastatals, etc. The Framework /Process Plan was adopted by Council on the 30 August 2022. The Process Plan will guide the municipality in terms of Legislative requirements and the timeframes thereof.

Process Plan should:

Guide decision making in respect of service delivery and public sector investment.
Inform budgets and Service Delivery Programs of various government departments and service agencies.
Coordinate the activities of various service delivery agencies within Waterberg District Municipality.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

2023/2024 ACTION PROGRAMME

WDM – **RED** DISTRICT & LOCALS – **YELLOW** PROVINCE – **GREEN**

Activity		Responsibility	JULY				AUG				SEPT			
QUARTER 1: Implementation, Monitoring, Review and Confirmation of Development Priority Issues			1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
Integrated Development Planning	2022/23 IDP, Budget Framework Process Plan	MM												
	Council Approval & Advertisement of the IDP & Budget Process	MM												
	Constitution of the IDP Structures: 1 st IDP Ref Forum - Process Plan	MM												
	Analysis, Drafting, Proposals and Confirmation of New Development Issues	MM												
	Public participation – Local Municipalities jointly with District Municipality													
	Completion of Draft Analysis – Locals and District													
	Provincial – District – wide analysis phase													
	District Planning Forum													
Annual Budget	Monthly Financial Reports for June including expenditure on staff benefits and results of cash flow	CFO												
	Accounting Officer to submit annual financial statements	CFO												
	Monthly Financial Report for July	CFO												
	Monthly Financial Report for August	CFO												

Performance Management Systems	Finalize the Fourth Quarter Performance Report	MM												
	Performance Audit Committee validates the reports prior to assessments by the Assessment Panel	MM												
	Prepare Performance Agreements and Performance Assessment schedule for Section 56 Managers by 31 July	MM												
	Review of the PMS by the Audit Committee	AC												
	Accounting Officer submit the Annual Performance Report													
	AG audit process unfolding	AG/ MM												
Activity		Responsibility	OCT				NOV				DEC			
QUARTER 2 : Review, Propose and Confirm Objectives, Strategies and Projects			1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
Integrated Development Planning	Review Purpose and Confirm Objectives & Strategies	MM												
	Prepare Draft IDP elements to include into the Draft Provincial 3 year MTEF's.	MM												
	Provide project / priority inputs into the Provincial MTEF process (workshops / meetings/bi-laterals, etc.)	MM												
	2 ND IDP RF to Review IDP documentation: Municipal identified aspects (i.e. Objectives, Strategies and Projects) + climate change.	MM												
	Provincial District wide Strategies Phase	MM												
	District planning Forum	MM & PED												
	Strategic planning session	MM												

Annual Budget	Monthly financial report for Sept including expenditure on staff benefits and results of cash flow for 1st quarter	CFO												
	Report of the Executive Mayor on implementation of Budget and Financial state of the Municipality	CFO												
	Monthly Financial Report for September	CFO												
	AG to complete audit within 3 months of revising financial statements in November	CFO												
Performance Management Systems	Quarterly meeting of the Performance Audit Committee	MM												
	First Quarter Performance Reports finalized and ready for Assessments	MM												
	1st Quarter PMS Audit Report to MM and Performance Audit Committee	MM												
	Prepare annual performance report	MM												
	Performance assessment	MM												
	Draft annual report	MM												
	Analysis of Draft SDBIP	MM												
	Prepare 1st Quarter Assessment	MM												



QUARTER 3 : Review, Propose and Confirm Objectives, Strategies and Projects		Responsibility	JAN				FEB				MAR			
Integrated Development Planning	Input IDP Review Projects (alignment of IDP Review) to the Municipal Budgeting process – ensure alignment.	MM												
	Adoption of the 2023/24 First Draft IDP:	MM												
	District Municipality	MM												
	Local Municipality	MM												
	3rd IDP Representative Forum to Consider Draft IDP, and consolidated inputs from Provincial and National Departments	MM												
	Public Participation – Locals & District	MM												
	Provincial District Wide Session – Project phase	MM												
Annual Budget	Monthly financial report for Dec including expenditure on staff benefits and results of cash flow for 2nd quarter	MM												
	Executive Mayor finalize and table the Draft Budget inclusive of the adjustment Budget and submit to Council for approval	CFO												
	Executive Mayor Table Annual Report audited Financial Statements, Audit Report and comments thereon to Council.	CFO												
	Publicize the Annual Report in terms of section 127(5) of the MFMA.	CFO												
	Monthly Financial Report for Jan 2023	CFO												
	Monthly Financial Report for February 2023	CFO												

Performance Management Systems	QUARTER 3: Review, Propose and Confirm Objectives, Strategies and Projects Alignment with the Draft IDP	Responsibility	Jan				Feb				Mar			
	2nd Quarter Performance Reports finalized and ready for Assessments	MM												
	2nd Quarter PMS Audit Report to MM and Performance Audit Committee	MM												
	Undertake Midyear Performance assessments against targets, indicators and Budget implementation plan	MM												
	Submit Draft Annual Report to AG, Provincial Treasury and Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs (COGTA)	MM												
	Council considers and adopts oversight report on 2021/22 Annual Report (Minutes to AG, Provincial Treasury and COGTA)	MM												
	Adjustment of SDBIP	MM												
	Tabling Adjustments of 22/23 SDBIP	MM												
	Compile half yearly assessments of Municipality's performance against performance of objectives	MM												
Annual Budget	QUARTER : Review, Propose and Confirm Objectives, Strategies and Projects	Responsibility	Jan				Feb				Mar			
	Ensure IDP, Budget and PMS alignment	MM												
	Submit Draft IDP to Coghsta	MM												



	Activity QUARTER 4: Review, Propose and Confirm Objectives, Strategies and Projects	Responsibility	APRIL				MAY				JUNE			
			1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
Integrated Development Planning	Ensure IDP, Budget and PMS alignment	MM												
	Submit Draft IDP to CoGHSTA	MM												
	4th IDP RF	MM												
	Annual review of PMS and submission of Annual Performance Report	MM												
	21 Days advertisement for public comments	MM												
	Executive Mayor table Final IDP before Council for approval	MM												
	Submit a copy of the Final IDP 10 days upon approval by Council to the MEC of CoGHSTA	MM												
	Notify the Public of the approval of the Final IDP Budget by Council within 14 days upon approval	MM												
	Budget Roadshows (in conjunction with Locals)	MM												
	District Planning Forum	MM												
	Mayor to get inputs from community on budget (between 30 and 90 days after approval)	CFO												
	Monthly financial report for March including expenditure on staff benefits and results of cashflow for 3rd quarter	CFO												
	Report of Executive Mayor on implementation of budget and financial state of affairs of Council	CFO												
	Monthly Financial Report for April 2023	CFO												

Executive Mayor table 2023/24 Budget for approval before Council	CFO													
MM to present SDBIP to the Executive Mayor 7 days upon approval of the Budget by Council	CFO													
Monthly Financial Report for May	MM													
3rd Quarter Performance Reports finalized and ready for Assessments	MM													
3rd Quarter PMS Audit Report to MM and Performance Audit Committee	MM													
Annual Review of Organisational KPI's (Review of Organisational KPI's affected by the IDP Review Process) + Policy & Framework	MM													
Approval of 2021/22 SDBIP	MM													

TABLE 3: 2023/2024 WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY YEAR PLANNER

2023/2024 WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY YEAR PLANNER

No	Special Council Meeting Date	Time	Ordinary Council Meeting Date	Time
1.	30 August 2022 IDP Process Plan	12h00	29 September 2022	12h00
2.	27 January 2023, Mid-year and Draft Annual Reports		08 December 2022	
3.	23 February 2023, Adjustment Budget/SDBIP		30 March 2023 Draft Budget/IDP and Final Annual Report	
			30 May 2023	

No	Mayoral Committee meetings Date	Time	Portfolio Committee meetings	Time
1.	15 September 2022	11h00	30 August – September 2022	10h00 & 12h00
2.	24 November 2022		08 - 11 November 2022	
3.	16 March 2023		28 February – 03 March 2023	
4.	18 May 2023		02 - 05 May 2023	

No.	MPAC meetings	Time	IGR Meetings	Time
1.	14 September 2022	11h00	18 August 2022	10h00
2.	16 November 2022		03 November 2022	
3.	15 March 2023		09 February 2023	
4.	17 May 2023		04 May 2023	11h00

No.	Management meetings	Municipal Manager 's Forum	Time
1.	22 August 2022 – Portfolio Items	27 July 2022	10h00
2.	31 October 2022 – Portfolio Items	27 Oct 2022	
3.	20 February 2023 – portfolio items	02 February 2023	
4.	24 April 2023 – portfolio items	25 April 2023	11h00

No.	Audit Committee	AIDS Council
1.	16 August 2022, 25 August 2022 and 16 September 2022,	August 2022
2.	16 September 2022, 09 November 2022 and 25 November 2022	November 2022
3.	24 January 2023 and 03 March 2023	February 2023
4.	03 May 2023 and 25 May 2023	May 2023

TABLE 4: MEETINGS SCHEDULES FOR THE DISTRICT IDP PUBLIC PARTICIPATION STRUCTURES.

IDP and PMS Management Committee Meetings

No	DATE	TIME	VENUE
1.	28-29 July 2022	10H00	To be confirmed (District-wide)
2.	16 November 2022	10H00	To be confirmed (District-wide)
3.	08 March 2023	10H00	To be confirmed (District-wide)
4.	04-05 May 2023	10H00	To be confirmed (District-wide)

IDP STEERING



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

NB!! IDP steering committee meetings will be held before representatives' forum (sector departments to be part of the 2nd and 3rd Steering Committee meetings)

Each Municipality will decide on the dates of the meeting.

Section 30 of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 gives direction on the composition of the IDP Steering Committee.

IDP REPRESENTATIVE FORUM

No	MUNICIPALITY	1ST REP FORUM	2ND REP FORUM	3RD REP FORUM	4TH REP FORUM
1.	Bela Bela	24 August 2022	29 November 2022	13 March 2023	08 May 2023
2.	Thabazimbi	15 August 2022	24 November 2022	16 March 2023	18 May 2023
3.	Lephalale	16 August 2022	18 October 2022	17 March 2023	16 May 2023
4.	Mogalakwena	19 August 2022	10 November 2022	10 March 2023	12 May 2023
5.	Modimolle-Mookgophong	18 August 2022	20 October 2022	14 March 2023	17 May 2023
6..	Waterberg District	17 August 2022	30 November 2022	22 March 2023	19 May 2023



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

STRATEGIC PLANNING SESSION

No	MUNICIPALITY	DATE
1.	Lephalale	13-15 February 2023
2.	Mogalakwena	30 November – 02 December 2022
3.	Thabazimbi	22-24 February 2023
4.	Bela Bela	16-17 February 2023
5.	Modimolle-Mookgophong	06-09 February 2023
6.	Waterberg District	27 February-01 March 2023

PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

No	MUNICIPALITY	DATES	DATES
1.	Bela-Bela	01-16 September 2022	05-30 April 2023
2.	Modimolle-Mookgophong	01-30 September 2022	01-30 April 2023
3.	Lephalale	01-30 September 2022	10-30 April 2023

4.	Mogalakwena	01-30 September – 04 October 2022	05-30 April 2023
5.	Thabazimbi	01-30 September 2022	01-30 April 2023
6.	Waterberg	JOINTLY WITH THE LOCALS	

RISK MANAGEMENT COMMITTEE MEETINGS

DATES
August 2022
October 2022
January 2023
April 2023

DISTRICT DEVELOPMENT PLANNING FORUM

No	DATE	TIME	VENUE
1.	15-16 September 2022	10h00	To be confirmed
2.	09 November 2022		
3.	21 February 2023		
4.	10 May 2023		

PROVINCIAL DISTRICT ENGAGEMENT SESSIONS

No	DATE	TIME	VENUE
1.	12-13 September 2022 (Analysis Phase)	10h00	To be confirmed by Office of the Premier. (District-wide)
2.	21 November 2022(Strategies Phase)		
3.	16 Feb 2023 (Project Phase)		

PROVINCIAL DEVELOPMENT PLANNING FORUM

No	DATE	TIME	VENUE
1.	23-24 August 2022	10h00	To be confirmed by Office of the Premier.
2.	06-07 December 2022		To be confirmed by Office of the Premier.
3.	06-10 March 2023		To be confirmed by Office of the Premier.

BUDGET

Midyear Budget & Performance Assessment	Budget & Benchmarking Assessment
Feb – March 2023	April – May 2023



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

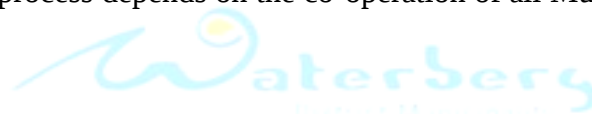
A.COST ESTIMATES

ACTIVITY	BUDGETED COST
Costs of Workshops and Meetings (Rep Forum or Steering Committee, W/shops Co-ordinating meetings and Task team meetings)	R324 642.00
Costs for printing and stationery	
Advertisements	
District – wide IDP Internal assessment	
Strategic Planning Session	
Total	

The way forward is for all Municipalities to prepare Process Plans in conjunction with the District Framework Plan and set out the following:

- HOW** the planning process will unfold per Municipality;
- WHAT** actions are required;
- WHO** will be responsible for implementing these actions;
- WHEN** will the action have to be implemented; and
- WHAT** will the actions COST?

The achievement of an aligned IDP process depends on the co-operation of all Municipalities in order to achieve their developmental objectives in a spirit of co-operative governance.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 5: SUMARRY OF COMMUNITY NEEDS FOR ALL LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

SPATIAL RATIONAL
Land Housing
BASIC SERVICES
Electricity Water Refuse removal Sanitation Roads



1.8 TABLE 6: BASIS FOR IDP REVIEW PROCESS

1.8.1 MEC IDP ASSESSMENT FINDINGS - STATUS QUO - IDP RATINGS

MUNICIPALITY	2018/19	2019/20	2020/21	2021/22	2022/23
Waterberg District	High	High	High	High	High
Bela Bela	Medium	High	High	High	High
Mogalakwena	Medium	High	High	High	High
Thabazimbi	Medium	High	High	High	High
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Medium	High	High	High	High
Lephalale	Medium	High	High	High	High

1.8.2 STATES OF THE NATION ADDRESS 2023

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
Restoring Energy Security	Government's most immediate priority is to restore energy security. The country is in the grip of a profound energy crisis, the seeds of which were planted many years ago. In July last year, President Ramaphosa announced a clear action plan to address the energy crisis. This was to address the electricity shortfall of 4 000 to 6 000 megawatts (MW). The plan outlined five key interventions to: fix Eskom's coal-fired power stations and improve the availability of existing supply;

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	• enable and accelerate private investment in generation capacity; • accelerate procurement of new capacity from renewables, gas and battery storage; • unleash businesses and households to invest in rooftop solar; and • Fundamentally transform the electricity sector to achieve long- term energy security. Experts agree that this plan that is the most realistic route to end load- shedding. During the last six months, government made important progress in implementing the plan Improving the performance of Eskom The government has taken steps to improve the performance of Eskom’s existing power stations so that the coal-fired power stations that provide 80% of electricity produce the amount of electricity for which they were designed. Under its new board, Eskom is deploying people and resources to improve the reliability of the six power stations that have contributed the most to load-shedding. Eskom is urgently fast-tracking construction of a temporary solution to bring back three units at Kusile Power Station following the collapse of a chimney stack last year, whilst simultaneously repairing the permanent structure. Government is rebuilding the skills that have been lost and have already recruited skilled personnel at senior levels to be deployed at underperforming power stations. The Engineering Council of South Africa has offered to give as much assistance as required by deploying engineers to work with the management teams at power stations. National Treasury is finalising a solution to Eskom’s R400 billion debt burden in a manner that is equitable and fair to all stakeholders, which will enable the utility to make necessary investments in maintenance and transmission. Government will support Eskom to secure additional funding to purchase diesel for the rest of the financial year. This should reduce the severity of load-shedding as Eskom will be able to use its diesel- run plants when the system is under strain. Eskom has launched a programme to buy excess power from private generators and has already secured 300 MW from

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	neighbouring countries. Restructuring Eskom As part of the broader reform process, the restructuring of Eskom that government previously announced is proceeding and the National Transmission Company will be soon operational with an independent board. Later this year, government will table the Electricity Regulation Amendment Bill to transform the energy sector and establish a competitive electricity market. Solar Power As indicated in July last year, and with a view to addressing the load- shedding crisis, government is going to proceed with the roll-out of rooftop solar panels. In his Budget Speech, the Minister of Finance will outline how households will be assisted and how businesses will be able to benefit from a tax incentive. National Treasury is working on adjustments to the Bounce-back Loan Scheme to help small businesses invest in solar equipment, and to allow banks and development finance institutions to borrow directly from the scheme to facilitate the leasing of solar panels to their customers. New Electricity Capacity One of the potent reforms government has embarked upon is to allow private developers to generate electricity. There are now more than 100 projects, which are expected to provide over 9 000 MW of new capacity over time. A number of companies that have participated in the renewable energy programme will soon enter construction and deliver a total of 2 800 MW of new capacity. Eskom will procure emergency power that can be deployed within six months to close the immediate gap. Government is investing in new transmission lines and substations, especially in areas such as the Eastern Cape, Northern Cape and

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	Western Cape. All of these measures will result in a massive increase in power to the grid over the next 12 to 18 months, and beyond. This power will be in line with the diverse mix of energy sources, including the current coal-fired power stations, solar, wind, gas, nuclear, hydro and battery storage. To fully implement this plan, government needs strong central coordination and decisive action. National State of Disaster The National Disaster Management Centre has consequently classified the energy crisis and its impact as a disaster. Government is, therefore, declaring a National State of Disaster to respond to the electricity crisis and its effects. The Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs has just gazetted the declaration of the state of disaster, which will begin with immediate effect. The state of disaster will enable government to provide practical measures that it needs to take to support businesses in the food production, storage and retail supply chain, including for the roll-out of generators, solar panels and uninterrupted power supply. Where technically possible, it will enable government to exempt critical infrastructure such as hospitals and water treatment plants from load-shedding. And it will enable government to accelerate energy projects and limit regulatory requirements while maintaining rigorous environmental protections, procurement principles and technical standards. The Auditor-General will be brought in to ensure continuous monitoring of expenditure, in order to guard against any abuses of the funds needed to attend to this disaster. Minister of Electricity in the Presidency “ The process of restructuring government will give us an opportunity to determine the positioning of various areas of responsibilities and how best the various ministries and departments can best serve our national objectives. We are focusing our attention on the energy crisis right now and will address the restructuring of government in due course.” This is necessary because an effective response to this crisis involves several different departments and entities that require

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	coordination from the centre of government. Government will be including other social partners in an effective structure similar to the one it set up to drive the vaccine rollout. Extraordinary circumstances call for extraordinary measures. The energy crisis is an existential threat to the economy and social fabric. Government must spare no effort, and it must allow no delay, in implementing these measures. As it takes these actions to resolve the energy crisis, government is mindful of the risks that climate change poses to society. Climate Change Extreme weather events in the form of drought, floods and wild fires increasingly pose a risk to the health, well-being and safety of people. Government will continue its just transition to a low carbon economy at a pace the country can afford and in a manner that ensures energy security. Government will undertake its just transition in a way that opens up the possibility of new investments, new industrialisation and that, above all, creates new jobs. The Presidential Climate Commission is guiding much of this work, and, in doing so, building a new model for inclusive and collective decision-making, incorporating the individuals, workers and communities that are most affected in the transition. Just Energy Transition investment Plan (JET-IP) Through the JET-IP, R1.5 trillion will be invested in the economy over the next five years in new frontiers such as renewable energy, green hydrogen and electric vehicles. Several new sectors are emerging in the economy, such as major green hydrogen, electric vehicles and fuel cells. A number of projects are already underway, including the development of a new facility by Sasol at Boegoebaai in the Northern Cape, the Prieska Power Reserve in the Free State, and the Hydrogen Valley initiative in Limpopo, Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal. The Northern Cape has already attracted well over R100 billion in investments in renewable energy projects. These and other

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	massive investments in renewable energy will create jobs and stimulate local economies not only in the Northern Cape, but also in the Eastern Cape, Western Cape and Mpumalanga, turning even the most arid desert into a giant energy source. Above all, the just transition will prioritise workers and communities in vulnerable industries to ensure that no one is left behind.
Economy	Economic Growth “Our economy needs to grow much faster if we are to meaningfully reduce unemployment. In the SoNA last year, we spoke of our intention to forge a comprehensive social compact that would join all social partners in a common programme to rebuild our economy and enable higher growth. “We were not able to conclude a social compact in the timeframe we had envisaged because a number of new circumstances emerged that made it difficult for social partners to forge a consensus. “The social partners have expressed their intention to conclude a social compact and have continued to work on a framework to enable joint action in key areas such as energy, transport and logistics, employment creation and skills development, investment and localisation, social protection, crime and corruption. “While we remain committed to forging a new consensus among all sectors of our society, we have also undertaken practical collaboration in specific areas. A number of other compacts have been concluded amongst social partners. “We see the commitment of all social partners in the compacts that have been forged to fight the COVID-19 pandemic and undertake the largest vaccination programme in our history. “We have seen it in initiatives like the Solidarity Fund that mobilised society, citizen activism and funding to achieve common goals, and in partnerships to end gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF), and to respond to the effects of climate change. “We have seen the benefits of this approach to promote investment and to develop master plans in sectors of the economy such as automotive, clothing and textiles, poultry, sugar, agriculture and global business services. ” The master plans that have been concluded are supporting the revival of the relevant sectors, the injection of investment by the

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	private sector and the creation of new jobs and livelihoods. Government is pleased that social partners, particularly business, has been providing support to implement the Energy Action Plan in the spirit of social compacting. Similarly, government has developed a close working partnership with both labour and community in supporting other aspects of the energy crisis response. Just as energy is essential for economic growth, so is a reliable water supply and an efficient transport and road infrastructure system. Red Tape Reduction Last year, the President announced that government would be seeking to reduce red tape so that it can rid the country of the unnecessary bureaucracy that often holds us back. The Red Tape Reduction Team in The Presidency under Mr Sipho Nkosi has been working with various departments to make it easier to do business. It has taken a collaborative approach, working with departments and agencies in areas such as the mining rights system, tourism transport operator licences, visas and work permits, early childhood development (ECD) and the informal sector. Support for Small, Medium and Micro Enterprise (SMME) This year, government will finalise amendments to the Businesses Act, 1991 (Act 71 of 1991) to reduce regulatory impediments for SMMEs and cooperatives, and make it easier for entrepreneurs to start businesses. Through the Small Enterprise Finance Agency, government plans to provide R1.4 billion in financing to over 90 000 entrepreneurs. Government, in partnership with the SA SME Fund, is working to establish a R10-billion fund to support SMMEs' growth. Government is looking at the possibility of providing R2.5 billion for the fund and for the balance of R7.5 billion to be raised from the private sector. State Bank

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	The licensing of the PostBank will lay the foundation for the creation of a state bank that will provide financial services to SMMEs, youth and women-owned businesses and underserved communities. As the National Assembly considers the Postbank Amendment Bill, the Postbank is reviewing its service offerings so that it can provide a viable and affordable alternative to the commercial banks. Woman Empowerment Since announcing its determination to direct at least 40% of public procurement to women-owned businesses, government has sought to establish an enabling environment to support women entrepreneurs. It has trained more than 3 400 women-owned enterprises to prepare them to take up procurement opportunities. Through the Women's Economic Assembly, government has seen industry associations and companies committing to industrywide gender transformation targets. The Industrial Development Corporation has earmarked approximately R9 billion to invest in women-led businesses. Other entities, including the Public Investment Corporation and the National Empowerment Fund, have also committed to establish special purpose vehicles to support women-owned businesses.
Rail Network	The rail network has suffered from many years of underinvestment, lack of maintenance, criminal activity and inefficiency. To address this, last year, government adopted the National Rail Policy to guide the modernisation and reform of the rail sector, providing, among other things, for third-party access to the rail network. Government is working across government to develop a Transnet Roadmap that will translate its policy commitments into reality, including the restructuring of Transnet Freight Rail (link is external) to create a separate Infrastructure Manager for the rail network by October 2023. Transnet (link is external) and private sector companies will conclude partnerships at the Durban and Ngqura container terminals, to enable new investment in the ports and improve their efficiency. This will help the ports regain their global position as some of the most efficient ports once again. There has been great success in repositioning the Port Elizabeth Automotive Terminal, which has more than doubled its capacity and has already seen an increase in exports.

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	Many more vehicles destined for overseas markets are rolling off the Port Elizabeth Automotive Terminal. Transnet is also rehabilitating its idle locomotives and expanding its fleet. South Africa has faced challenges in the transportation of commuters on passenger rail. Following the restructuring that is underway in the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (link is external), 13 commuter rail lines have been reopened, significantly reducing the cost of travel for many workers.
Water Security	The reliable supply of water is essential for the well-being of people and the growth of the economy. To ensure water security now and into the future, the Department of Water and Sanitation is leading the process of investing in major infrastructure projects across the country. Lesotho Highlands project After being delayed for several years, full-scale construction works for the Lesotho Highlands Phase Two project will commence this year. The Lesotho Highlands project is critical for ensuring security of water supply to Gauteng, Free State, Mpumalanga, North West and the Northern Cape. Construction of dams Several decades after it was first proposed and nine years after a sod-turning ceremony was held, the first phase of the Umzimvubu Water Project will start in the next financial year. This phase, which involves construction of the Ntabelanga Dam, irrigation infrastructure and the distribution of water to communities, will be financed by government. The next phase will be the construction of the Lilane Dam, which will include a hydropower station. Major projects to increase the capacity of the Clanwilliam Dam, Hazelmere Dam and the Tzaneen Dam will improve the supply of water to the West Coast, eThekweni and the eastern part of Limpopo. Water-use licences

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	Last year, government announced a comprehensive turnaround plan to streamline the process for water use licence applications, which is vital to enable greater investment. Since then, government has cleared the backlog of water-use licences and reduced the turnaround time for applications to 90 days.
Telecommunications	In the telecommunications sector, the completion of the spectrum auction has unlocked new investment and contributed R14 billion to the fiscus. During the course of this year, government will migrate the remaining households to digital television signal and complete the switch-off of analogue transmission. Roll-out of 5G mobile networks This will release valuable spectrum for the roll-out of 5G mobile networks and will reduce the cost of data. These actions will bring government closer to its vision of affordable, high-speed Internet access for all.
Trade and Investment	In the SoNA last year, government said it would concentrate its efforts on mobilising greater levels of investment, which is essential to growing the economy and creating jobs. It said that it would give impetus to the campaign that it embarked on nearly five years ago to raise R1.2 trillion in new investment. South Africa Investment Conference (SAIC) Last year, the 4th SAIC raised R367 billion in investment commitments, bringing its five-year investment target firmly within sight. Over the last year, many of these commitments have resulted in the companies that made those commitments investing in new factories, call centres, solar power plants, undersea fibre optic cables, the expansion of production lines and the adoption of new technologies. Importantly, these investments have resulted in new jobs and new opportunities for small emerging businesses. On 13 April this year, government will hold its 5th SAIC. At this conference, government will set a new target to mobilise more than R2 trillion in new investments by 2028. The investments that have flowed into the economy to date have contributed to a substantial increase in local production. These

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	investments have encouraged efforts to buy local. Hemp and Cannabis Sector In 2022, government committed to unlocking investment in the hemp and cannabis sector. It is moving to create the enabling conditions for the sector to grow. The Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development and the Department of Health will address existing conditions for the cultivation of hemp and cannabis to allow outdoor cultivation and collection of harvests from traditional farmers. This will unlock enormous economic energy in the rural areas of the country, especially in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. An enabling regulatory framework Urgent work is being finalised by government to create an enabling regulatory framework for a whole plant, all legitimate purposes approach for complimentary medicines, food, cosmetics, and industrial products, aligned to international conventions and best practices. This includes the reprioritisation of departmental budgets for sector development and support for traditional black farmers and the alignment of the SAPS enforcement with regulatory reforms. A growing economy must also be an increasingly inclusive economy.
Jobs	Skills Development The most effective and sustainable way to build an economy is to equip people with the skills and know-how to drive it. Government has therefore been working to strengthen the link between the skills that it develops and the skills the workplace needs. This year, the National Skills Fund will provide R800 million to develop skills in the digital and technology sector through an innovative model that links payment for training to employment outcomes. In 2022, government said that it would place over 10 000 Technical and Vocational Education and Training (TVET) college graduates in employment. It has surpassed that figure and has now set a target for 2023 of 20 000 TVET college graduates to be

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	placed in employment. The number of students entering artisan training in TVET colleges will be increased from 17 000 to 30 000 in the 2023 academic year. One of the key ingredients for economic growth and competitiveness is the ability to attract skills which the economy needs. Visa System Having completed a comprehensive review of the work visa system, government will move quickly to implement the recommendations put forward. These include establishing more flexible points- based system to attract skilled immigration, implementing a trusted employer scheme to make the visa process easier for large investors and streamlining application requirements. Presidential Employment Stimulus Last year, government spoke about the value of the Presidential Employment Stimulus in providing work and livelihood opportunities. The initiative has now created over one million opportunities, reaching every province and district in the country. Last week, a new cohort of 150 000 school assistants started work at more than 22 000 schools, offering dignity, hope and vital work experience to young people who were unemployed. The Social Employment Fund is recruiting 50 000 participants in its next phase to undertake work for the common good, and the revitalised National Youth Service will create a further 36 000 opportunities through non- profit and community-based organisations. The Department of Home Affairs has appointed the first cohort of 10 000 unemployed young people to digitise more than 340 million paper-based civic records. There are now more than three million users registered on SAYouth.mobi, a zero-rated online platform for young South Africans to access opportunities for learning and earning. This has been done in close collaboration with the National Youth Development Agency, which continues to provide valuable assistance to young entrepreneurs and work seekers. The Presidential Employment Stimulus is also supporting people to earn their own living.



Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	Support for Small- Scale Farmers Around 140 000 small-scale farmers have received input vouchers to buy seeds, fertiliser and equipment, providing a boost for food security and agricultural reform. This initiative has led to the cultivation of some 640 000 hectares of land. An impressive 68% of these farmers are women.
Social Security	Right now in the country, there are more than 25 million people who receive some form of income support. In addition, around two million indigent households receive free basic water, free basic electricity and free solid waste removal Social Relief of Distress (SRD) Grant In support of this work and to counter the rising cost of living, government will continue the SRD Grant, which currently reaches around 7.8 million people. It will ensure that existing social grants are increased to cushion the poor against rising inflation. This will be set out in the budget by the Minister of Finance. Work is underway to develop a mechanism for targeted basic income support for the most vulnerable, within fiscal constraints. This will build on the innovation government has introduced through the SRD Grant, including linking the data that it has across government to make sure it reaches all those who are in need. Title deeds for subsidised houses This year, government will take steps to unlock massive value for poor households by expediting the provision of title deeds for subsidised houses. The current backlog in processing title deeds is over one million houses, which amounts to an estimated R242 billion in assets that should be in the hands of South Africa's poorest households. Government will focus not just on eradicating this backlog, but on making the title deed system more effective and more accessible. As government undertook in the SoNA last year, the Department of Public Works and Infrastructure has finalised the transfer of 14 000 hectares of state land for housing.
Education	Access to quality education for all is the most powerful instrument to end poverty. Government needs to start with children who are

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	very young, providing them with the foundation they need to write and read for meaning, to learn and develop It is, therefore, significant that the number of children who receive the ECD subsidy has more than doubled between 2019 and 2022, reaching one-and-a-half million children. The Department of Basic Education is streamlining the requirements for ECD centres to access support and enable thousands more to receive subsidies from government. While at the other end of the basic education journey, government applauds last year's matric pass rate of 80%, with all provinces showing improved results. This was up from 76% the year before. The share of bachelor passes in no-fee schools improved from 55% in 2019 to 64% in 2022. This means that the performance of learners from poorer schools is steadily improving, confirming the value of the support that government provides to them. What these results reveal is that there is a silent revolution taking place in the schools. The Sanitation Appropriate for Education Initiative – known as SAFE – together with government's Accelerated School Infrastructure Delivery Initiative has built 55 000 appropriate toilets with resources from the public and private sector. To produce the skills the country needs, government is expanding vocational education and training systems through the implementation of the approved curriculum of the three-stream model. This year, government plans to finalise the Comprehensive Student Funding Model for Higher Education, particularly for students who fall outside the current National Student Financial Aid Scheme criteria; reaching those who are known as the 'missing middle'.
Fight against crime and violence	Government is strengthening the SAPS to prevent crime and improving the capacity of the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) and courts to ensure perpetrators are brought to justice. This includes putting more police on the streets and setting up specialised teams that will focus on specific types of crime. Last year, government undertook to recruit 12 000 new police personnel. Since then more than 10 000 new recruit have graduated from police academies and a further 10 000 will be recruited and trained this year.

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	The specialised police teams that are working on tackling crimes like kidnapping, extortion and illegal mining have had several breakthroughs, arresting dozens of suspects and achieving several convictions. Firm action is being taken to tackle economic sabotage and related crimes that are causing great damage to the economy. Multidisciplinary Economic Infrastructure Task Teams are now operational in 20 identified hotspots. Last year, President Ramaphosa drew attention to the enormous damage caused by the theft of copper cable and metal from the electricity system, train lines and other public infrastructure. Since then, the police have been cracking down on cable theft. In December, government introduced a temporary ban on the export of scrap copper cable and certain metals to disrupt criminal syndicates and enable a new trading system to be put in place. Just as government has embarked on economic reforms in electricity, water, telecommunication and logistics through Operation Vulindlela, it is embarking on a process of reform to improve the effectiveness of its fight against crime. It will use its competitiveness in call centre operations to support the proper functioning of the 10111 helpline, partnering with the private sector. Government will also use data-driven methods in a more sophisticated way to identify and target crime hotspots. Significantly, more funding will be made available in this budget for the police, the NPA and the Special Investigating Unit. Prioritising crimes against women and children Crimes against women and children remain a deeply disturbing feature of the national life. In November last year, government held the second Presidential Summit on GBVF to assess progress in the implementation of the National Strategic Plan (NSP), which it adopted as a comprehensive, effective and united response to this pandemic. One of the great successes of government's effort to fight GBV is the extent to which social partners have rallied around the NSP. In January last year, the President signed into law three key pieces of legislation that afford greater protection to survivors of GBV and ensure that perpetrators are no longer able to use legislative loopholes to evade prosecution. Government continues to improve the accessibility and functioning of Sexual Offences Courts and expand the network of Thuthuzela Care Centres. A key aspect of the NSP is the economic empowerment of women.

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
Fight against Corruption	Last year, President Ramaphosa said government would take decisive action against corruption and make a clear break with the era of state capture. The State Capture Commission headed by Chief Justice Raymond Zondo completed its work and submitted the final part of its report in June last year. The recommendations of the commission are being implemented according to the plan that President Ramaphosa submitted to Parliament in October last year so that the systemic weaknesses identified by the commission are addressed and state capture is never allowed to occur again. The National Anti-Corruption Advisory Council, consisting of people from across society, is in place to advise on suitable mechanisms to stem corruption, including an overhaul the institutional architecture for combatting corruption. Protection for whistle-blowers Government is working to capacitate the Witness Protection Unit and will introduce amendments to the Protected Disclosures Act, 2000 (Act 26 of 2000) and Witness Protection Act, 1998 (Act 112 of 1998) to strengthen protection for whistle-blowers. Work is already underway to improve access to the witness protection programme for public servants that expose maladministration, corruption and unethical conduct. Tightening procurement regulations Government will finalise the draft Public Procurement Bill to address weaknesses identified by the State Capture Commission and improve efficiency, value for money and transparency. The reinvigorated law-enforcement agencies are taking firm action against companies and individuals alleged to have been involved in state capture. The National Prosecuting Authority's Investigating Directorate, which was established in 2019, has taken 187 accused persons to court in 32 state capture and corruption cases. Over R7 billion has so far been returned to the state from state capture cases. To date, R12.9 billion of funds and assets have been frozen. This year, the Investigating Directorate will be established as a permanent entity within the National Prosecuting Authority.
Building a Capable and	To achieve any progress in addressing the urgent challenges, South Africa needs a capable and effective State. The greatest

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
Effective State	weaknesses are in state-owned enterprises and local government. Many of the state-owned enterprises are struggling with significant debt, under-investment in infrastructure, the effects of state capture and a shortage of skills Government will implement the recommendation of the Presidential State-owned Enterprises Council to establish a state-owned holding company as part of a centralised shareholder model that will ensure effective oversight of state-owned enterprises. Rationalising government departments, entities and programmes Separately, the President has instructed The Presidency and National Treasury to work together to rationalise government departments, entities and programmes over the next three years. National Treasury estimates that government could achieve a potential saving of R27 billion in the medium term if it deals with overlapping mandates, closes ineffective programmes and consolidates entities, where appropriate. The poor performance of many local governments remains an area of concern. Improving municipalities Too many of the municipalities, 163 out of 257, are dysfunctional or in distress due to poor governance, ineffective and sometimes corrupt financial and administrative management and poor service delivery. Government is implementing a number of interventions to address failures at local government level and improve basic service delivery. These include enhancing the capacity of public representatives and officials, maintaining and upgrading local infrastructure, and invoking the powers of national government to intervene where municipalities fail to meet their responsibilities. Professionalising the public sector A professional public service, staffed by skilled, committed and ethical people, is critical to an effective state and ending corruption, patronage and wastage. In response to the State Capture Commission and in line with the framework for the professionalization of the public service, integrity assessments will become a mandatory requirement for recruitment to the public service and entry exams will be introduced.

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	Government is amending legislation and strengthening the role of the Public Service Commission to ensure that qualified people are appointed to senior management positions and to move towards creating a single, harmonised public service.
International Relations	“Just as we are committed to improving the fortunes of our countrymen and women and to advancing shared prosperity for all, so too is our commitment to achieving a Better Africa and a Better world. We are greatly concerned at the recent escalation of tensions between Israelis and Palestinians, and call for an end to hostilities and for a resumption of the stalled peace process.” Africa expresses its deepest condolences to the government and people of Türkiye following the devastating earthquake earlier this week. Government remains deeply concerned about the ongoing Russia-Ukraine conflict and urges all parties to cease hostilities and seek a peaceful solution through dialogue. Africa “South Africa’s fortunes are inextricably linked to those of our continent, and to the Southern African Development Community in particular. For the sake of our own stability and prosperity, we are duty bound to pursue interventions that will bring peace, stability and development in our continent.” South Africa will continue to expand trade and investment opportunities with its global trade partners and will look to attract investment and financing to South Africa through participation in multilateral forums such as the Group of Twenty(link is external), which it will host in 2025. This year South Africa assumes the chairmanship of the Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa(link is external) group of countries. Its focus will be on collaboration on sustainable development, the just energy transition, industrialisation and the implementation of the African Continental Free Trade Area(link is external) (AfCFTA). South Africa, together with its neighbours in the Southern African Customs Union(link is external), will soon finalise its industrial offer on the AfCFTA. Once fully operationalised, the AfCFTA will provide an unprecedented opportunity to deepen African economic integration, grow national economies, and open up new frontiers and markets for South African companies.

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	“We are a nation seized with the challenges of the present, but we are also a nation striving to fulfil the promise of our future. When we took our first steps on the road to democracy, we had a clear vision of where that road would lead us. “We saw a country in which all people were equal. We saw a country in which the wealth of our resources would be enjoyed by all. We saw a country in which we could live together in peace, in which we could work together to build a common identity and a shared future. “Our nation is founded on a Constitution which affirms the democratic values of dignity, equality and freedom, and the rights of each and every one of us. The actions we have outlined this evening, building on the work we have already done, will bring us closer to that vision. “They will enable us, working together and with purpose, to emerge from this crisis as a nation transformed. We will emerge from this crisis with an electricity system that is more efficient, more reliable and more competitive. “We will emerge with ports and railways that again rival the best in the world, with broadband access for more South Africans in more parts of the country, and with a sustainable supply of quality water. We will welcome more tourists to our country, and develop and attract the skills our economy needs. “We will create work for those who are unemployed, and give hope to those who have waited too long. With more police on the street, with functioning community policing forums and an effective and independent prosecution authority, our people will be able to count on the protection of the State. “By fighting economic sabotage and organised crime, our infrastructure will be more secure and businesses will be able to operate more freely. Through a strengthened and expanded social protection system, fewer people will live in poverty and fewer households will experience hunger. “We must do all of these things, not only to overcome our immediate challenges, but to renew the promise of South Africa. It is a promise that we have kept alive in our hearts and in our actions. “This year, it will be 10 years since we bid farewell to Nelson Mandela, the first President of a democratic South Africa, our beloved Madiba. It will also be 105 years since his birth. As we honour his great life, let us draw inspiration from the words he

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
	spoke at his inauguration in 1994, when he said: “Out of the experience of an extraordinary human disaster that lasted too long, must be born a society of which all humanity will be proud. “Our daily deeds as ordinary South Africans must produce an actual South African reality that will reinforce humanity’s belief in justice, strengthen its confidence in the nobility of the human soul and sustain all our hopes for a glorious life for all.” To build such a society, to overcome the great difficulties of the moment, we need to work together. We need to stay the course. “We need, as a nation, at this time more than any other, to reveal our true character. We need to work together and leave no one behind.”

1.8.3 STATES OF THE PROVINCE ADDRESS 2023

Key Government Priorities/Tasks	Summary
Restoring Energy Security	We are pleased to report that we have now recovered our lost ground after the disruption caused by the COVID-19 pandemic. Last year, on this occasion, we made a commitment to traverse the path of economic recovery towards a post-COVID-19 pandemic era. Our plan has been guided by the path of economic renewal, geared strategically towards fighting unemployment, poverty and inequality. Notwithstanding these positive developments in respect of our response to Covid-19 pandemic, we are convening here today amidst other harsh global and national economic conditions. Indications are that geopolitical conflicts, such as the war in Ukraine and the wider impact of the sanctions associated with it, will affect other economies, including ours. Already, our country has witnessed spikes in fuel prices, which have a negative impact on the production and transportation of many

	products, including food. In addition, the rising cost-of-living has led to tightening financial conditions in most regions. This, together with the lingering COVID-19 pandemic in China, weighs heavily on the economic outlook. Similarly, the State of the Province Address is taking place at a time when our country is grappling with the detrimental effects of the electricity crisis. It is for this reason that we welcome the pronouncements by President Ramaphosa regarding measures the country is taking to mitigate the effects of this crisis. As Limpopo, we will also ensure that we play our part, including in the just energy transition. In making our contribution to help resolve the energy crisis and to build a just energy transition, we will need to prioritise the building of an uninterrupted electric power supply capability for essential services. In this regard, the Office of the Premier is assigned to play a major and wider co-ordinating role, in giving guidance to our provincial efforts. Key amongst these, is the development of a province-specific and comprehensive energy plan to ensure that we build a new electricity generation capacity in our province. To this effect, the provincial government, and subsequently municipalities, must include in their plans the development of energy production projects. These plans must encapsulate the possible retrofitting of solar panels to all government buildings. This will have to be done in a way that will complement Eskom. The provision of healthcare and education services should be amongst the first to be insulated from the electric power supply interruptions. And it is in this context that as a start, I have mandated the MEC for Health to prioritise the installation of solar power to hospitals and clinics in the province. In the same spirit, I am pleased to report about the launch of the Renewable Energy Strategy by Musina-Makhado SEZ in partnership with the United States Agency for International Development. The strategy, which will be launched next month in March, will serve as a blueprint to guide investments in our energy cluster and also to promote sustainable development.
Economy	On the economic front, there has been some signs of recovery as we confront the triple challenges of poverty, unemployment, and inequality. It is also worth noting that the official unemployment rate in our country has decreased in six provinces. We are pleased to report that the largest decrease was recorded in Limpopo at 5,3 per cent, that is from 36,3 per cent, down to 31 per cent. A worrying trend, however, is that as per Statistics South Africa's Quarterly Labour Force Survey, of the 3rd Quarter 2022, young people aged 15 to 24 and 25 to 34 record the highest unemployment rates nationally. In that quarter, there were about 10,2 million young people aged 15 to 24 years across the country, of whom 34,5 per cent were not in employment, education or training.

Notwithstanding these challenges, I am pleased to report that our Provincial Socio-Economic Recovery Plan, as anchored in our efforts to industrialise the province, has begun yielding positive results.

Last year during this sitting, we reported that we had to urgently start visible work at the Musina-Makhado Special Economic Zone. I am happy to report that after the approval of the Environmental Impact Assessment, construction work in the North-Site has commenced with the laying of bulk infrastructure.

The construction of the 14 kilometres internal roads has already created immediate opportunities for work-seekers and local entrepreneurs. Additional bulk installations, such as water, sewer, electricity, and integrated security infrastructure, will continue in 2023. It is also worth mentioning that the appeal process, in respect of the Musina-Makhado SEZ South-Site Environmental Impact Assessment was concluded in July 2022. This has paved a way for the completion of the township establishment and the roll-out of the requisite bulk infrastructure services.

Nevertheless, we are aware of the other parties that continue litigating against the development of the Musina-Makhado SEZ. We are confident that, as before, we shall overcome this hurdle.

In the recent past, there has, on the other hand, been an outcry about the unavailability of water to support the MusinaMakhado SEZ. We are, however, pleased to announce that the Department of Water and Sanitation has given us an assurance that it will support the project with water on a short, medium- to long-term basis. Among the proposed water sources, are ground water, imported water, and the development of new dams in the Vhembe District.

Another catalytic project we reported about during the State of the Province Address last year, is the Fetakgomo-Tubatse SEZ. I am delighted to report that the Environmental Impact Assessment was granted. We have since allocated a budget for Fetakgomo-Tubatse SEZ infrastructure development. We are now ready to submit the application for the designation of the Fetakgomo-Tubatse SEZ to Cabinet.

We projected to create over 6,000 jobs over the implementation of the Industrial Parks Revitalisation Programme in all the five districts of our province.

The Critical Infrastructure Programme has approved R49,9 million funding for the Seshego Industrial Park to refurbish the top structures of 11 factories. The plan is to start immediately with construction. We envisage that this construction will be completed in

the next financial year.

In 2021 we hosted the first Limpopo Investment Conference. Through this initiative, we raised R209 billion worth of investment pledges. To date, more than seven major projects worth more than R50

billion are in the implementation phase. Anglo-American has committed to advancing the hydrogen economy. Already, it has implemented R40 billion worth of their commitment in Mogalakwena.

President Ramaphosa had the opportunity to launch the nuGen Hydrogen Truck in 2022. The development of the nuGen Truck Hydrogen Truck and its successful launch in the mining sector in Limpopo were an important contribution in the global response to climate change, specifically the decarbonisation of energy, transport, and broader industry.

Mining in our province is a major contributor to our production output. The sector is poised to play an increasing role given our mineral endowments. It is my pleasure to announce that Mining Restoration Investment has made a significant investment in the mining sector, with a pledge of R700 million towards a chrome and Platinum Group Metal mine in the Thabazimbi. I am proud to say that the company has already spent R140 million of the productive investment. Sefateng Chrome Mine is revolutionising chrome mining with its unique underground shaft. They have invested a substantial sum of R1 billion to make this project a reality.

This investment has created 350 jobs during the construction phase and provided a long-term source of employment for 600 individuals once production begins.

Last year, we reported to this august house progress regarding the Corridor Mining Resources, which is a shareholder through Limpopo Economic Development Agency to the Mphahlele Platinum Group Element Mining.

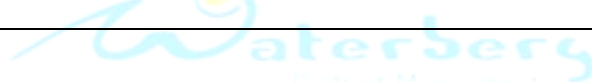
In 2023, there will be further drilling to upgrade the resources. The equity partner, Sedibelo, is mobilising R1 billion to operationalise the mine. Mozweli Engineering, which has pledged R115 billion investment, is paving the way in small-scale nuclear power. Shekinah Lion and Game Lodge, which made an initial investment of R60 million, is now leading the way in ecotourism. Nalane Green Solar Energy Project, which has started implementing their R5 billion investment pledge, is providing a unique, socially responsible, approach to energy generation.

The Nkuna City Investment is creating a vibrant, dynamic community that seamlessly integrates business, retail, commercial, industrial, hospitality, institutional, and residential land use. In just the first two phases of the project, it has created over 2,000 temporary jobs and 550 permanent jobs, with an estimated worth of R370 million.

I am honoured to stand before you here today, to share some exciting news regarding the ZZ2 Packhouse. The company is undoubtedly committed to the growth and development of the agricultural sector in our province. We are proud to announce that

	ZZ2's investment of R128 million into a cutting-edge agro-processing facility for avocados and tomatoes is now complete.
Rail Network	The larger proportion of our population, mostly workers and work-seekers, depends on public transport, such as the Great North Transport buses, to commute daily. The Great North Transport has been repositioned to achieve its mandate of providing affordable and reliable public transport to the people of Limpopo. Having accepted its challenges, the Great North Transport had to adopt a Turnaround Plan, which is unfolding. We have also noted the challenges of transport planning on provincial economic nodes such as Tubatse, Musina, Lephalale and Polokwane. The economic pressures of migration affect transport planning. The Department of Transport and Community Safety will be tasked to build requisite capacity on transport planning at departmental and municipal levels. Our economic recovery route rests mainly, although not only, on the number of jobs we are able to create in our leading sectors and support for SMMEs. In the 2022 State of the Province Address, I made commitments about rehabilitation and upgrading of roads in the province. I can now confirm that those projects have since been completed. They include; • The rehabilitation of 11 kilometres on Road D1589 from Ga-Kgobokanang to Ga-Makgato and De-Vrede in the Capricorn District. • The rehabilitation of 7,3 kilometres on Road D2537 road in Penge in the Sekhukhune District. • The rehabilitation of 9 kilometres on Road D11 from GaMamaila Kolobetona connecting the R81 in the Mopani District is complete. To ensure the entire D11 is in a good condition, we have also appointed another contractor for Phase 3 in November 2022. When Phase 3 is completed, the entire D11 will be in a good condition to ensure that the districts of Mopani and Vhembe are connected. • The rehabilitation of 27 kilometres on Road D3840 from Giyani to Phalaborwa in the Mopani District is at 67 per cent. I can confirm that Phase 1 of the project has been completed. We have recently appointed a contractor for Phase 2. I would also like to announce that we have made significant progress on the other projects I pronounced on in 2022. We have completed the

	construction of bridge 6116 in Makuleke; We completed rehabilitation of 5 kilometres on Road D3200 Lebaka to Mohlabaneng; Phase 2 of the rehabilitation of 30 kilometres of Road D4, Elim to Malamulele; has reached practical completion. We have seen that the condition of the road from N1 to Elim is in a dire state. We appointed a contractor to do major rehabilitation on the road. The rehabilitation of flood damaged Road D4240, Maseven in Sekhukhune is at 70 per cent; Phase 1 of the rehabilitation of 40 kilometres on Road D1483, Musina to Pongorwa in Vhembe is complete. We have appointed another contractor for phase 2 who is currently at 75 per cent progress. Upon completion of Phase 2, we will appoint another contractor for phase 3 to ensure the road leading to Mapungubwe Nature Park is in a good condition. We have completed the upgrading of 13 kilometres on Road D2922, D2919 from Keerom to Tshikani. In the same speech I pronounced on the appointment of contractors by the end of 2022. I would like to give a progress report as well, in this regard: Following the completion of designs for Road D4180, Atok Mine to Ga-Selepe to Modimolle in Sekhukhune, the construction work will commence in the next financial year, 2023/2024. Designs have also been completed for Road D4260, Malope to Phokwane in Sekhukhune and the construction work will commence in the next financial year. The construction work for D4090, D4093, D4094, D4096 Malimate Roads in Capricorn District will commence in next financial year. Finally, the construction work for D4199 Apel to Ga-Nkoana to D4190 in Sekhukhune District will commence in the next financial year. In the same vein, we have prioritised other roads in the province, and, to this end, contractors have been appointed: • D3278 Blouberg Hospital to Buffelshoek in Capricorn. • D3561 Segole 1 and Segole 2 (Masebe Nature Reserve to N11 (Waterval) in Waterberg. • D3669 Mavhunga access road in Vhembe. • D3734 Tshatshama road in Mopani. • D3436, D3428, D5007 Ga-Ramoshwane, GaRammetlwane, GaRamotlwana in Capricorn. • D3248 Thapane access to Nwamitwa in Mopani. • D4283 Glencowie to Malaka in Sekhukhune.
--	---



	• D3671 Musekwa to Maranikwe in Vhembe, and • The upgrading of the 10 kilometres Road D4109 from Mmamatonya to Road D885 in the Capricorn District. I would like to further mention that 83 maintenance and rehabilitation projects will be attended to in the province to fix the ailing road network in the 2023/2024 financial year. I am also glad to announce that we have appointed 41 Engineering Consultants to design roads in all five districts of the province. The designs are expected to be completed over a period of twelve months. This forward planning approach will help us ensure that whenever funds are available for construction, we implement without waiting for designs to be completed.
Water Security	Water provisioning is high on the agenda of this government. During the State of the Province Address last year, we presented a detailed report about progress and challenges regarding water supply in Limpopo. Major projects for water resource development will be implemented by the Department of Water and Sanitation. These include the raising of the Tzaneen Dam wall, Olifants River Water Resources Development, Musina-Makhadzo SEZ bulk water supply and Nandoni Water Treatment Works. Municipalities which are responsible for water reticulation require the bulk resource to complete supply of water to communities. I am pleased that during our engagement with the Minister of Water and Sanitation, Mr Senzo Mchunu, it was agreed that we have to expedite these bulk water infrastructure projects, especially the Nandoni-Nsami Bulk pipeline, Giyani Water Treatment Phase 1, Giyani Water Services, and the Loskop Regional Bulk Water Supply. This we must do without hesitation because the people of Giyani have been waiting for water for a long-time. They must drink water before the end of the financial year. I am happy that Mopani District Municipality did not wait for the pipeline to be completed. They have just appointed contractors to commence with the work of laying infrastructure for reticulation. We expect our municipalities to invest more in the development and maintenance of water, sanitation, electricity, and road infrastructure. In the past years, our municipalities were performing above expectations in Municipal Infrastructure Grant spending. The COVID-19 pandemic impacted the Municipal Infrastructure Grant spending negatively.

	Nevertheless, there are still municipalities which have performed well regarding their Municipal Infrastructure Grant. They include, • Maruleng Municipality at 91,2 per cent. • Ephraim Mogale Municipality at 80,9 per cent • and Elias Motsoaledi Municipality at 72,1 per cent. This is not mere spending; it is, most importantly, infrastructure development and maintenance, which involves the provision of work as well. It is also worth noting that the Municipal Infrastructure Grant was allocated to other important infrastructure development project besides water: • A total of 25 kilometres local access streets has been added into the provincial road network. • 8 community services projects were completed. • The community facilities constructed include community halls, sports facilities, cemeteries, and high mast lights. • One bulk water project was completed in the Capricorn District to benefit 2,745 households. By the end of the financial year, municipalities had spent R2,8 billion. That amounts to 92,3 per cent of the total Municipal Infrastructure Grant allocation. These, of course, are encouraging signs and I therefore call on the municipalities to sustain the momentum. We have since encouraged municipalities as the water service authorities to utilise a portion of their Municipal Infrastructure Grant to refurbish or replace ageing infrastructure. We shall continue to align all these projects through the Premier's InterGovernmental Relations Forum, so that the District Development Model can shape the manner in which we provide services to our people.
Telecommunications	In keeping with the dictates of the Fourth Industrial Revolution and demands of knowledge economy, the project of providing our learners and educators with appropriate ICT resources is well on track. In the previous financial years, we provided Grades 1 and 8 learners in quintile 1 to 3 select school with tablets and their educators with laptops. There is still a lot of work we need to do to complete the shift, inclusive of building learning and teaching interactivity on the eLearning platform and securing digital connectivity across the province. Similarly, we recognise the critical role that the Early Childhood Development programme plays. Cabinet took a decision to transfer this function to the Department of Education with effect from 1st of April 2022. We have since put in place systems to ensure that 105 000 children aged 0 to 4 years access registered ECD programmes in community based centres throughout the province.

Trade and Investment	In 2021 we hosted the first Limpopo Investment Conference. Through this initiative, we raised R209 billion worth of investment pledges. To date, more than seven major projects worth more than R50 billion are in the implementation phase. Anglo-American has committed to advancing the hydrogen economy. Already, it has implemented R40 billion worth of their commitment in Mogalakwena. President Ramaphosa had the opportunity to launch the nuGen Hydrogen Truck in 2022. The development of the nuGen Truck Hydrogen Truck and its successful launch in the mining sector in Limpopo were an important contribution in the global response to climate change, specifically the decarbonisation of energy, transport, and broader industry. Mining in our province is a major contributor to our production output. The sector is poised to play an increasing role given our mineral endowments. It is my pleasure to announce that Mining Restoration Investment has made a significant investment in the mining sector, with a pledge of R700 million towards a chrome and Platinum Group Metal mine in the Thabazimbi. I am proud to say that the company has already spent R140 million of the productive investment. Sefateng Chrome Mine is revolutionising chrome mining with its unique underground shaft. They have invested a substantial sum of R1 billion to make this project a reality. This investment has created 350 jobs during the construction phase and provided a long-term source of employment for 600 individuals once production begins. Last year, we reported to this august house progress regarding the Corridor Mining Resources, which is a shareholder through Limpopo Economic Development Agency to the Mphahlele Platinum Group Element Mining. In 2023, there will be further drilling to upgrade the resources. The equity partner, Sedibelo, is mobilising R1 billion to operationalise the mine. Mozweli Engineering, which has pledged R115 billion investment, is paving the way in small-scale nuclear power. Shekinah Lion and Game Lodge, which made an initial investment of R60 million, is now leading the way in ecotourism. Nalane Green Solar Energy Project, which has started implementing their R5 billion investment pledge, is providing a unique, socially responsible, approach to energy generation. The Nkuna City Investment is creating a vibrant, dynamic community that seamlessly integrates business, retail, commercial, industrial, hospitality, institutional and residential land use. In just the first two phases of the project, it has created over 2,000
-----------------------------	--

	temporary jobs and 550 permanent jobs, with an estimated worth of R370 million. I am honoured to stand before you here today, to share some exciting news regarding the ZZ2 Packhouse. The company is undoubtedly committed to the growth and development of the agricultural sector in our province. We are proud to announce that ZZ2's investment of R128 million into a cutting-edge agro-processing facility for avocados and tomatoes is now complete.
Jobs	Our economic recovery route rests mainly, although not only, on the number of jobs we are able to create in our leading sectors and support for SMMEs. We are pleased to report that, during the 2022/2023 financial year, we have exceeded our target for supporting SMMEs that helped to sustain up to 1,000 jobs. In addition, a total of R4,4 million worth of loans were disbursed to support SMMEs and co-operatives. A total of just over 13,000 local enterprises received assistance throughout the province. We shall continue to support 100 SMMEs and 100 cooperatives in the next financial year. Our support for development of youth entrepreneurs has received a major boost. In partnership with the National Youth Development Agency, we have set aside no less than R10 million, to support established and aspiring youth entrepreneurs in the province. We are therefore inviting young people to apply in their numbers and take advantage of this opportunity so that they become meaningful role players in the mainstream economy in future. We have in place a strategic partnership with EXXARO to operate a Satellite Office in Lephalale Region. We have also partnered with Impact Catalyst for the complementation of specific enterprise development programmes on behalf of the participating mining houses in Limpopo. Further, we have a strategic partnership with Black Umbrellas for the co-implementation of enterprise supplier development programmes targeting the private and public sectors In 2022, we reported about several agricultural projects that needed our focused attention so that we ensure food security for our people.

	The Lebowakgomo Abattoir has received a boost, with an approval of R32 million by National Empowerment Fund. We also reported about the interventions we planned to make in supporting the turnaround of the Zebediela Citrus Estate. Our intervention is bearing the fruits. Preparatory work on the development of a comprehensive Master Plan for Zebediela in partnership with Impact Catalyst has started, following the conclusion, and the signing of a Cooperation Agreement in October 2022. Thus far, and despite the challenges experienced, mainly financial constraints from lower-than-expected income, the production of oranges is well on course. Preparations for harvesting are underway, scheduled to start later this month. The contribution made through the Social Employment Fund, which is implemented by Impact Catalyst, has managed to create more than 600 jobs. Notable progress has been made through the Farmer Production Support Units Programme. The building for Masala Farmer Production Support Unit in Mopani District has been completed. This will benefit no less than 110 farmers producing food on the 2,203 hectares of land. Since Project Koba-Tlala Production Brigade was initiated in 2022/2023, the South African National Defence Force procured over R1 million worth of fresh produce from the farmers involved. Similarly, 32 collection points have been established to ensure active participation of small-scale farmers close to military establishments.
Social Security	Government has since developed a turn-around strategy, to address the Human Settlement portfolio, which has been of great concern to us because of its performance. The implementation of the strategy is already yielding results and the current level of performance in the delivery of housing units is now at 3,881, excluding the 35 units delivered through the Finance Linked Individual Subsidy Programme. We envisage that the Human Settlements Development Grant Budget allocation, mainly earmarked to deliver 4,973 housing units in 6,055 sites, will create housing opportunities for 3,150 qualifying job seekers. We are very excited that finally, the long awaited Limpopo Academic Hospital is going to be constructed this year. The Minister of Finance yesterday announced in Parliament that the construction of this 488-bed Hospital will begin next month. Of particular importance is that this massive project, will not only help towards improving the provision of health services in the

	province, but will also create job and business opportunities for our people during and post-construction.
Education	School infrastructure remains high on the agenda of this government as it is prerequisite for conducive learning environment. To this effect the province will build an additional 150 classrooms in the next financial year. This will go a long way towards reducing classrooms backlog at our schools. On the other hand, we have made great strides in addressing the challenge of schools with inappropriate sanitation facilities. The next phase is to attend to those schools that have inadequate sanitation. About 150 of such schools will be provided with additional sanitation facilities over the next Medium-Term Expenditure Framework period.
Fight against crime and violence	Last year we recommitted ourselves to make life very difficult for criminals, especially those who wish to use Limpopo as a haven for their nefarious activities. This was largely because peace and stability have always been defining features of our province. However, as of December 2022, the province experienced an increase in various categories of crime. The total number of crime statistics reported at that time was 242, which was an increase from the previous statistics. There is however, a notable decrease in reported cases of both sexual offence and attempted sexual offence. This indicates that the province, through SAPS and other partners in the safety and security cluster are confronting gender-based violence head-on. Whilst noting this provincial decrease, we are concerned that incidents of gender-based violence continue to rise in Thohoyandou, Mankweng, Seshego and Giyani. For us to win the battle against gender-based violence, we need everyone to play their part. Last year, there were numerous inter-sectoral campaigns through face-to-face, print and electronic media in an effort to intensify our fight against crime. All districts held dialogues wherein NGOs, Traditional Leaders, Interdenominational and sector departments participated. This platform has brought about a renewed commitment to fight crime on the part of our people. We shall therefore put mechanisms in place to ensure that departmental coordination and stakeholder collaborations are

	strengthened.
Fight against Corruption	As part of this important journey, we committed ourselves to fight against corruption in government, wastage, and mismanagement of public resources. During the State of the Province last year, we gave a report to this august house on the work of Special Investigating Unit into COVID-19 funds. To date, the provincial government is implementing the SIU recommendations. We are also supporting the SIU where investigations are still going on. At least five officials are facing internal disciplinary processes in this regard. One former official is facing criminal investigation. We are sending a strong message to all those in the public service, who are prone to commit corruption, fraud and maladministration, to avoid being on the wrong side of the law! We are well on track in restoring corporate governance and improving financial administration in Limpopo. Sustained audit improvements over this period attest to our commitment to clean governance. In 2021/2022 alone, Limpopo Provincial Government attained four clean audit opinions. We have also received nine unqualified audit opinions, while only two remain qualified.
Building a Capable and Effective State	The Provincial Government has made significant inroads towards the building a capable, ethical, and developmental state. We are confident that we have stabilised the provincial government. This was confirmed by the Auditor General when she said: “The province improved its overall audit outcomes over the three years since the previous administration.... The province improved its compliance with laws and regulations over the administration period, with 12 auditees (71 per cent) having material non-compliance findings in 2021-22, compared to 16 auditees (94 per cent) in 2018-19. We find it encouraging that improved compliance translated into a notable reduction in irregular expenditure incurred.” I would also want to welcome the Cabinet decision to adopt the framework on the professionalization of the public service. We accordingly commit ourselves to implementing this framework. We equally call upon municipalities to embrace this effort to professionalise this sphere of government.

	The call for professionalization of public service will help us intensify good governance. During the State of the Province Address last year, we committed our provincial departments and municipalities to play a leading role in executing the District Development Model. We are pleased with the progress regarding the implementation of this model, especially the alignment of plans. In Limpopo, all the district municipalities have adopted the DDM approach.
--	---

1.9 TABLE 7: STRATEGIC PERFORMANCE OVERVIEW ANNUAL REPORT

2021/22 INSTITUTIONAL SCORE CARD

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
1.	Spatial rationale	To coordinate spatial transformation	Integrated Planning	Number of Highly rated IDP	OMM	1/1 IDP rated high	1X highly rated IDP attained by 30 June 2022	1/1 IDP Highly rated	0	2021/22 highly rated by the MEC of CoGHSTA	None	CoGHSTA IDP Analysis report
2.	Spatial rationale	To coordinate spatial transformation	Integrated Planning	Number of IDP (s) Approved by council by 31 May	OMM	1/1	1X 2022/23 IDP Approved by 30 June 2022	1	0	Final 2022/23 IDP approved by council 27 May 2022	None	Approved 2022/23- Approved IDP with Council resolution

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
				2022								
3.	Spatial rationale	To facilitate access and transform land and rural tourism development	Integrated planning	Number of DMPT Meeting held	PED	10/4 meetings held	4 X DMPT Meeting held by 30 June 2022	16	12	16/4 DMPT meeting held 08 July, 30 July and 15,16 September 2021 and 29 September 2021 11 November 2021, and 14 December 2021 09 February, 03,04 March,11 March 2022 11 May, 01 June, 13 June, 28 June and 29 June 2022	None	Invitation Agenda, Minutes Attendance register



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
4.	Basic service delivery	To preserve and protect natural resources and promote public health	Municipal Health	Number of Food outlets issued with certificate of compliance	SDCS	97/80	80 X Food outlets issued with certificate of compliance by 30 June 2022	101	21	101/80 certificate of compliance issued to food Outlets	None	Signed copies of certificates
5.	Basic service delivery	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to services.	Municipal health	Number of permitted land fill site monitored	SDCS	9/9	9 X Permitted land fill site monitored by 30 June 2022	9	0	9/9 landfill sites monitored	None	36 Reports on Permitted land fill site monitored & Schedule of permitted landfill site monitoring sessions



	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
6.	Basic Service Delivery	To preserve and protect natural resources and promote public health	Air quality management	Number of ambient air quality monitoring reports submitted	SDCS	new	4X ambient air quality monitoring reports submitted by 30 June 2022	3	1	3/4 ambient air quality monitoring reports submitted	The Indicator will be reviewed during adjustment SDBIP to accommodate the submission of report after the end of the quarter.	Air quality monitoring reports
7.	Basic delivery service	To coordinate and monitor infrastructure development for the provision and access to service	Disaster Management	Number of Disaster Management stakeholder consultative meetings held	SDCS	24/8	6 X Disaster Management stakeholder consultative meetings held by 30 June 2022	2	4	2/6 meetings held Dates of the meetings 27 January 2022 and 28 June 2022 District Command Council put on hold due to the LG elections.	The Disaster stakeholder consultative meeting will be resuscitated in the 2022/23 FY.	Invitation Agenda Minutes & Attendance register
8.	Basic service delivery	To coordinate and monitor infrastructure	Fire fighting	Number of Fire-fighting reports submitted by local	SDCS	20/20	20 X Fire-fighting reports submitted by local municipalities	20	0	20/20 report submitted by local municipalities	None	Fire-fighting Quarterly reports

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
		development for the provision and access to services		municipalities			s by 30 June 2022					
9.	Financial management and viability	To effectively manage finances and resource mobilisation	Expenditure Management	Percentage of Operating budget variance in terms of SDBIP	ALL	10%	≤10% of Operating budget variance attained by 30 June 2022	9%	1%	9% Opex variance	None	Annexure B Financial Report
10.	Financial management and viability	To effectively manage finances and resource mobilisation.	Expenditure Management	Percentage Capital budget variance in terms of SDBIP	ALL	53%	≤10% of Capital budget variance attained by 30 June 2022	25%	15%	None adherence to the procurement plan	Improve the adherence to the Procurement Plan	Annexure C Financial report
11.	Financial management and viability	To effectively manage finances and resource mobilisation.	Reporting	Number of section 71 MFMA report submitted within timeframe	BTO	12/12	12 X 71 MFMA report submitted within 10 working days of start of the each	12	0	12/12 s71 report submitted to National Treasury	None	Submission letters or email

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
							Month					
12.	Local Economic Development	To create a conducive environment for radical economic development.	Economic development	Number LED forum meeting held	PED	4/4	4 X LED forum meeting held by 30 June 2022	4	0	4/4 LED Meeting held 20 September and 07 December 2021 02 March 2022 14 June 2022	None	Invitation Agenda Minutes & Attendance register
13.	Local Economic Development	To create a conducive environment for radical economic development.	Economic development	Percentage of LED Forums resolutions implemented	PED	100% 10/10	100% LED forums resolutions implemented by 30 June 2022	82% 9/11	18%	2 outstanding Resolutions – LEDET to provide informal traders strategy framework for LMs. LED Forums not functional	Framework not yet available and LED Forum resuscitation to be discussed in the next meeting	LED Forum(s) resolution register
14.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management & governance systems	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of section 72 Report (s)- Mid-year Budget and performance Assessment Report	OMM	1/1 22/01/2021	1 X (MFMA S72 Report) Mid-year Budget and performance Assessment Report submitted by 25 January	1 25/01/2022	0	2021/22 Mid-Year Budget and Performance Report submitted NT, PT and CoGHSTA 25 January 2022	None	Submission letters to NT/PT & EM with acknowledgment letters & A Copy of Mid-year Budget and

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
				submitted			2022					performance Assessment Report
15.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management & governance systems	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of Submission of Annual Performance Report (APR) and AFS .	OMM	1/1 30/10/2020	1X APR and AFS submitted to AGSA by 31 August 2022.	1 31/08/2021	0	submitted on the 31 st August 2021 to NT, PT, AGSA and CoGHSTA	None	Submission letter with acknowledgment
16.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	AG -Audit outcome/Opinion	ALL	1/1 Unqualified	Unqualified sustained by 30 November 2022	Unqualified	0	Unqualified with no material finding(10 December 2021)	None	Audit opinion
17.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance system	Auditing	Percentage AG material audit queries resolved	ALL	100% 28/28	100% of Prior Year material audit queries resolved by 30 June 2022	100% 13/13	0%	13/13 All Audit queries for the 2020/21 resolved	None	2020/21 Post Audit action plan

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
18.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	Percentage Identified risk resolved within timeframes as specified in risk plan	ALL	70% 7/10	100% of Identified risk resolved within timeframes as specified in risk plan by 30 June 2021	75%	25%	The effectiveness of mitigating risk controls is moving down – due to budgetary constraints to mitigate the identified risk	Budget to be provided in the 2023/24 FY	Risk register
19.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	Percentage of internal audit findings resolved	ALL	84% 26/31	100% of internal audit findings resolved by 30 June 2022	87% 27/31 Resolved.	13%	4 outstanding 13% -Overtime and air-quality by-law, Municipal health by-law and integrated waste management plan	1 May a shift system was introduced to carp overtime. By-laws developed awaiting promulgation	Internal audit action plan
20.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	Number of Audit committee meetings held	OMM	6/4	4 X Audit committee meetings held by 30 June 2022	6	2	6/4 Meeting held on 26 July 2021 26 August 2021 20 September 2021 22 March 2022 16 May 2022 28 June 2022	None	Invitation Agenda Minutes & Attendance register

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
21.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	Percentage of Audit Committee recommendations implemented	ALL	79% 22/28	100% of Audit Committee recommendations implemented by 30 June 2022	100% 6/6	0%	6/6 Audit committee recommendations resolved	None	Audit Committee recommendations Register
22.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Governance	Percentage Council resolutions implemented within timeframes	ALL	29% 5/17	100% Council resolutions implemented by 30 June 2022	86% 12/14	14%	2 outstanding are 1 Mining Houses to assist with funding for winter camps and 2 Launching of the District AIDS Council.	1 letters written to mining houses to request assistance 2. Local Structures not finalised due to lack of corporation from LMs	Council resolutions implemented register
23.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance	Public Participation	Number of IDP Representative Forum meetings convened	OMM	3/4	3 X IDP Representative Forum meetings convened by 30 June 2022	3	0	3/3 held 19 August 2021 28 March 2022 20 May 2022	None	Invitation Agenda Minutes & Attendance register

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
		e										
24.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance	Governance	Percentage of MPAC resolutions implemented	ALL	100% 12/12	100% MPAC resolutions implemented by 30 June 2022	100% 8/8	0%	8/8 MPAC resolution implemented	None	MPAC Resolution register
25.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance	Governance	Number of 2020/21 Oversight report(s) approved by council	OMM	1/1 27/05/2021	1 X 2020/21 Oversight report(s) approved by council by 31 March 2022	1 31/03/2022	0	1/1 MPAC Oversight report approved by council 31 March 2022	None	Council resolution with 2020/21 Oversight Report
26.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Human Resources Management	Number of Senior Management with signed Performance Agreements	OMM	6/6	6 X Senior Management with signed Performance Agreements by 31 July 2021	6	0	All 6 Managers signed the 2021/22 Annual Performance Agreement	None	Copies of Signed Performance Agreements

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
27.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Capacity building and Training (HRD)	Number of officials and Councillors capacitated in terms of the workplace skills plan (WSP)	CSSS	31/25	25 X Officials and Councillors capacitated in terms of the workplace skills plan by end June 2021	44	19	44 Official and councillors trained in 2021/22 FY	None	Copies of the Attendance registers
28.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To Improve, attract, develop and retain best human capital	Occupational Health and Safety	Number of OHS Committee meetings held	CSSS	4/4	4 X OHS Committee meetings held by 30 June 2022	4	0	4/4 OHS meeting held 01 Sept 2021 19 Nov 2021 22 February 2022 20 June 2022	None	Attendance registers
29.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To improve Administration and Governance Capacity	Information and Communication Technology	Number of ICT Steering Committee Meeting Held	CSSS	4/4	2 X ICT Steering Committee Meeting Held by 30 June 2022	2	0	2/2 ICT steering committee held 10 May 2022 29 July 2022	None	Invitation Agenda Minutes & Attendance register
30.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical	Organisational Development	Number of approved 2022/23 SDBIP by	OMM	1/1 11/06/2021	1 X 2021/22 SDBIP Approved by the EM by	1 15/06/202	0	1/1 2022/23 SDBIP approved by Executive Mayor on the 15	None	Copy of the Approved 2021/22 SDBIP

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
	tional Development	and best human capital		the Executive Mayor			the 28 June 2022	2		June 2022		
31.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of 2021/22 Annual Performance evaluation conducted	OMM	0/1	1X 2020/21 Annual Performance evaluation conducted by 30 June 2022	0	1	0/1 Evaluations were not conducted	The 2020/21 Annual evaluation are scheduled for 15 September 22	Attendance register
32.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of Annual report (sec 121) adopted & submitted to MEC	OMM	1/1 04/06/2021	1 X Annual Report (sec 121) adopted & submitted to MEC by 31 March 2022	1 31/03/2022	0	1/1 Annual Report approved by 31 March 2022 and submitted to MEC 8 April 2022	None	Submission letter
33.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To improve Administration and Governance Capacity	Legal Services	Number of litigation reports compiled and submitted to council	CSSS	4/4	4X litigation reports compiled and submitted to council by 30 June 2022	4	0	litigation reports noted by council 30 August 2022 31 March 2022 27 May 2022 4 th quarter report to be noted by council 29 September 2022	None	Litigation Reports

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2020/21	Annual Target 2021-2022	Actual	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
34.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To improve Administration and Governance Capacity	Human Resource Management	Number of LLF meetings held by end June 2022	CSSS	4/4	4 X LLF meetings held by end June 2022	4	0	4/4 meeting held 31 August 2021 25 February 2022 04 May 2022 12 May 2022	None	Invitation Agenda Minutes & Attendance register

1.10 TABLE 8: PROVISION OF BASIC SERVICES

PROVISION OF BASIC SERVICE AS PER THE MUNICIPAL STRUCTURE ACT 119 OF 1998

Powers	Authority	Municipality	Waterberg District	Bela- Bela	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Mogalakwena	Thabazimbi
Municipal Public works only in respect of the needs of municipalities in the discharge of their responsibility to administer functions specially assigned to them under this constitution or any other Law	Schedule 4part B	Both District & locals	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Municipal Public Transport	Schedule 4part B	Both	N	N	N	N	N	N
Municipal Roads	Schedule 5part B	Both	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Refuse removal, refuse dumps, solid waste	Schedule	Both	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

disposal	5part B							
Water and Sanitation services limited to potable water supply systems and Domestic waste-water and sewage disposal system	Schedule 4part B	District	N	Y	Y	Y	Y (bulk)	Y
Electricity and Gas reticulation	Schedule 5part B	District	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Cleansing	Schedule 5part B	Locals	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Storm water management systems in built-up areas	Schedule 4part B	Locals	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Street lighting	Schedule 5part B	Locals	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Traffic and parking	Schedule 5part B	Locals	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Housing	Schedule 4part A	Possible	N	Y Accredited	N	N	N	N



CHAPTER 2: MUNICIPAL PROFILE

2.1 DESCRIPTION OF MUNICIPAL AREA

The Waterberg District Municipality is a Category C municipality located in the South Western part of Limpopo Province, which is South Africa's most Northern Province. The district was formed in 2000 and is one of the five District Municipalities in the Limpopo Province. The district is strategically located in sharing its borders with Capricorn District Municipality in the north and Sekhukhune District Municipality in the east. The south-western boundary abuts the Northwest, while the Gauteng Province lies on the south-eastern side.

The municipality is the biggest district in the province, making up just more than a third of its geographical area. It shares its five-border control points with Botswana, namely Groblersbrug, Stockpoort, Derdepoort, Zanzibar and Platjan.

The largely rural district is made-up of five local municipalities, namely; Bela-Bela LM, Lephalale LM, Modimolle-Mookgopong LM, Mogalakwena LM, and Thabazimbi LM. The District is also made-up of 80 wards, 6 towns, 11 townships, 216 villages, and 30 informal settlements. In addition, the district has 11 Traditional Councils with about 47% of the district's population living in traditional authority areas making up about 7.3% of the landmass of the district.

Waterberg District Municipality is home to 757 000 people which is 1.3% of South Africa's total population. Between 2008 and 2018, the population growth averaged 1.27% per annum, which was just below the growth rate of the province and South Africa at 1.3% and 1.57%, respectively. Lephalale LM experienced the largest increase in population in the district, with an average annual growth rate of 2.87% between 2008 and 2018, while Modimolle/Mookgopong LM experienced an average annual decline of 0.38% in the same period. The high population growth rates in Lephalale can be attributed to the growth of the mining and energy sectors, whereas decline in the Modimolle-Mookgopong can be attributed to the dearth in opportunities as result of lesser traffic on the R101.

The Waterberg District Municipal Area comprises of approximately 44,913 km², with the Density of approximately 15 km²

Some of the towns includes:

Modimolle (formally known as Nystroom);

Mookgopong (formally known as Naboomspruit);

Mokopane (formally known as Potgietersrus);

Mabatlane (formally known as Vaalwater);

Bela-Bela (formally known as Warmbaths)

Lephalale(formally known as Ellisras)

Thabazimbi (Zulu name meaning "Mountain of iron");

Pienaarsrivier

Amandelbult (Mining town within the Thabazimbi municipal jurisdiction)

Its racial persona consist of the following:

African: 91%

Coloured: 0.5%



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Indian/ Asian: 0.4%
White: 7.6%

The languages comprises of the following:

Northern Sotho (Sepedi): 56.4%
Setswana: 11.5%
Tsonga: 8.3%
Afrikaans: 7.7%
And other multi-lingual: 16.1%

Geographically:

The Waterberg District Municipality contains most of the Waterberg Biosphere which falls under UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation), designated as a Biosphere Reserve with the area of 654,033 hectares

The district is one of the first regions in the north to host a Biosphere Reserve by UNESCO

Its ecosystem may be characterised as a dry deciduous forest or Bushveld

Main Economic Sectors:

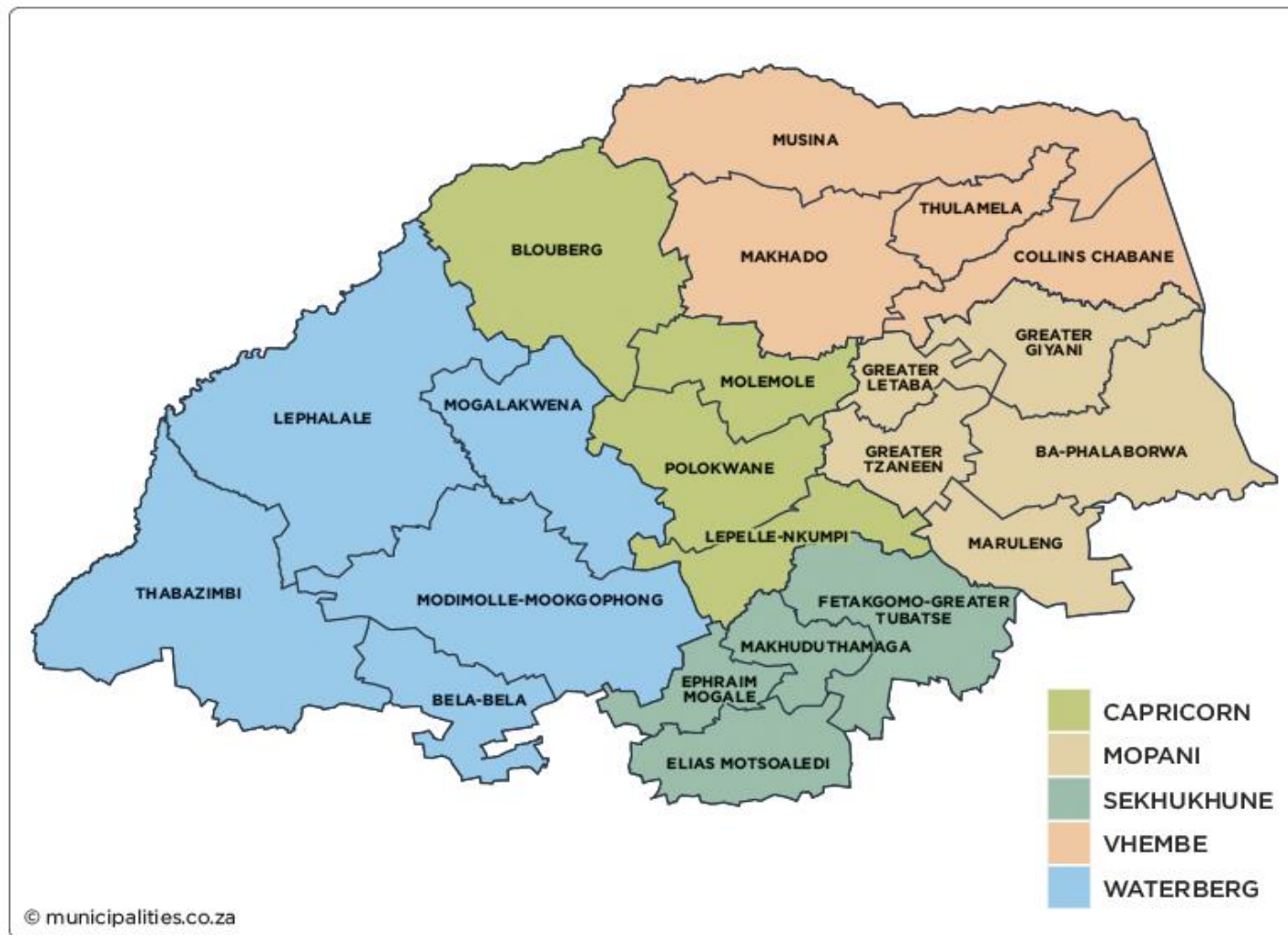
Mining, agriculture, tourism. greatest contributor to Waterberg's Gross Value Add (GVA) to the district being 56%. Other contributing sectors include community services (12%); finance (8%); trade (8%); transport (4%); manufacturing (3%); electricity (3%); agriculture (3%); and construction (2%).



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 1: Waterberg as located within the Province

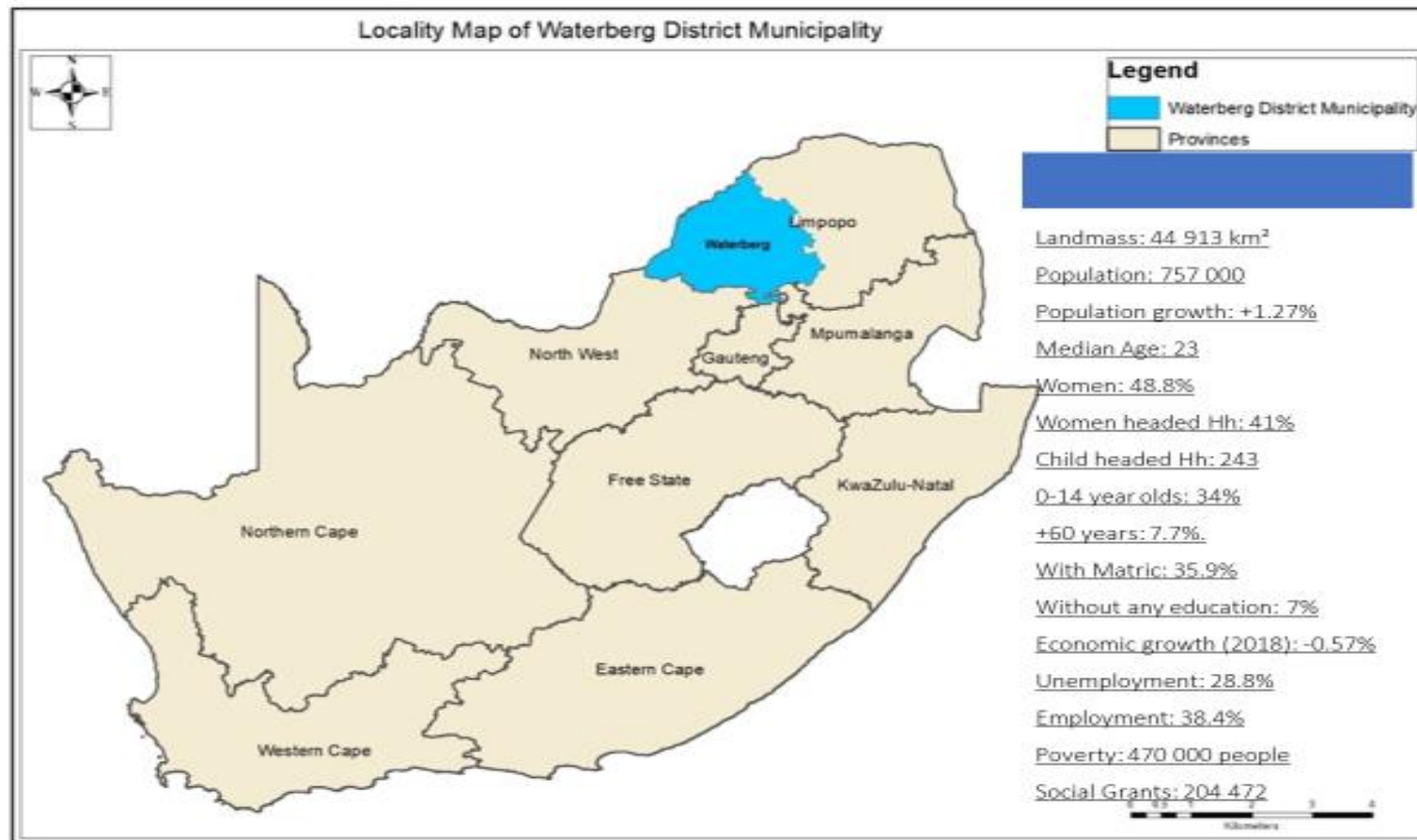


Location of Waterberg within the Limpopo province geographical map

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

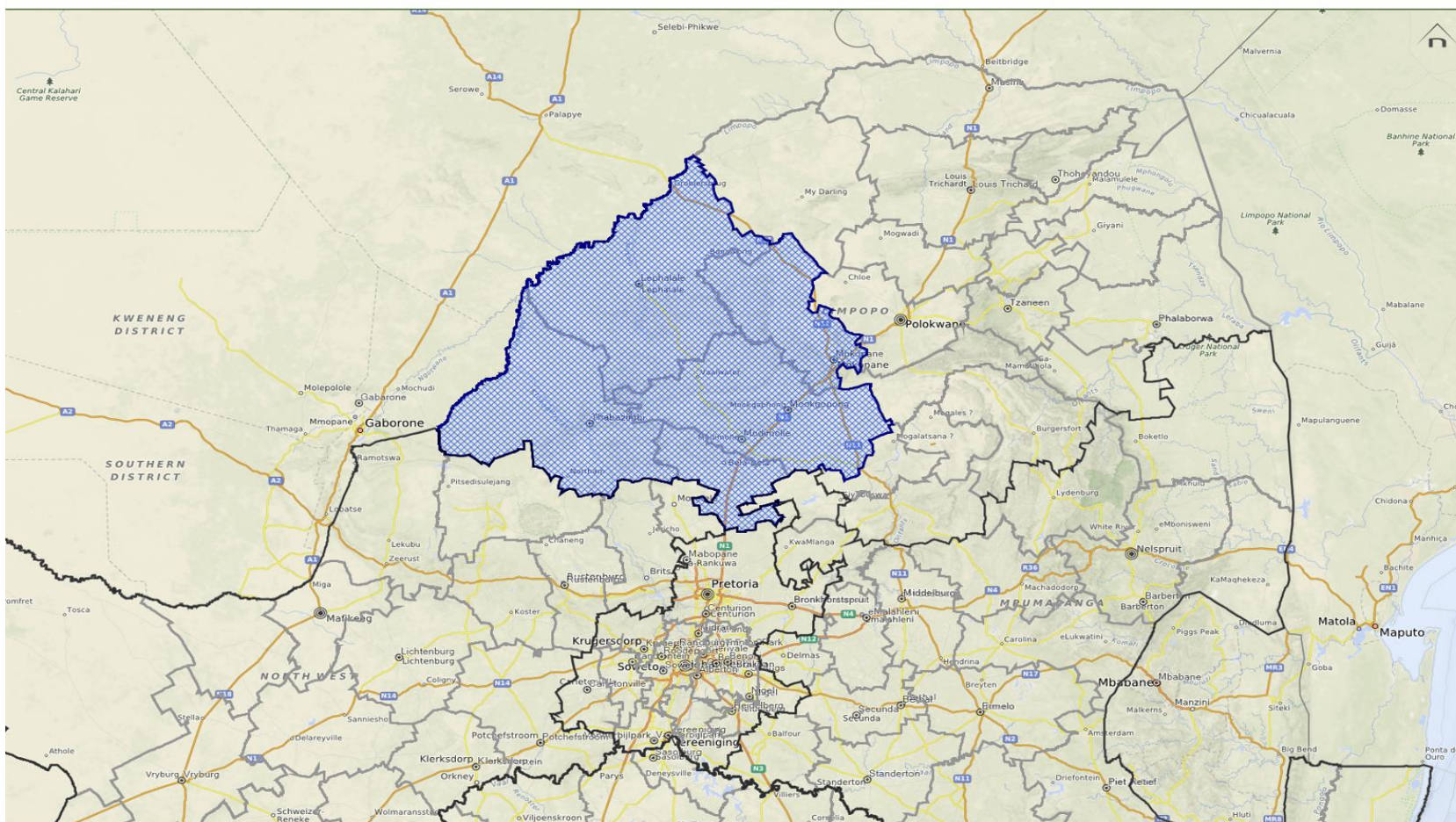
on the Go for Growth

Map 2: Locality Map of Waterberg



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth



Waterberg DM: IDP Analysis
Locality Map

Prepared by: Burgert Gildenhuys
Date & time: 30 November 2016 - 11:17



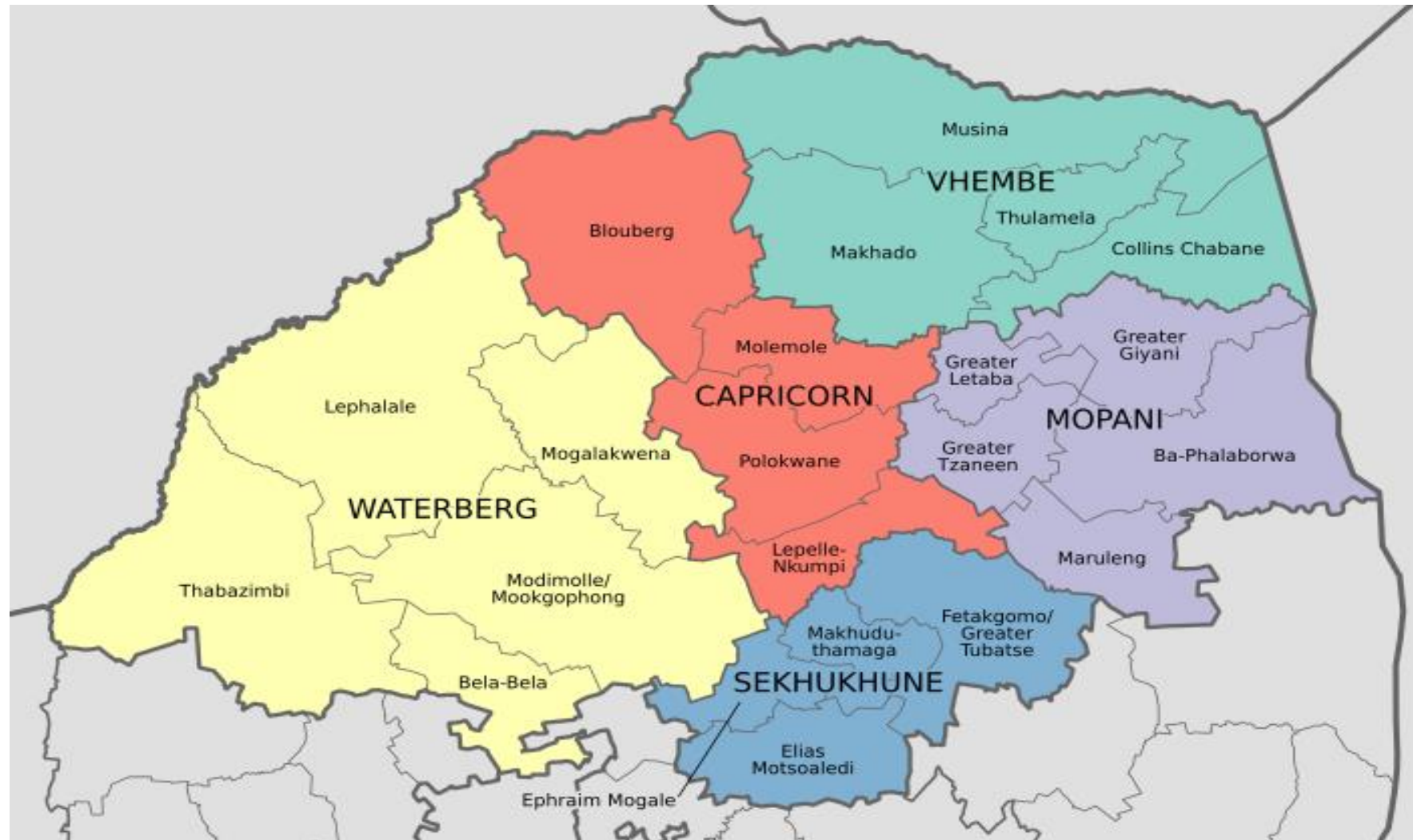
Copyright and all rights reserved
MapAble (Pty) Ltd



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 3: Geographical Map

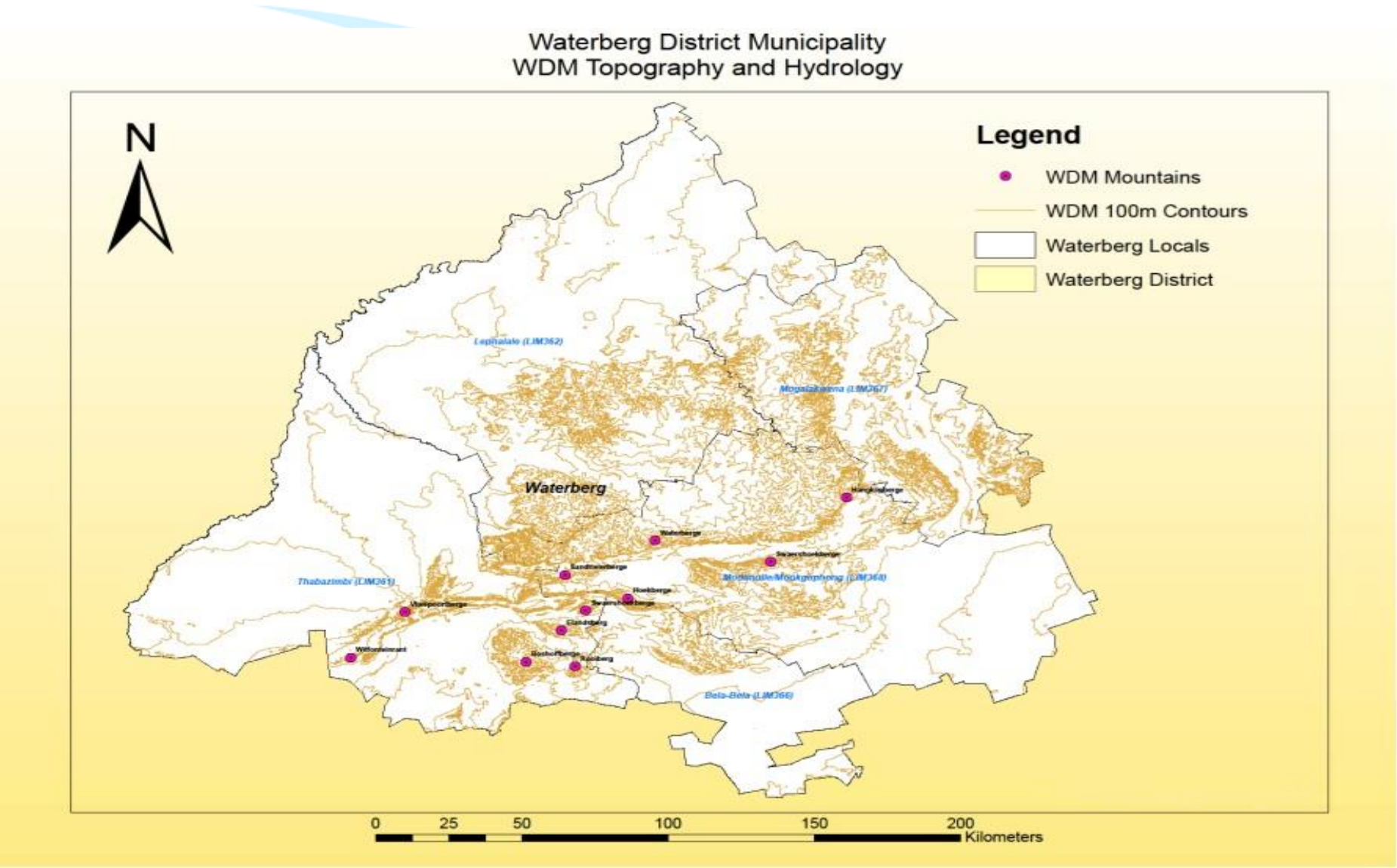



GEOGRAPHIC LOCATION MAP

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

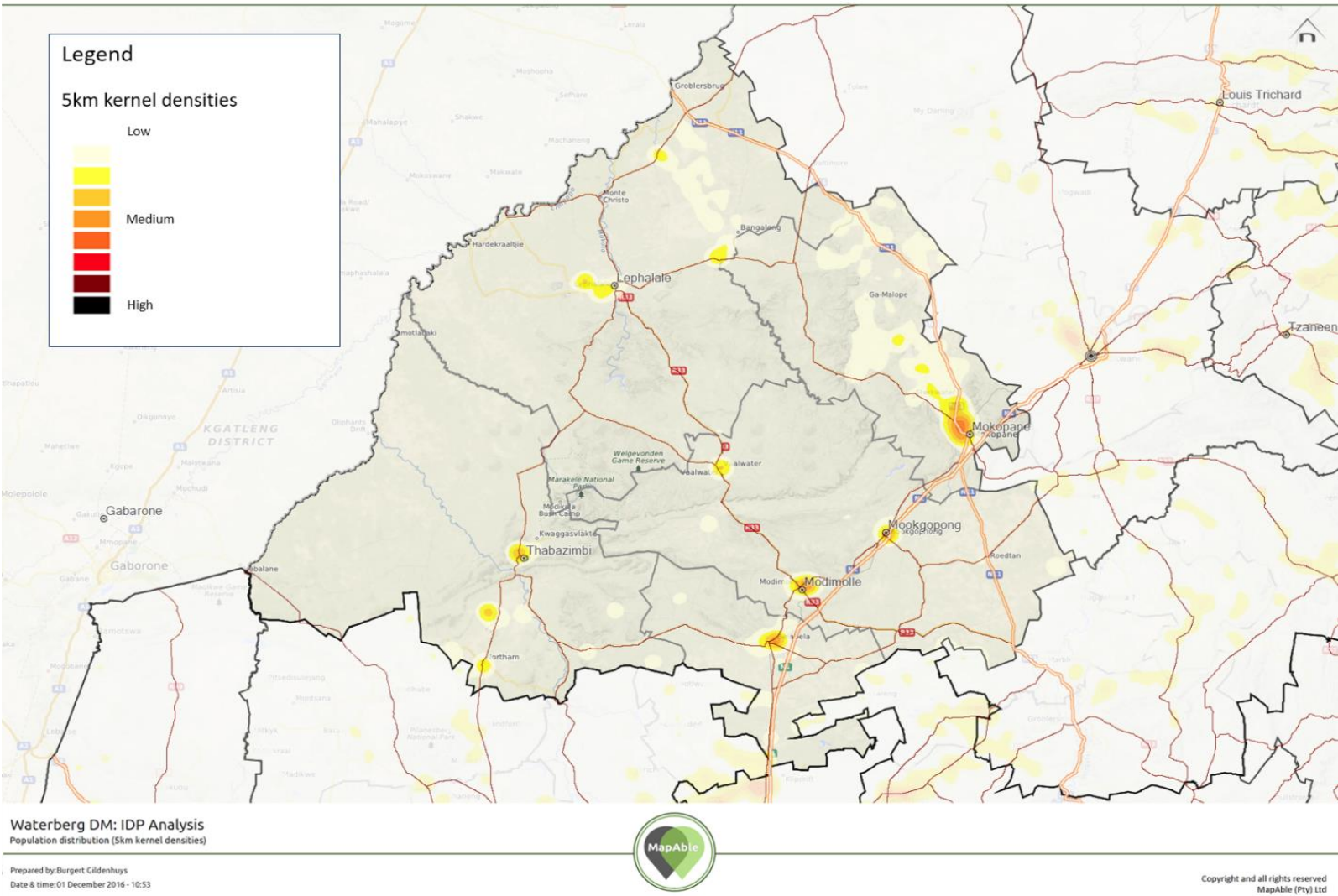
on the Go for Growth

Map 4: WDM Topography and Hydrology



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

Map 5: Population distribution



2.2 DEMOGRAPHIC PROFILE

"Demographics", or "population characteristics", includes analysis of the population of a region. Distributions of values within a demographic variable, and across households, as well as trends over time are of interest.

In this section, an overview is provided of the demography of the Waterberg District Municipality and all its neighbouring regions, the Limpopo Province and South Africa as a whole.

POPULATION

Population statistics is important when analysing an economy, as the population growth directly and indirectly impacts employment and unemployment, as well as other economic indicators such as economic growth and per capita income.

TABLE 9: POPULATION SIZE

TABLE 10: POPULATION TRENDS AND PERCENTAGE PER MUNICIPALITY

TABLE 11: POPULATION PER RACE

District	Black African	Coloured	Indian or Asian	White	Other	Total
DC36: Waterberg	619889	3298	2929	51362	1858	679336

Source: Stats SA 16

TABLE 12: POPULATION AGE GROUP

Age	Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Bela-Bela	Mogalakwena	Modimolle-Mookgopong	Waterberg
00-04	9865	16442	9471	48845	13767	98390
05-09	7220	11977	8267	44324	12333	84121
10-14	6310	11939	7403	36727	11816	74195
15-19	7305	11906	5904	30040	9103	64258
20-24	8647	15308	6602	27313	8298	66168
25-29	11323	18376	7007	23831	10207	70744

30-34	11512	13229	5922	19055	8138	57856
35-39	8554	9983	4780	15231	6782	45330
40-44	6252	7376	4097	14415	5988	38128
45-49	5790	6856	3967	12891	5262	34766
50-54	5215	5213	3619	11902	3903	29852
55-59	4032	4006	3020	10137	3247	24442
60-64	2104	2849	2203	8960	3281	19397
65-69	993	1765	1471	7152	1740	13121
70-74	550	1233	1143	6004	1721	10651
75-79	348	900	757	4263	1118	7386
80-84	136	482	442	2052	671	3783
85+	74	399	220	2149	324	3166
	96230	140239	76295	325291	107699	745754

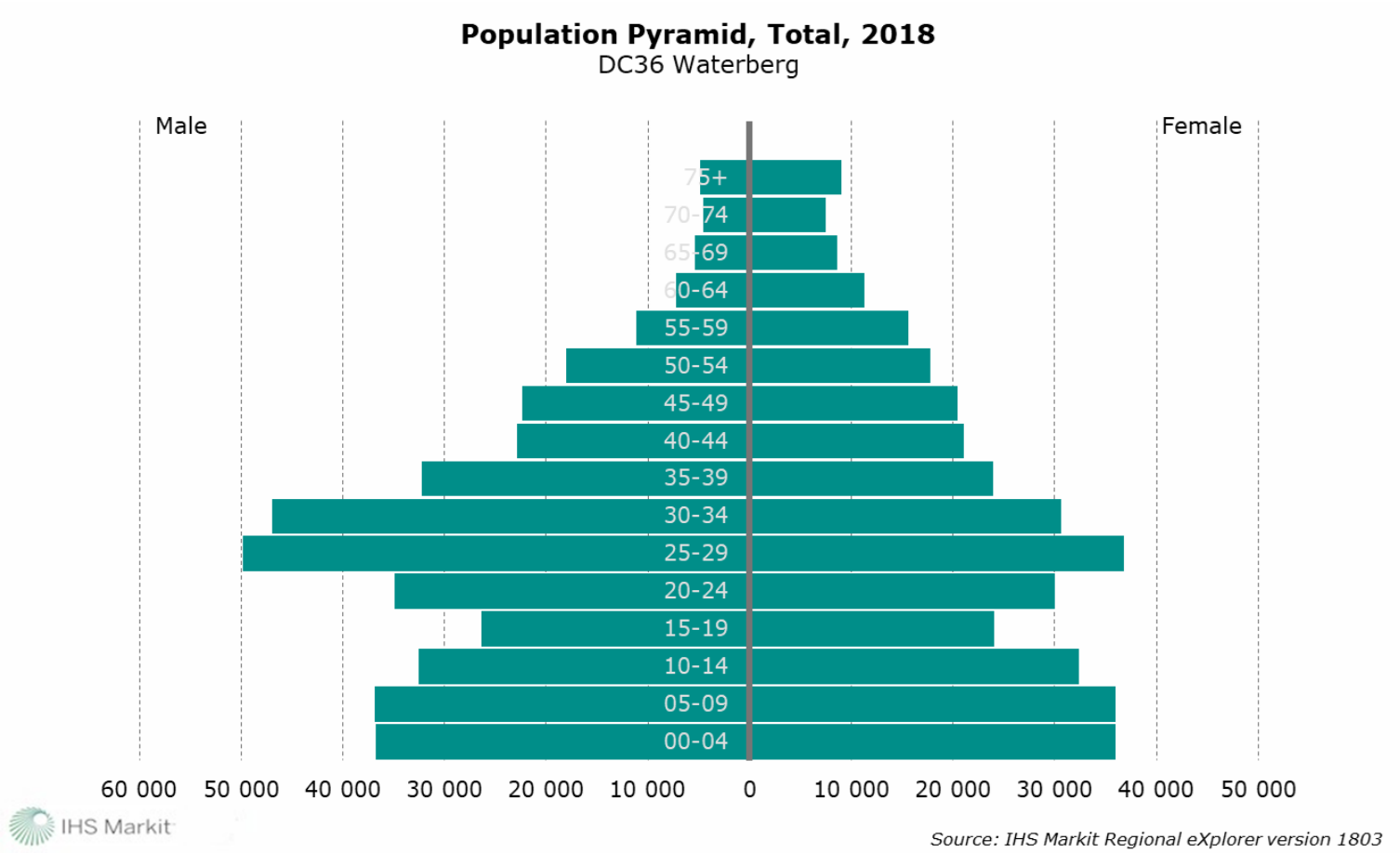
Source: Stats SA 16



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

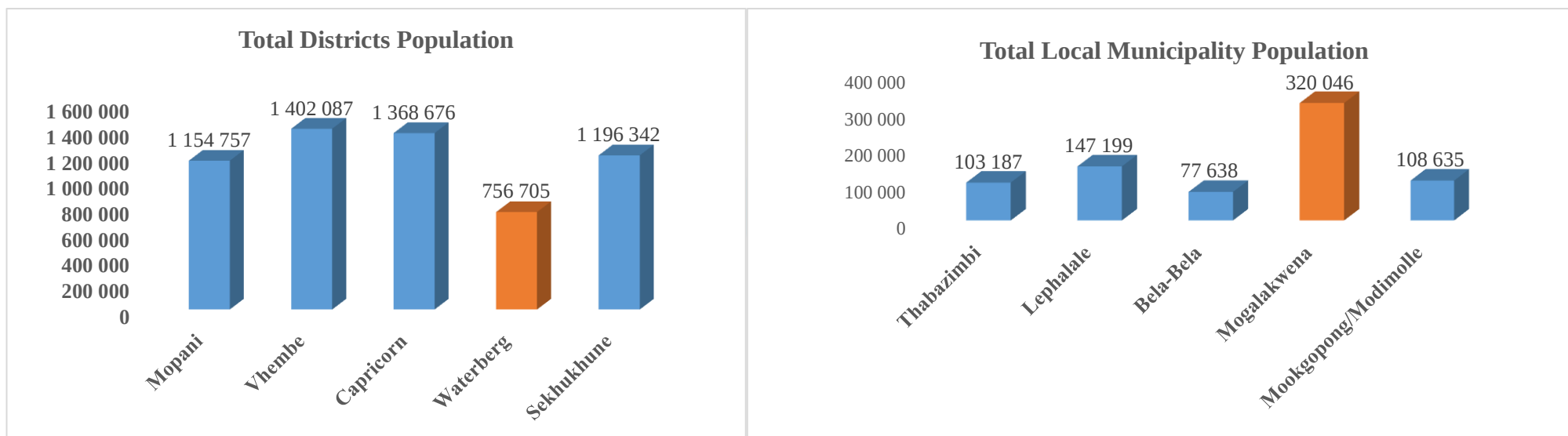
on the Go for Growth

DISTRICT AND LOCAL MUNICIPALITY POPULATION



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth



In terms of its share of the total population of the Limpopo Province, Waterberg was slightly larger in 2018 at 12.9% compared to what it was in 2008 at 12.5%. When looking at the average annual growth rate, Waterberg ranked second relative to its peers in terms of growth with an average annual growth rate of 1.3% between 2008 and 2018.

TABLE 13: AGE DISTRIBUTION BY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND GENDER

Age	Thabazimbi		Lephalale		Modimolle- Mookgopong		Bela-Bela		Mogalakwena		Total		
	MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE	GRAND TOTAL
0 - 4	4,839	5,025	8,216	7,633	6,955	6,812	4,725	4,746	25,000	24,439	49,736	48,655	98,391
5-9	3,269	3,952	5,684	5,809	6,148	6,185	3,996	4,271	22,203	22,606	41,299	42,822	84,121
10-14	3,648	2,662	5,752	5,740	5,957	5,859	3,860	3,544	19,142	18,032	38,359	35,836	74,195
15 - 19	4,235	3,070	6,426	5,169	4,647	4,456	3,079	2,825	14,809	15,542	33,195	31,063	64,258
20 - 24	5,533	3,114	8,215	6,729	4,636	3,662	3,423	3,179	13,258	14,419	35,065	31,104	66,169

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

25 - 29	6,882	4,441	11,774	6,179	5,332	4,875	3,684	3,323	11,292	12,961	38,964	31,779	70,743
30 - 34	7,239	4,273	7,734	5,227	3,964	4,174	3,299	2,624	9,024	10,300	31,259	26,597	57,856
35 - 39	5,613	2,941	5,742	4,045	3,532	3,250	2,397	2,383	7,138	8,290	24,422	20,909	45,331
40 - 44	3,880	2,372	4,377	2,828	2,820	3,168	2,066	2,031	6,372	8,214	19,515	18,614	38,129
45 - 49	3,695	2,095	4,154	2,630	2,552	2,710	2,232	1,735	5,358	7,607	17,991	16,776	34,767
50 - 54	3,410	1,805	2,964	2,166	2,039	1,864	1,823	1,796	5,425	6,560	15,661	14,191	29,852
55 - 59	2,826	1,206	2,209	1,729	1,731	1,515	1,538	1,482	4,326	5,879	12,631	11,811	24,442
60 - 64	1,126	978	1,471	1,330	1,591	1,690	1,069	1,133	3,673	5,334	8,931	10,466	19,397
65 - 69	579	413	811	893	972	768	716	755	2,905	4,308	5,984	7,137	13,121
70 - 74	163	387	399	821	648	1,073	383	760	2,192	3,825	3,784	6,867	10,651
75 - 79	259	89	294	596	501	617	348	410	1,220	3,052	2,622	4,764	7,386
80-84	31	105	170	312	252	419	200	242	590	1,462	1,242	2,541	3,783
85+	32	43	136	263	116	208	122	97	426	1,723	832	2,334	3,166
	57,259	38,973	76,528	60,098	54,393	53,305	38,961	37,335	154,352	174,553	381,493	364,265	745,758

Source: Stats SA 16

EMPLOYMENT AND UNEMPLOYMENT

EMPLOYMENT

Total employment data is a key element in the estimation of unemployment. In addition, trends in employment within different sectors and industries normally indicate significant structural changes in the economy. In 2018, Waterberg employed 201 000 people which is 15.19% of the total employment in Limpopo Province (1.32 million) and 1.25% of total employment in South Africa (16.1 million). Employment within Waterberg increased annually at an average rate of 3.22% from 2008 to 2018. The Waterberg District Municipality average annual

employment growth rate of 3.22% exceeds the average annual labour force growth rate of 2.66%, resulting in unemployment decreasing from 25.61% in 2008 to 17.54% in 2018 in the district municipality.

The economic sectors that recorded the largest number of employment in 2018 were the trade sector with 45 000 employed people or 22.4% of total employment in the district municipality. The community services sector with 36 100 people or 17.9% employs the second highest number of people relative to the rest of the sectors. The electricity sector with 1 980 (1.0%) is the sector that employs the least number of people in Waterberg District Municipality, followed by the transport sector with 5 980 (3.0%) people employed. The number of formally employed people in Waterberg District Municipality counted 149 000 in 2018, which is about 74.07% of total employment, while the number of people employed in the informal sector counted 52 100 or 25.93% of the total employment. Informal employment in Waterberg increased from 35 200 in 2008 to an estimated 52 100 in 2018.

UNEMPLOYMENT

In 2018, there were a total number of 42 200 people unemployed in Waterberg, which is a decrease of -5 200 from 47 400 in 2008. The total number of unemployed people within Waterberg constitutes 12.65% of the total number of unemployed people in Limpopo Province. The Waterberg District Municipality experienced an average annual decrease of -1.16% in the number of unemployed people, which is lower than that of the Limpopo Province, which had an average annual decrease in unemployment of -1.20%.

When comparing the unemployment rate among local municipalities within Waterberg District Municipality, Mogalakwena Local Municipality has indicated the highest unemployment rate of 22.2%, which has decreased from 31.3% in 2008. The Lephalale Local Municipality had the lowest unemployment rate of 11.6% in 2018, which decreased from 17.8% in 2008.

LABOUR

The labour force of a country consists of everyone of working age (above a certain age and below retirement) that are participating as workers, i.e. people who are actively employed or seeking employment. This is also called the economically active population (EAP). People not included are students, retired people, stay-at-home parents, people in prisons or similar institutions, people employed in jobs or professions with unreported income, as well as discouraged workers who cannot find work.

TABLE 14: UNEMPLOYMENT RATES

	Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Bela-Bela	Mogalakwena	Total
Unemployed	8 562	10 100	9 339	6 002	31 609	65 612
Discouraged work-seeker	1 236	1 565	2 330	1 057	10 072	16 260
Unemployment Rates	20.6%	22.2%	45.70%	22.5%	40.2%	28.1%

Source: Census 2016

Municipality	Male				Female				Grand
	Employed	Unemployed	Discouraged work-seeker	Other not economically active	Employed	Unemployed	Discouraged work-seeker	Other not economically active	Total
Thabazimbi	23458	3782	487	12034	9460	4780	748	10404	65153
Lephalale	23065	4352	628	17575	12262	5748	937	16124	80691
Modimolle-Mookgophong	19079	4148	1005	10830	12726	5192	1325	13471	67776
Bela-Bela	12114	2759	429	7384	8606	3244	627	8715	43878
Mogalakwena	25679	13777	4133	39248	21359	17832	5940	51396	179363
Grand Total	103395	28816	6683	87071	64414	36796	9577	100110	436861

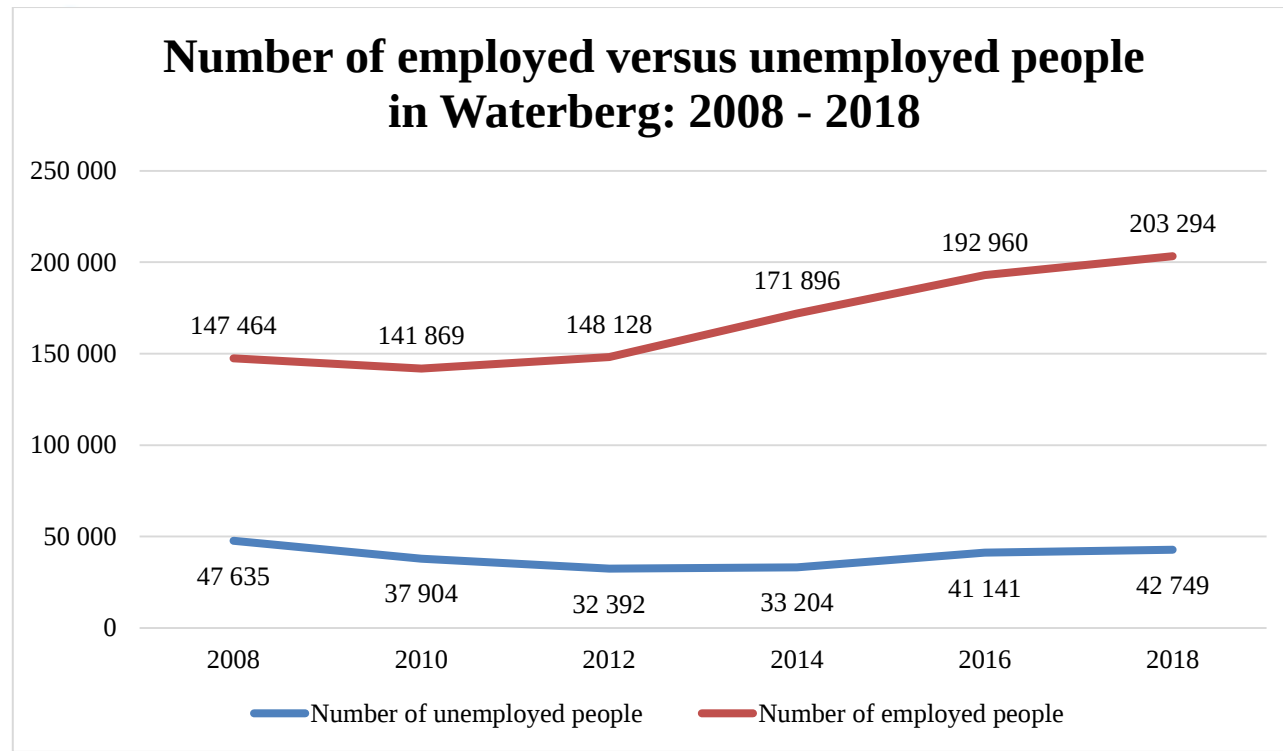
Source: Stats SA Community Survey, 2016



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

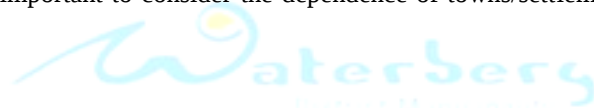
on the Go for Growth

NUMBER OF EMPLOYEES VS UNEMPLOYED (HIS MARKIT REGIONAL EXPLORER 1800)



With regard to economic sectors contribution to employment in the region, mining contributes 33% of employment, followed by trade (17%), personal services (12.5%), government (10%), agriculture (7.1%), finance (6.1%), construction (5.8), manufacturing (4.4%), transport (2.6%) and utilities (0.4%).

In general, over the period 2008 to 2018 there has been a rise in employment in parts of the district, notably in Lephalale, Thabazimbi, Bela-Bela and Makopane. However, there has been a decline in employment in smaller towns/settlements. It will therefore critical to undertake sector specific analysis in order to determine factors that are contributing to the decline of employment in these areas. It will also be important to consider the dependence of towns/settlements on single economic sectors. Growth in Lephalale, for example, is linked largely to mining/energy, which also indicates a risk.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 15: WORKING AGE POPULATION IN WATERBERG 2009 AND 2019 [NUMBER]

AGE	WATERBERG	
	2009	2019
15-19	66,400	51,000
20-24	75,000	63,500
25-29	66,200	85,100
30-34	53,100	80,100
35-39	50,100	59,000
40-44	40,100	44,200
45-49	32,000	43,600
50-54	25,000	37,000
55-59	19,200	27,700
60-64	15,500	19,000
Total	443,000	510,000

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

The working age population in Waterberg in 2019 was 510 000, increasing at an average annual rate of 1.43% since 2009.

The graph below combines all the facets of the labour force in the Waterberg District Municipality into one compact view. The chart is divided into "place of residence" on the left, which is measured from the population side, and "place of work" on the right, which is measured from the business side.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

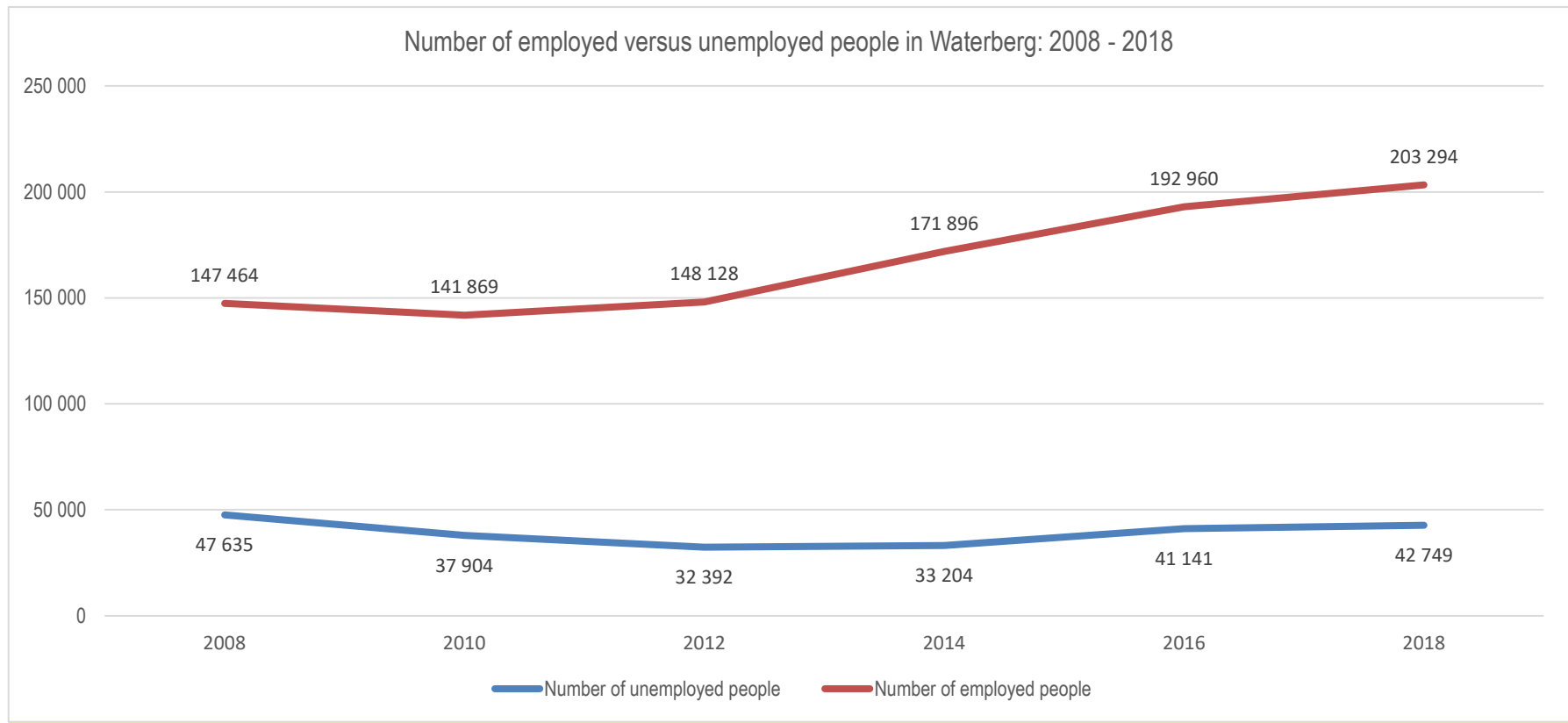


TABLE 16: WATERBERG POPULATION BY INCOME LEVELS

	Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Bela-Bela	Mogalakwena	District	Total
No income	3 518	3 745	1 145	1 828	2 320	12 223	24 779
R 1 - R 4800	686	958	320	566	556	4 124	7 210
R 4801 - R 600	1 027	1 876	665	1 275	1 030	8 406	14 279

R 9601 - R9 600	3 165	4 876	2 415	3 292	3 522	18 303	35 573
R 19 601 -R8 200	4 048	6 046	2 465	4 149	4 430	17 572	38 710
R 38 201 - R 76 400	5 021	4 608	1 409	2 796	2 798	8 074	24 706
R 76 401 - R 153 800	3 517	3 354	748	1 815	1 657	5 043	16 134
R 153 801 - R 307 600	2 474	2 358	451	1 158	1 083	3 501	11 025
R 307 601 - R 614 400	1 160	1 417	208	460	460	1 541	5 246

Census 2016

DISABILITY PREVALENCE

According to the Census 2011 and Community Survey 2016, disability prevalence in Limpopo is 6,4%, with the coloured population recording the highest disability prevalence in the Waterberg District Municipality at 13,6%.

TABLE17: PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES

	Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Belabela	Mogalakwena	Waterberg
No difficulty	70 464	96 565	91 797	57 301	273 353	589480
Some difficulty	1 740	2 313	2 709	1 658	8 375	16795
A lot of difficulty	231	344	437	243	1 303	1255
Cannot do at all	176	258	209	99	597	1339
Do not know	103	107	233	38	722	1203
Cannot yet be determined	2 880	4 516	4 520	2 559	14 875	29350
Unspecified	2 983	3 420	2 783	2 114	6 716	15033
Not applicable	6 657	8 245	1 465	2 488	1 741	20596
TOTAL	85 234	115 768	104 153	66 500	307 682	679 337

Source: Statistics South Africa, Census 2016



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE18: TOTAL POPULATION OF WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL 2009-2019 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

YEAR	WATERBERG	LIMPOPO	NATIONAL	WATERBERG AS % OF PROVINCE	WATERBERG AS % OF NATIONAL
2009	677,000	5,390,000	50,300,000	12.6%	1.35%
2010	684,000	5,430,000	51,100,000	12.6%	1.34%
2011	692,000	5,470,000	52,000,000	12.7%	1.33%
2012	700,000	5,510,000	52,900,000	12.7%	1.32%
2013	709,000	5,550,000	53,700,000	12.8%	1.32%
2014	718,000	5,610,000	54,600,000	12.8%	1.31%
2015	727,000	5,660,000	55,500,000	12.8%	1.31%
2016	737,000	5,720,000	56,400,000	12.9%	1.31%
2017	746,000	5,780,000	57,200,000	12.9%	1.30%
2018	754,000	5,830,000	58,100,000	12.9%	1.30%
2019	762,000	5,880,000	59,000,000	12.9%	1.29%
Average Annual growth					
2009-2019	1.18%	0.89%	1.61%		

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

With 762 000 people, the Waterberg District Municipality housed 1.3% of South Africa's total population in 2019. Between 2009 and 2019 the population growth averaged 1.18% per annum which is slightly lower than the growth rate of South Africa as a whole (1.61%). Compared to Limpopo's average annual growth rate (0.89%), the growth rate in Waterberg's population at 1.18% was slightly higher than that of the province.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 19: TOTAL POPULATION - LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2009, 2014 AND 2019 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

	2009	2014	2019	Average Annual growth
Thabazimbi	83,000	95,400	106,000	2.43%
Lephalale	114,000	133,000	148,000	2.64%
Bela-Bela	64,700	72,700	79,200	2.05%
Mogalakwena	306,000	310,000	320,000	0.46%
Mookgopong/Modimolle	110,000	107,000	109,000	-0.08%
Waterberg	677,016	718,104	761,546	1.18%

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

The Lephalale Local Municipality increased the most, in terms of population, with an average annual growth rate of 2.6%, the Thabazimbi Local Municipality had the second highest growth in terms of its population, with an average annual growth rate of 2.4%. The Mookgopong/Modimolle Local Municipality had the lowest average annual growth rate of -0.08% relative to the other within the Waterberg District Municipality.

POPULATION PROJECTIONS

Based on the present age-gender structure and the present fertility, mortality and migration rates, Waterberg's population is projected to grow at an average annual rate of 0.8% from 762 000 in 2019 to 794 000 in 2024.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 20: POPULATION PROJECTIONS - WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2019-2024 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

	Waterberg	Limpopo	National Total	Waterberg as % of province	Waterberg as % of national
2019	762,000	5,880,000	59,000,000	12.9%	1.29%
2020	769,000	5,930,000	59,800,000	13.0%	1.29%
2021	775,000	5,980,000	60,600,000	13.0%	1.28%
2022	782,000	6,030,000	61,500,000	13.0%	1.27%
2023	788,000	6,080,000	62,300,000	13.0%	1.27%
2024	794,000	6,130,000	63,100,000	13.0%	1.26%
Average Annual growth					
2019-2024	0.85%	0.82%	1.35%		

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

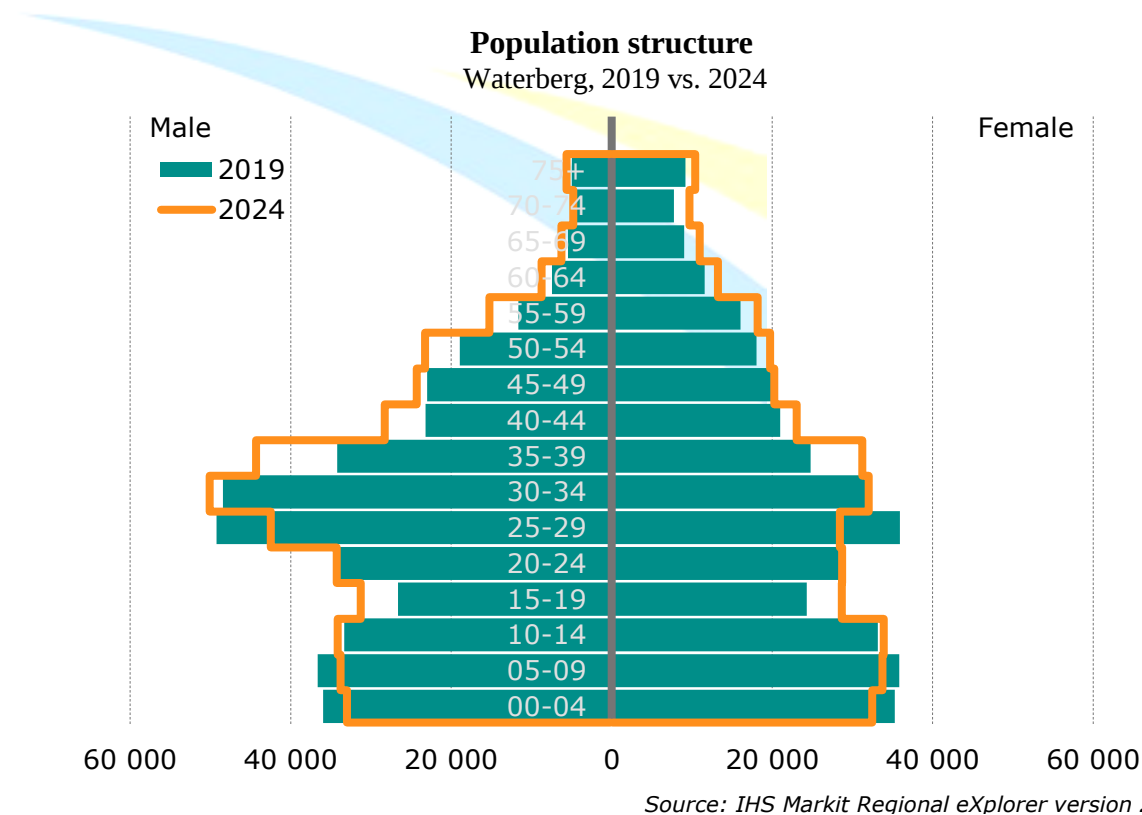
The population projection of Waterberg District Municipality shows an estimated average annual growth rate of 0.8% between 2019 and 2024. The average annual growth rate in the population over the forecasted period for Limpopo Province and South Africa is 0.8% and 1.3% respectively. The Limpopo Province is estimated to have average growth rate of 0.8% which is lower than the Waterberg District Municipality. The South Africa as a whole is estimated to have an average annual growth rate of 1.3% which is higher than that of Waterberg's growth rate.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

POPULATION PYRAMID - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY 2019 VS. 2024 [PERCENTAGE]

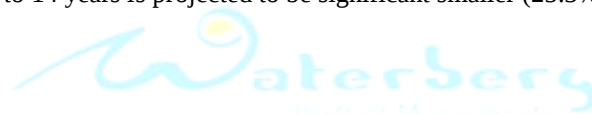


The population pyramid reflects a projected change in the structure of the population from 2019 and 2024. The differences can be explained as follows:

In 2019, there is a significantly larger share of young working age people between 20 and 34 (30.0%), compared to what is estimated in 2024 (27.2%). This age category of young working age population will decrease over time.

The fertility rate in 2024 is estimated to be slightly higher compared to that experienced in 2019.

The share of children between the ages of 0 to 14 years is projected to be significant smaller (25.3%) in 2024 when compared to 2019 (27.6%).



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

In 2019, the female population for the 20 to 34 years age group amounts to 12.7% of the total female population while the male population group for the same age amounts to 17.3% of the total male population. In 2024, the male working age population at 16.0% still exceeds that of the female population working age population at 11.2%, although both are at a lower level compared to 2019.

Waterberg District Municipality's male/female split in population was 109.5 males per 100 females in 2019. The Waterberg District Municipality has significantly more males (52.28%) relative to South Africa (48.96%), and what is typically seen in a stable population. This is usually because of physical labour intensive industries such as mining. In total there were 363 000 (47.72%) females and 398 000 (52.28%) males. This is different from the Limpopo Province as a whole where the female population counted 3.1 million which constitutes 52.71% of the total population of 5.88 million.

TABLE 21: POPULATION BY POPULATION GROUP, GENDER AND AGE - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2019 [NUMBER]

Age	African		White		Coloured		Asian	
	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male
00-04	33,500	34,000	1,480	1,600	200	203	104	143
05-09	34,200	34,700	1,490	1,620	97	203	102	83
10-14	31,600	31,600	1,350	1,500	133	122	111	93
15-19	22,900	25,200	1,150	1,110	109	166	127	120
20-24	27,400	32,300	1,420	1,510	258	301	139	244
25-29	34,100	46,900	1,390	1,650	274	352	107	341
30-34	29,700	46,000	1,570	1,680	237	392	88	378
35-39	23,100	31,900	1,400	1,580	166	347	151	369
40-44	19,400	21,100	1,360	1,610	108	176	98	274
45-49	18,900	21,200	1,510	1,470	108	169	106	175
50-54	16,500	17,300	1,410	1,380	109	156	69	137
55-59	14,500	10,000	1,500	1,400	74	100	33	95
60-64	9,880	5,750	1,600	1,550	69	93	55	52
65-69	7,200	4,040	1,730	1,340	39	48	56	30
70-74	6,140	3,160	1,550	1,450	25	12	50	29
75+	6,670	3,100	2,500	1,840	13	8	23	35
Total	336,000	368,000	24,400	24,300	2,020	2,850	1,420	2,600

In 2019, the Waterberg District Municipality's population consisted of 92.44% African (704 000), 6.39% White (48 700), 0.64% Coloured (4 870) and 0.53% Asian (4 020) people.

The largest share of population is within the young working age (25-44 years) age category with a total number of 268 000 or 35.2% of the total population. The age category with the second largest number of people is the babies and kids (0-14 years) age category with a total share of 27.6%, followed by the older working age (45-64 years) age category with 127 000 people. The age category with the least number of people is the retired / old age (65 years and older) age category with only 41 100 people, as reflected in the population pyramids below.

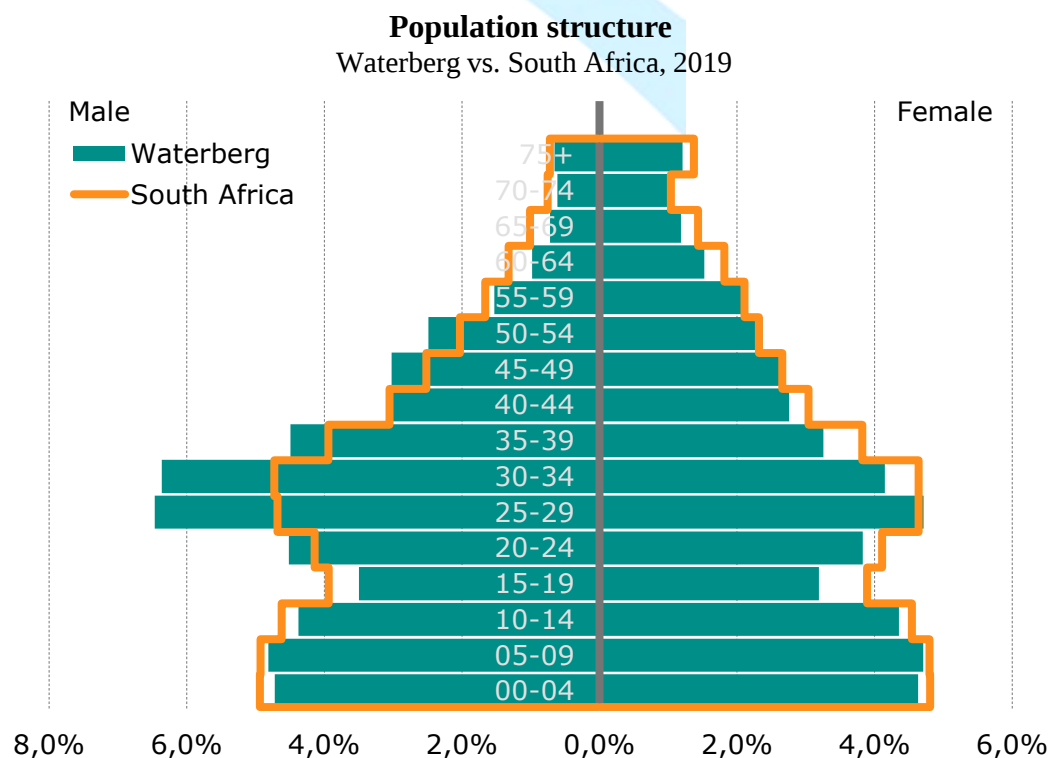
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

POPULATION PYRAMIDS

A population pyramid is a graphic representation of the population categorised by gender and age, for a specific year and region. The horizontal axis depicts the share of people, where the male population is charted on the left-hand side and the female population on the right-hand side of the vertical axis. The vertical axis is divided in 5-year age categories.

With the African population group representing 92.4% of the Waterberg District Municipality's total population, the overall population pyramid for the region will mostly reflect that of the African population group. The chart below compares Waterberg's population structure of 2019 to that of South Africa.

POPULATION PYRAMID - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY VS. SOUTH AFRICA, 2019 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

By comparing the population pyramid of the Waterberg District Municipality with the national age structure, the most significant differences are:

There is a significantly larger share of young working age people - aged 20 to 34 (30.0%) - in Waterberg, compared to the national picture (26.9%).

The area appears to be a migrant receiving area, with many of people migrating into Waterberg, either from abroad, or from the more rural areas in the country looking for better opportunities.

Fertility in Waterberg is slightly higher compared to South Africa as a whole.

Spatial policies changed since 1994.

The share of children between the ages of 0 to 14 years is significant smaller (27.6%) in Waterberg compared to South Africa (28.6%). Demand for expenditure on schooling as percentage of total budget within Waterberg District Municipality will therefore be lower than that of South Africa.

NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY POPULATION GROUP

A household is either a group of people who live together and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or it is a single person living on his/her own. An individual is considered part of a household if he/she spends at least four nights a week within the household. To categorise a household according to population group, the population group to which the head of the household belongs, is used.

If the number of households is growing at a faster rate than that of the population it means that the average household size is decreasing, and vice versa. In 2019, the Waterberg District Municipality comprised of 221 000 households. This equates to an average annual growth rate of 1.76% in the number of households from 2009 to 2019. With an average annual growth rate of 1.18% in the total population, the average household size in the Waterberg District Municipality is by implication decreasing. This is confirmed by the data where the average household size in 2009 decreased from approximately 3.6 individuals per household to 3.4 persons per household in 2019.

TABLE 22: NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS - WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2009-2019 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

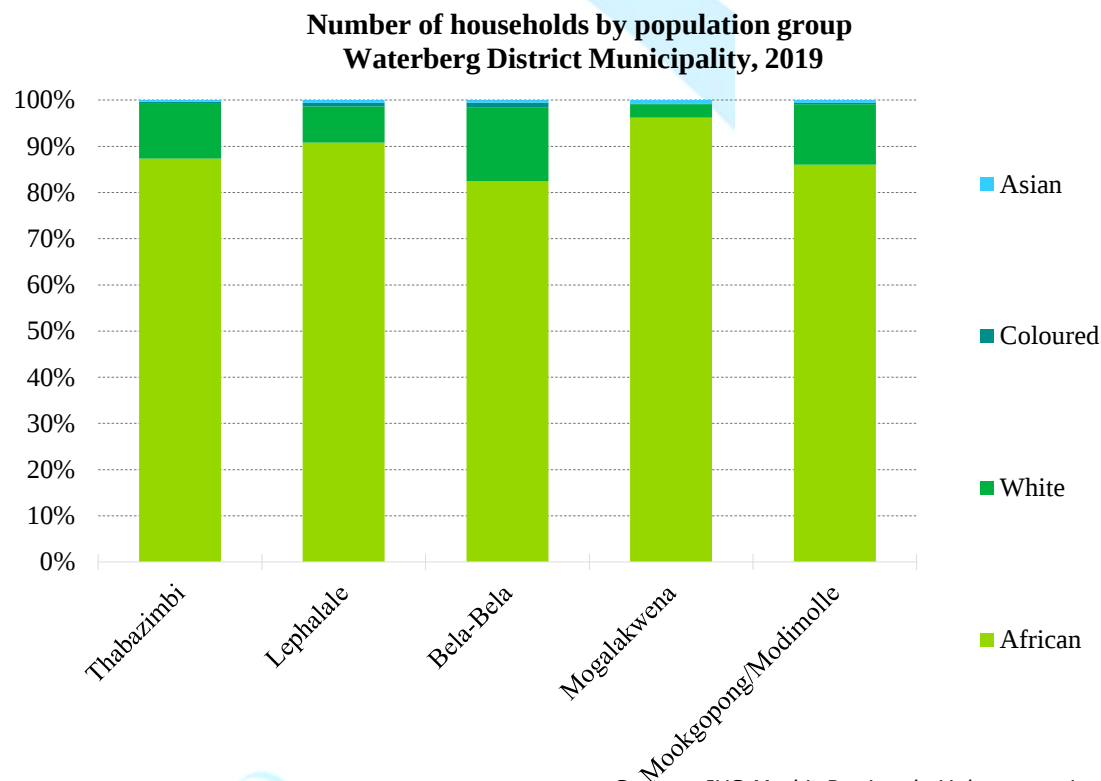
Year	Waterberg	Limpopo	National Total	Waterberg as % of province	Waterberg as % of national
2009	186,000	1,370,000	13,900,000	13.6%	1.34%
2010	187,000	1,380,000	14,100,000	13.5%	1.33%
2011	188,000	1,400,000	14,400,000	13.4%	1.31%
2012	191,000	1,420,000	14,700,000	13.4%	1.30%
2013	195,000	1,450,000	15,000,000	13.5%	1.30%
2014	198,000	1,470,000	15,300,000	13.5%	1.30%
2015	206,000	1,520,000	15,700,000	13.5%	1.31%
2016	211,000	1,560,000	16,100,000	13.6%	1.31%
2017	215,000	1,580,000	16,400,000	13.6%	1.31%
2018	218,000	1,610,000	16,700,000	13.6%	1.31%
2019	221,000	1,620,000	17,000,000	13.6%	1.30%
Average Annual growth					
2009-2019	1.76%	1.71%	2.06%		

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

Relative to the province, the Waterberg District Municipality had a higher average annual growth rate of 1.76% from 2009 to 2019. In contrast, the South Africa had a total of 17 million households, with a growth rate of 2.06%, thus growing at a higher rate than the Waterberg.

The composition of the households by population group consists of 90.7% which is ascribed to the African population group with the largest amount of households by population group. The White population group had a total composition of 8.3% (ranking second). The Asian population group had a total composition of 0.6% of the total households. The smallest population group by households is the Coloured population group with only 0.4% in 2019.

NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY POPULATION GROUP - LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2019 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

The growth in the number of African headed households was on average 1.83% per annum between 2009 and 2019, which translates in the number of households increasing by 33 200 in the period. Although the Asian population group is not the biggest in size, it was however the fastest growing population group between 2009 and 2019 at 4.50%. The average annual growth rate in the number of households for all the other population groups has increased with 1.74%.

TABLE 23: NUMBER OF HIV+ PEOPLE - WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2009-2019 [NUMBER AND PERCENTAGE]

Year	Waterberg	Limpopo	National Total	Waterberg as % of province	Waterberg as % of national
2009	55,600	423,000	6,190,000	13.2%	0.90%
2010	57,000	432,000	6,340,000	13.2%	0.90%
2011	58,500	442,000	6,520,000	13.2%	0.90%
2012	59,900	452,000	6,680,000	13.3%	0.90%
2013	61,200	460,000	6,820,000	13.3%	0.90%
2014	62,400	469,000	6,960,000	13.3%	0.90%
2015	63,600	478,000	7,110,000	13.3%	0.90%
2016	64,700	486,000	7,250,000	13.3%	0.89%
2017	65,900	495,000	7,420,000	13.3%	0.89%
2018	67,100	504,000	7,600,000	13.3%	0.88%
2019	68,200	513,000	7,780,000	13.3%	0.88%
Average Annual growth					
2009-2019	2.06%	1.95%	2.32%		

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

HIV+ and AIDS estimates

HIV and AIDS can have a substantial impact on the growth of a particular population. However, there are many factors affecting the impact of the HIV virus on population progression: adult HIV prevalence rates; the speed at which the virus progresses; age distribution of the virus; the mother-to-child transmission; child treatment; adult treatment; and the percentage by which the virus decreases total fertility. ARV treatment can also prolong the lifespan of people that are HIV+. In the absence of any treatment, people diagnosed with HIV live for approximately 10 years before reaching the final stage of the disease (called AIDS). When patients reach this stage, recovery is highly unlikely.

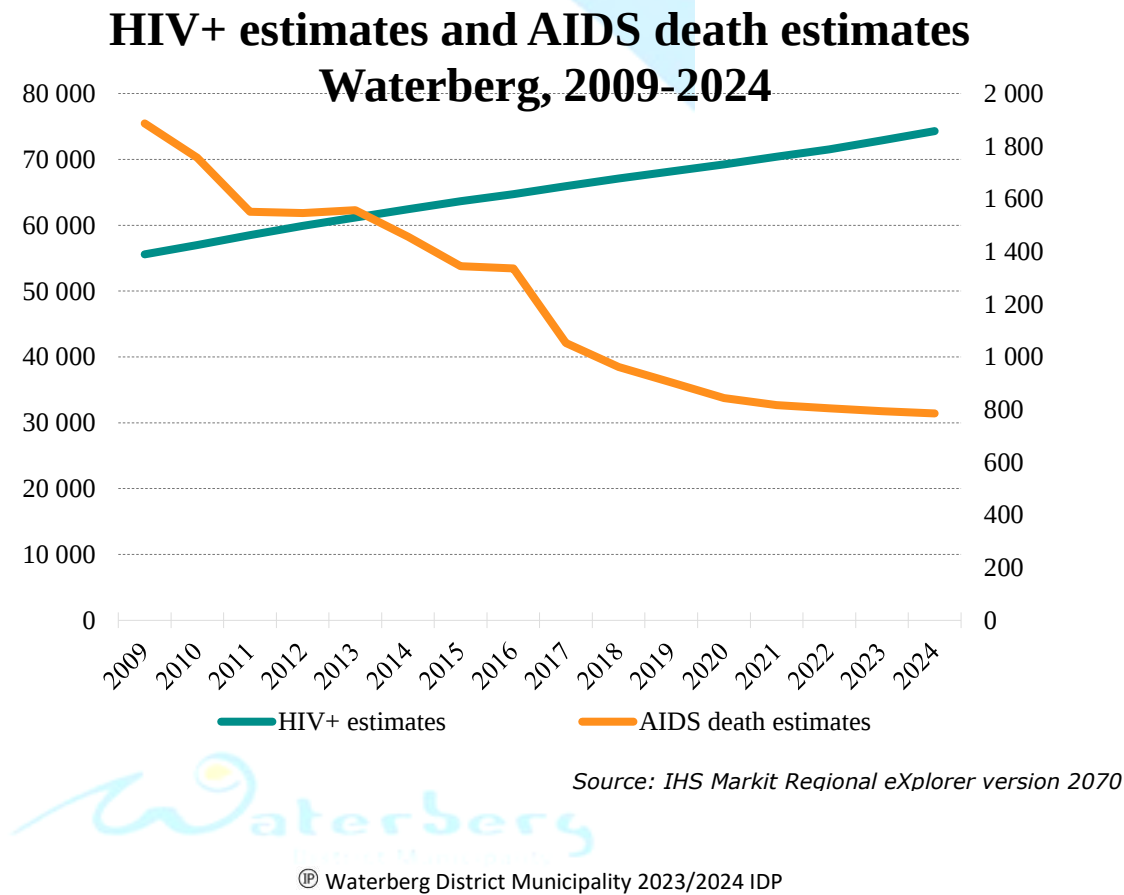
HIV+ and AIDS estimates are defined as follows:

The HIV+ estimates are calculated by using the prevalence rates from the HIV/AIDS model built by the Actuarial Society of Southern Africa (ASSA-2008). These rates are used as base rates on a provincial level. IHS slightly adjusted the provincial ASSA-2008 data to more accurately reflect the national HIV Prevalence rate per population group as used in the national demographic models. The ASSA model in turn uses the prevalence rates from various primary data sets, in particular the HIV/AIDS surveys conducted by the Department of Health and the Antenatal clinic surveys. Their rates are further adjusted for over-reporting and then smoothed.

In 2019, 68 200 people in the Waterberg District Municipality were infected with HIV. This reflects an increase at an average annual rate of 2.06% since 2009, and in 2019 represented 8.95% of the district municipality's total population. The Limpopo Province had an average annual growth rate of 1.95% from 2009 to 2019 in the number of people infected with HIV, which is lower than that of the Waterberg District Municipality. When looking at the South Africa as a whole it can be seen that the number of people that are infected increased from 2009 to 2019 with an average annual growth rate of 2.32%.

The lifespan of people that are HIV+ could be prolonged with modern ARV treatments. In the absence of any treatment, people diagnosed with HIV can live for 10 years and longer before they reach the final AIDS stage of the disease.

AIDS profile and forecast - Waterberg District Municipality, 2009-2024 [numbers]



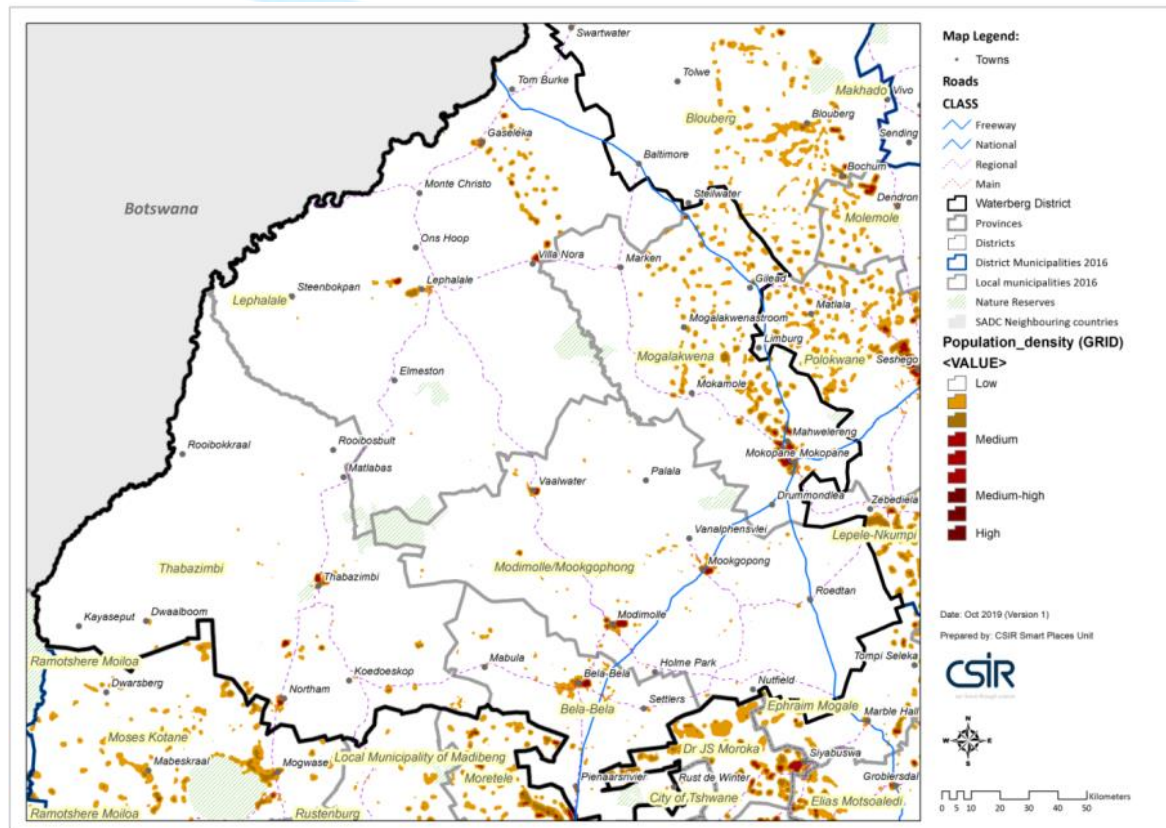
© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

Presenting the number of HIV+ people against the number of people living with AIDS, the people with AIDS added up to 1890 in 2009 and 903 for 2019. This number denotes an decrease from 2009 to 2019 with a high average annual rate of -7.10% (or -984 people). For the year 2019, they represented 0.12% of the total population of the entire district municipality.



Map 6: Population distribution/ density

Notes:



This region is dualistic when considering population settlement as depicted in Figure 5. For the most part this region is sparsely settled with most residents living in Rural centres and small towns. This is due to the use of land for commercial agriculture, game farming and conservation. More dense scattered settlement is found along the northern fringe of the region – dominated by mostly traditional settlements.

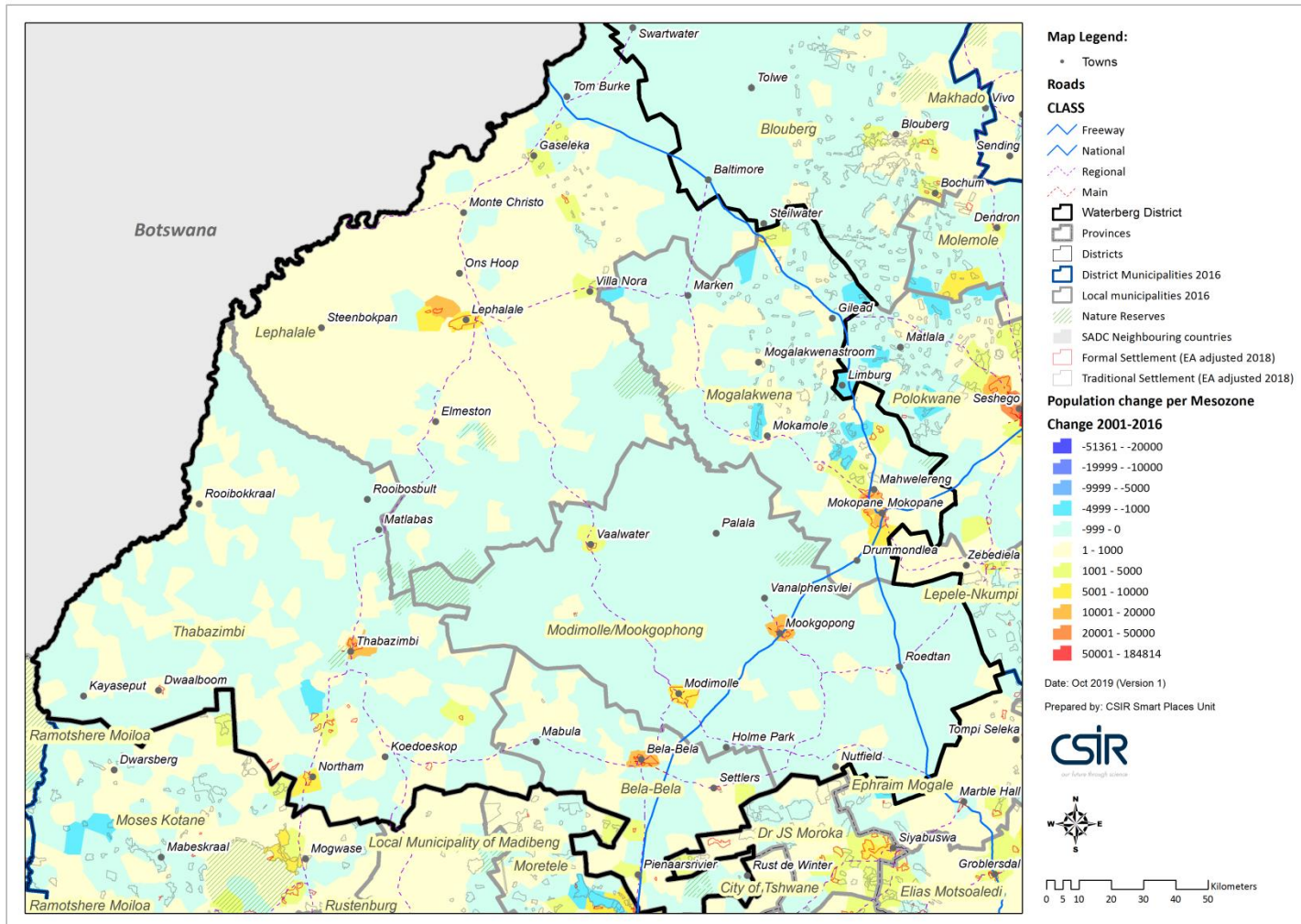
Settlement services are more easily provided in formal towns. Rural settlement areas require a different approach. In the NSDF Small towns has been identified to form focus areas for service provision.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 7: Population Change:



Notes:

Figure 6 indicates population change using the mesozones for the period 2001-2016. A number of trends can be observed: Rural population in the southern parts of the district has decreased. Similarly in the north-Eastern portion of the district (bordering the Polokwane district) reflects a decline in some of the rural settlements. In contrast the larger centres show population growth. See places such as Lephalale, Mokopane, Mook-gopong, Modimille, Bela-Bela and Thabazimbi. These reflect the national trend of urbanisation as inhabitants seek to be closer to employment possibilities and services.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 24: BI Monthly Grant Stats

Grant Type		Number Of Beneficiaries	Number Of Children	Estimated Amount	Number Of Grants
Old Age Grant		42 051		R83 681 490	42 051
	> 75 Years	16 545		R33 082 830	16 545
Disability Grant	Permanent Disability	8 769		R17 450 310	8 769
	Temporary Disability	3 283		R6 533 170	3 283
Foster Care Grant			4 233	R4 529 310	4 233
Grant-In-Aid		11 101		R5 328 480	11 101
Care Dependency Grant			1 762	R3 506 380	1 762
Child Support Grant	(< 1 Year)		9 443	R4 532 640	9 443
	(1 Year)		12 949	R6 215 520	12 949
	(2 Years)		14 049	R6 743 520	14 049
	(3 Years)		13 344	R6 405 120	13 344
	(4 Years)		13 183	R6 327 840	13 183
	(5 Years)		12 565	R6 031 200	12 565
	(6 Years)		12 321	R5 914 080	12 321
	(7 Years)		12 281	R5 894 880	12 281
	(8 Years)		13 054	R6 265 920	13 054
	(9 Years)		13 022	R6 250 560	13 022
	(10 Years)		12 632	R6 063 360	12 632
	(11 Years)		12 648	R6 071 040	12 648

	(12 Years)		11 806	R5 666 880	11 806
	(13 Years)		11 346	R5 446 080	11 346
	(14 Years)		11 565	R5 551 200	11 565
	(15 Years)		10 890	R5 227 200	10 890
	(16 Years)		10 955	R5 258 400	10 955
	(17 Years)		9 425	R4 524 000	9 425
Grand Total		81 749	223 473	R258 501 410	305 222

Source: SASSA

Number Of Beneficiaries

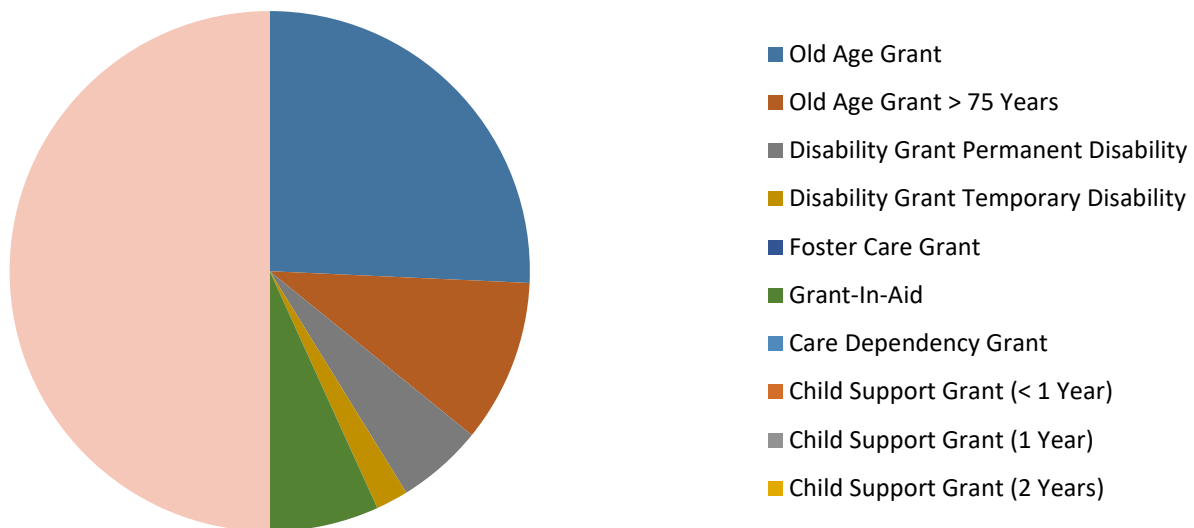


TABLE 25: POPULATION OF WATERBERG BY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY WALKING AND CLIMBING STAIRS DISABILITY STATUS

PERSONS USING WHEEL CHAIRS IN WATERBERG BY MUNICIPALITY					
Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Belabela	Mogalakwena	TOTAL
1 880	1 645	1 943	1 309	4 270	1 047

Source: Statistics South Africa, Census 2016



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

CHAPTER 3: SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS

3.1 SPATIAL RATIONALE

Map 8: Spatial Structure

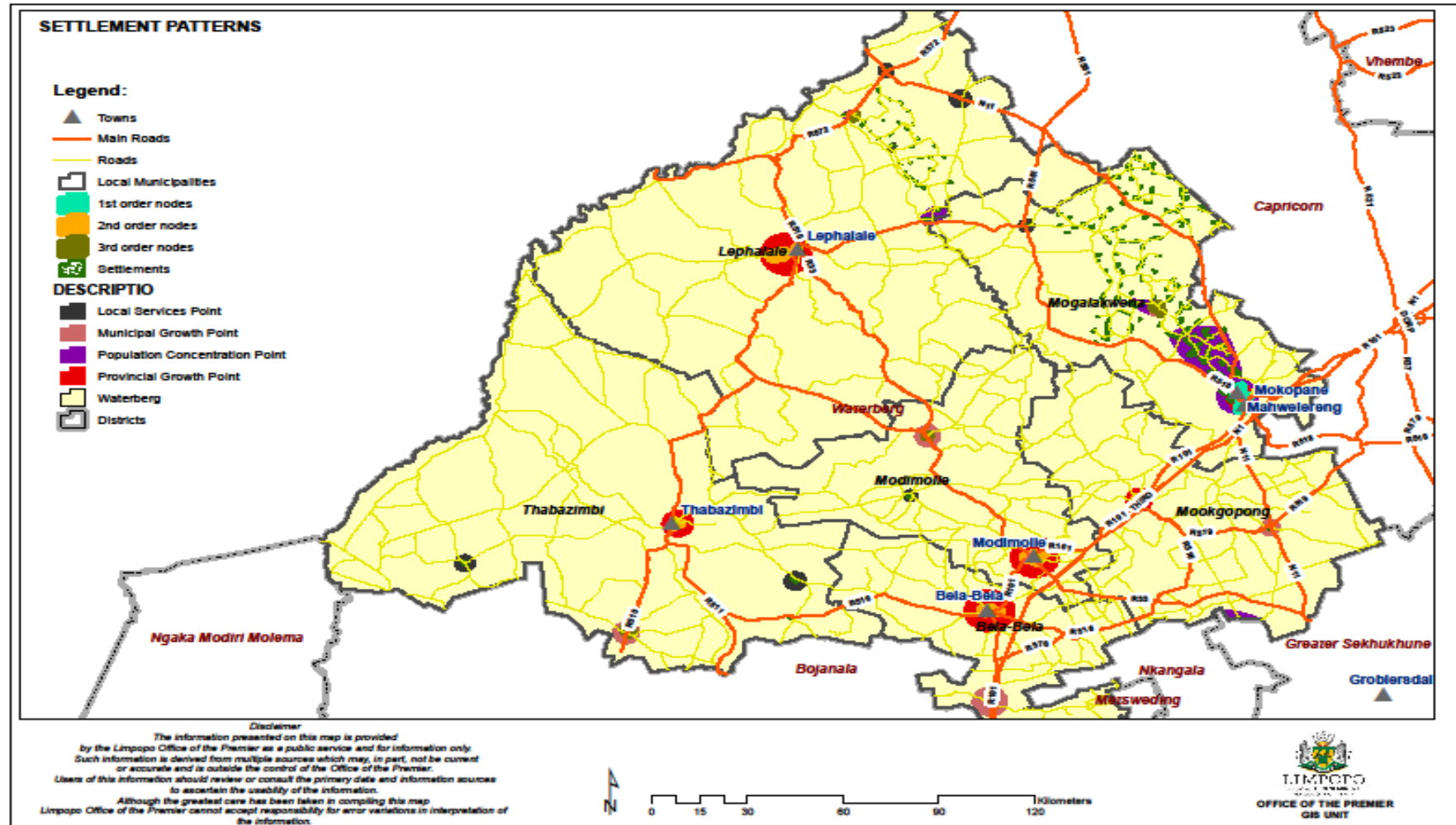


Geographical Map of the District

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

Map 9: Settlement Patterns/Hierarchy of Settlement

SETTLEMENT PATTERNS/HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENTS



SETTLEMENT PATTERNS AND DEVELOPMENT

TABLE 26: MAJOR TOWNS/SETTLEMENTS

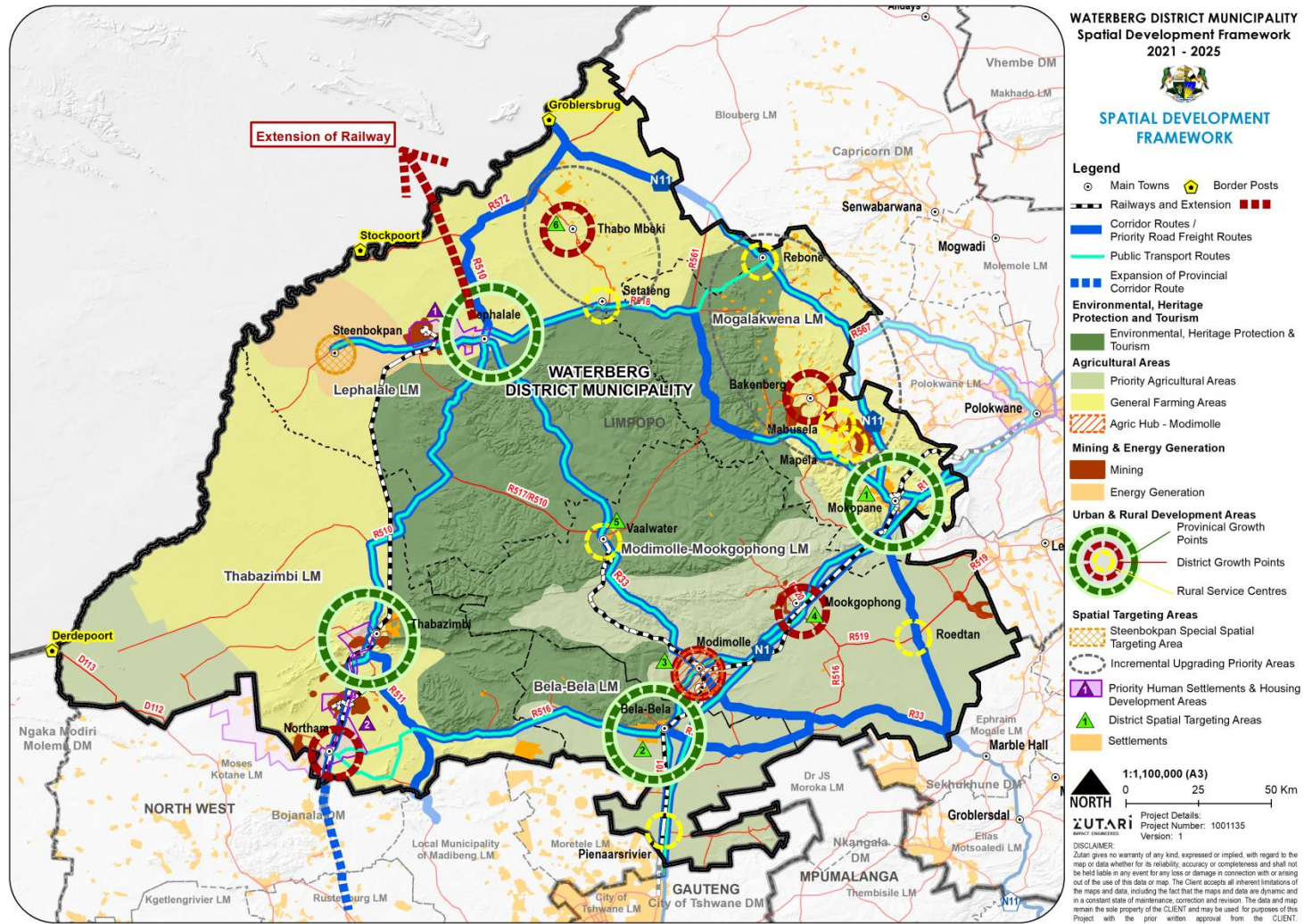
TOWN/SETTLEMENT	BRIEF HISTORY
Mokopane	It was established by the Voortrekker leader Hendrik Potgieter in 1852 and named Vredenburg as symbol of reconciliation between himself and the other Voortrekker leader, Andries Pretorius. Due to continuous skirmishes between the early settlers and the local tribes as well as the heavy toll malaria had on the people, the town was evacuated and only re-established in 1890. It was awarded municipal status 1939. The name was changed again in 2002 to Mokopane after the Ndebele chief who moved to the Waterberg area in the nineteenth century.
Mookgophong	Was established in 1886 as a halfway house between Pretoria and Polokwane. It served as a trading post until 1907 when it was proclaimed as a town.
Modimolle	Was established by a group of pioneers known as the Jerusalem Trekkers who believed they have reach the Nile and had been close to the Holy Land. The river flowed north and the koppie (Modimolle) looked like a pyramid. The town was established in 1866.
Bela Bela	Tshwana people settled in the 1860 around the warm water springs. The town was established in 1882 and it got municipal status in 1932.
Thabazimbi	Was established only in 1953 after iron ore discovered was discovered in 1919. The ore deposits were bought for Iscor and the town established for the employees.
Lephalale	It is the youngest town in the WDM area. It was established in 1960 and got municipal status only in 1986.

TABLE 27: DISTRIBUTION OF SETTLEMENTS WITHIN THE DISTRICT

Municipality	No of settlement	No. of wards
Bela Bela	7 Farms & Small holding	9
Modimolle-Mookgophong :	33	14
Mogalakwena	178 villages 2 Townships 1 Town	32
Lephalale	38 villages 1 Town 2 Township	12
Thabazimbi	1 Town 1 Township	12
Total for District	216 Villages 6 Towns 11 Townships	79

Map 10: Hierarchy of Settlement / Growth Points Areas

The Spatial Development Framework of the Limpopo Province classifies the towns and villages in First, Second and Third Order Settlements to accommodate development and investment.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

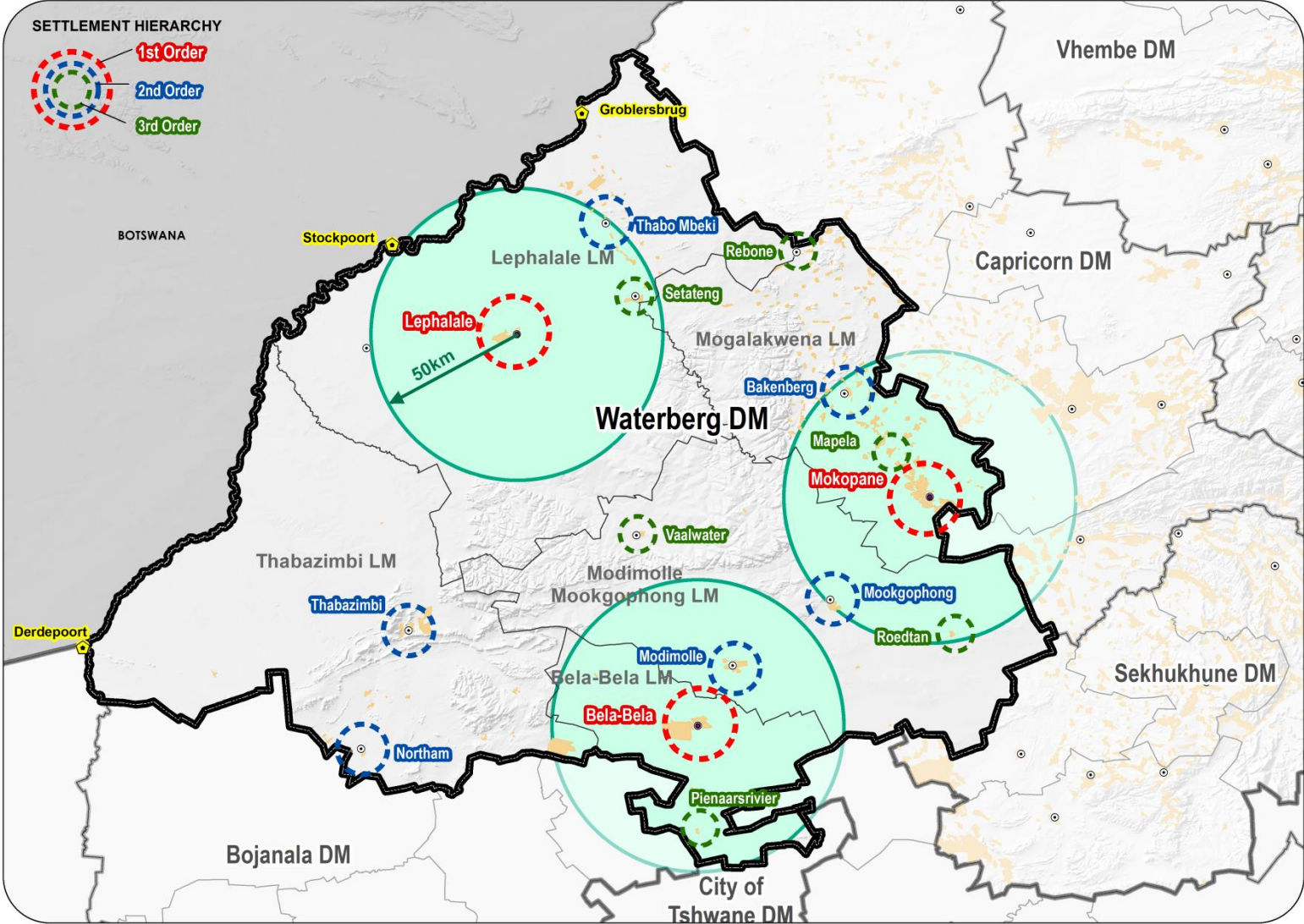
on the Go for Growth

TABLE 28: HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT / GROWTH POINTS AREAS

Nodes	Settlements	Est. 2016 pop	%total pop
1st order (small to medium towns)	Bela-Bela Lephalale & Marapong Mokopane & Mahwelereng	48,814 36,901 67,628	
Sub-total 1st order		153,343	19.9%
2nd order (small towns)	Thabazimbi & Regorogile Northam Modimolle & Phagameng Mookgophong Bakenberg Thabo Mbeki	32,731 13,696 46,328 23,874 9,148 4,949	
Sub-total 2nd order		130,726	17.0%
3rd order (small towns and isolated regional service centres)	Roedtan & Thusang Pienaarsrivier Mabatlane (Vaalwater) Setateng Rebone Ga-mabusela	1,510 2,868 4,823 10,484 6,137 3,863	
Sub-total 3rd order		29,685	3.8%
4th order (villages)	e.g. Abbotspoort & Makaunyane; Ga-Seleka; Tshamahansi; Masodi; Vingerkraal		
Sub-total 4th order		329,569	42.9%
5th order (remote villages)	e.g. Tom Burke; Marnitz; Madibaneng; Radium		
Sub-total 5th order		22,913	2.9%
Other	Farm, working towns, prisons, etc Informal settlements	81,475 20,367	
Sub-total other		101,842	13.2%
Total		768,078	



Map 11: Hierarchy of Settlement / Growth Points Areas



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 29: LAND USE COMPOSITION - LAND USE MANAGEMENT SCHEMES AND SDFS (WDM SDF)

MUNICIPALITY	LAND USE SCHEME	IMPLEMENTED	SDF	SPLUMA BYLAWS	LED Strategies	ITPs
Bela Bela	Proclaimed land use scheme is in place	Implemented	Available	Adopted	Adopted	No ITP
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Proclaimed land use scheme under development	Not Implemented	Available	Adopted	Due for Development	No ITP
Mogalakwena	Proclaimed land use scheme is in place	Implemented	Under Review Process	Adopted	Under review	Awaiting Council adoption
Lephalale	Proclaimed land use scheme outdated	Not Implemented	Outdated	Adopted	Adopted	Adopted
Thabazimbi	Proclaimed land use scheme under development	Not Implemented	Under review process	Adopted	Due for Review	NO ITP
WDM	N/A	N/A	N/A	Adopted	Due for Review	Due for review

The settlement patterns in the Waterberg District have been developed based on the following forces:

Townships.
Local Service points.
Towns.
The rural nature of large parts of the district.

NB: These have created a number of small settlements with no clear hierarchy based on size.

AREAS OF NATIONAL IMPORTANCE

There are three elements of national importance within the Waterberg District.

The Medupi Power Station that will supplement existing power generation and is of critical importance to ensure sufficient energy capacity for the entire country over the long term;
The Waterberg coal fields located adjacent to Medupi, as identified by the National Development Plan; and a heavy haul corridor from the Lephalale area to the south.

Land Claims & Illegal occupation of land: Land claims and land restitution is a very important albeit a contentious issue. However, from a spatial planning point of view land ownership does not necessarily determine the preferred use of land. The exceptions are, as is the case with tribal land, where uses are restructured through restricted ownership practices, and where

land restitution leads to commercially productive land becoming unproductive. The land restitution process can restrict investment and economic activity over the short and medium term but should not have an impact on the long term use of the land.

TABLE 30: WDM SETTLED LAND CLAIMS

PROJECT NAME	PROPERTIES RESTORED	TOTAL AREA(ha)	NO. OF HOUSEHOLDS
Moretele (pienansrevier) phase 1, 2 & 3	Vaalboschblt 66 JR Ptn 1& 13	1,966	111
Letlhakaneng (phase 1, 2 & 3)	Turffontein 499KR Ptn 24, 25, & 39. Phase 2 ptn 17, 19 23, 29, 32, 34 and 35 (152. 6582) ptn 18, 20, 32 and 33 of farm Turffontein 499	305	95
Mawela family	Farm Gruispan 16 JR	1,392	37
Bela Bela (phase 1 & 2)	ptn 2, 4, 5 and ptn 8 of Olieventein 475 KR, R/E of Olieventein 562 KR, ptn 3, 31 and R/E of ptn 34 of the farm Rietspruit 527 KQ and ptn 1 of Zandspruit 472 KR (Phase 1) Ptn 11, 14, 16, 20, 21, 22, R/E of ptn 24, 25 & 38 of the farm Rietspruit 527 KR R/E of ptn 9 & 10 of the form Zoete-inval 484 KR Ptn 4 of the Farm Aliwal 486 KR	6,724	90
Ga Mashong Matlala (phase 1 to 3)	Haakdoringfontein 85 JR: R/E Ptn 1, 2, 3 4, 6, 7, Kameelrevier 77 JR: Ptn 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 13 Kliprand 76 JR: R/E Ptn 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 9, 13, 15, 17, Elandsoewer 707 JR, Uitvlugt 709 JR Apiesdoring78 JR, Kumnandi 67 JR	6, 042	174
Nosijeje/'Maurine Patience	R/E of Ptn 21, 22, 32, 33, 34, and 35 of the farm Buiskop	62	0
	R/E of ptn 4 of Middelkopje 33 JR, ptn 11, 5, 6, 7 R/E of ptn 8 of Middelkopje 33 JR ptn 12, 13, 14, R/E of De Kuil 28 JR, Turflaagte 35 JR Ptn 5 of Turflaagte 35 JR R/E of Palmietgat 34 JR R/E of ptn 3 of Palmietgat 34 JR Ptn 4 of Turflaagte 35 JR Ptn 1 of Granspan 37 JR R/E OF Kalkheuvel 73 JR Ptn 1 of Vaalbosch 38 JR Ptn 1, 2, & 3 of the farm Turflaagte 35 JR	8,217 59	0

Map 12: WDM Settled Land claims

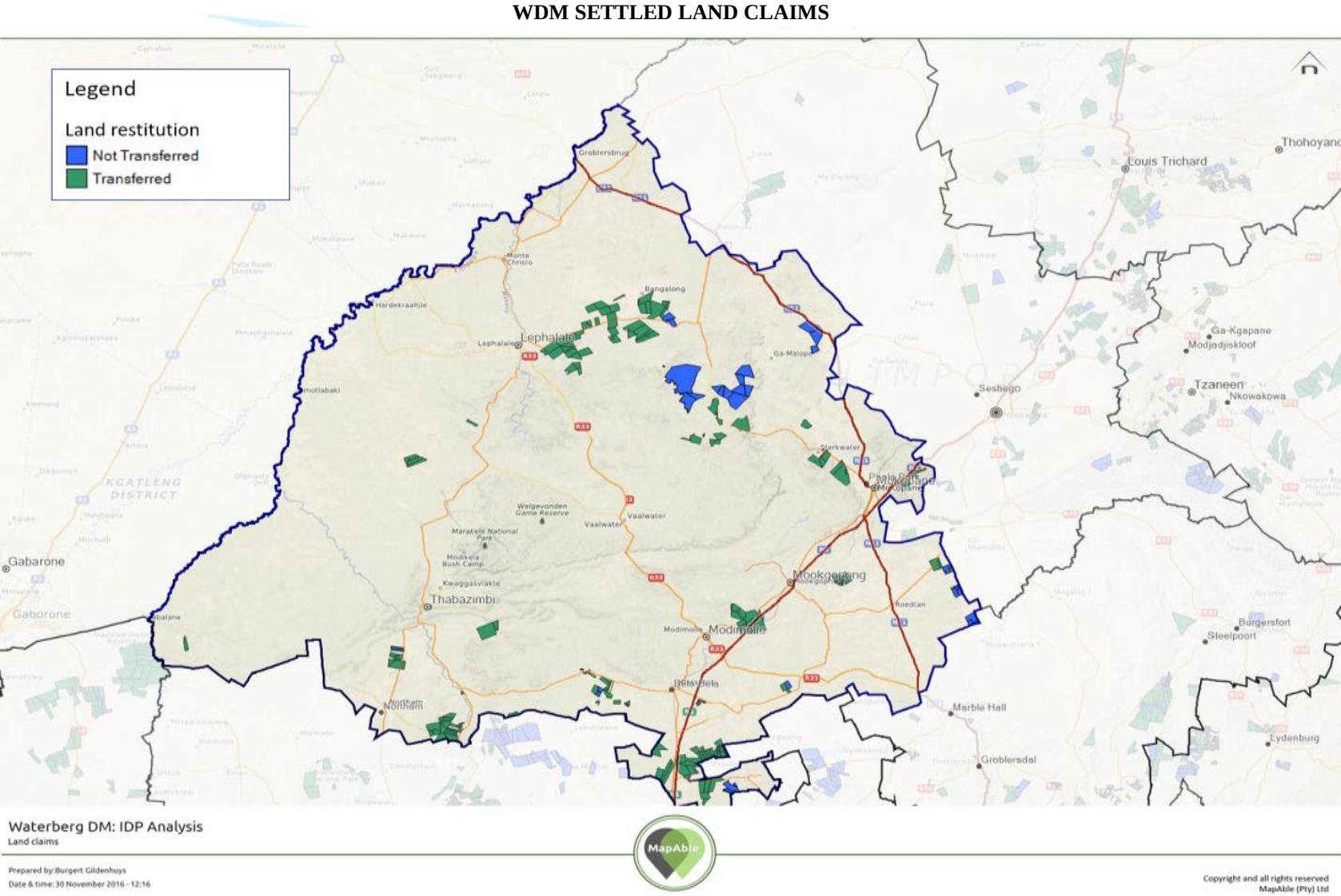


TABLE 31: ILLEGAL OCCUPATION OF LAND**Waterberg District Informal Settlements per Local Municipality**

Municipality	Number of Informal Settlement(s)
Bela-Bela	7
Modimolle-Mookgophong	9
Mogalakwena	1
Lephalale	3
Thabazimbi	10

TABLE 32: INFORMAL SETTLEMENTS IN WATERBERG

SETTLEMENT	ESTIMATE NO. OF HOUSEHOLDS	COMMENTS
Jacob Zuma	500	The area is not habitable due to flood lines challenges. To be relocated and accommodated at Ext 9
Proposed Ext 9 Township)	400	To be formalised at Ext 9.
Spa Park(Kope Waye)	100	To be formalised at proposed Extensions of Spa Park (Portions of the farm Roodepoort) being earmarked for purchase by the Dept. (COGHSTA).
Vingerkraal	200	The area has no enough water sources to sustain a formal township and this has been confirmed by specialist studies. To be relocated to proposed Extension 1 at Masakhane / Radium and other Areas within the Municipality (proposed Extensions at Spa Park).
Eersbewoon	80	The area is too small and isolated to warrant formalization, and may not be sustainable in terms of Spatial Planning principles. To be relocated to other Townships Extensions within Bela Bela
Mookgophong Has 4 Informal Settlements In Wards 1, 3 & 4	900	
	400	
	10	

Marapong	2000	
Mamojela Part (Public Works)	600	
Steenbokpan	600	



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 13: Informal Settlement Map

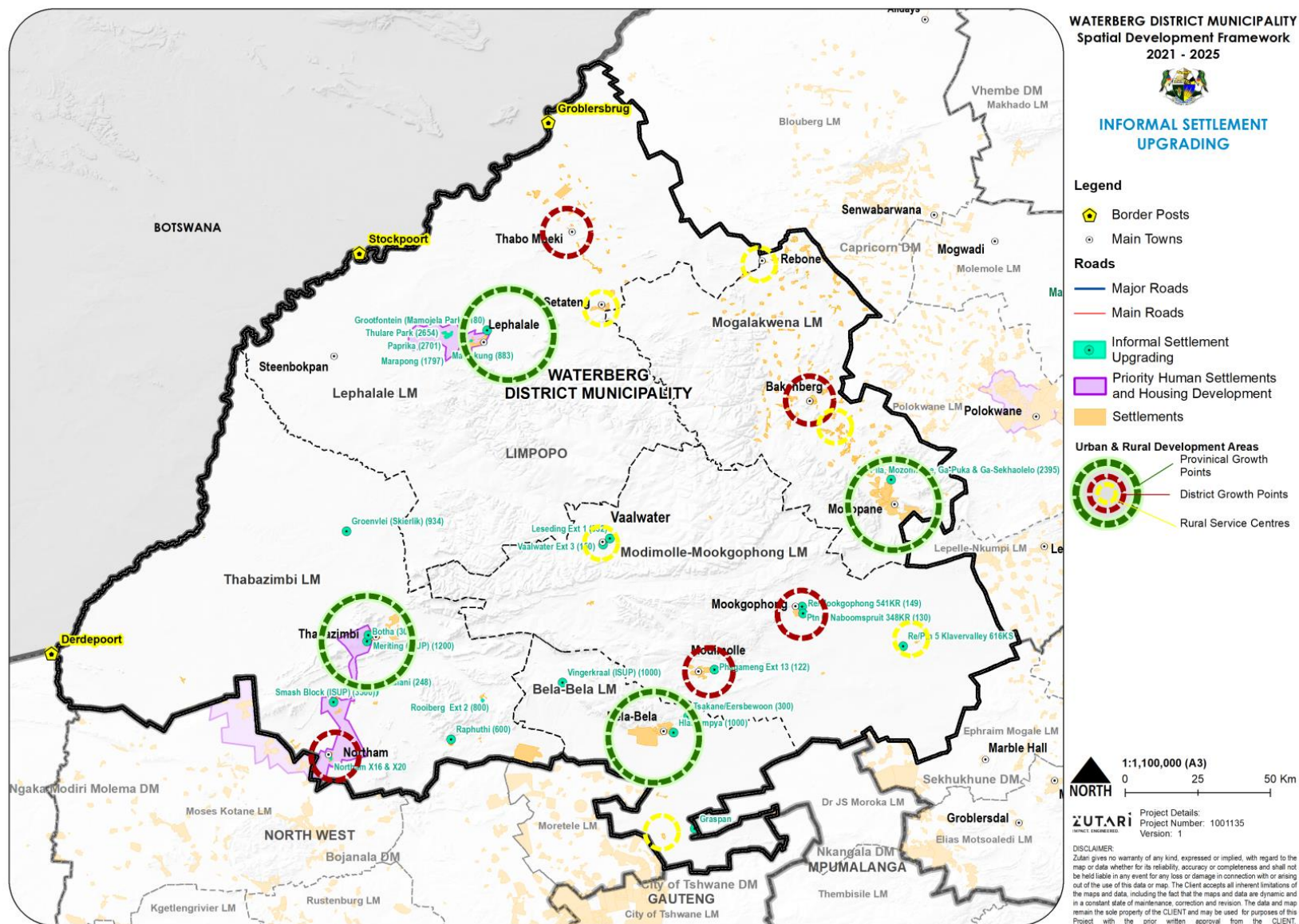


TABLE 33: STRATEGICALLY LOCATED LAND IN WDM

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION/ERF	SIZE	COMMENTS/REMARKS
ERF 1067 Warmbarth Ext 5 (Park)	2.6239 HA	Council resolved on the development of the area for Housing as part of the then Proposed ABSA/ COGHSTA project.
Remainder of Portion 25 Of Hatbad 465KR	42HA	Council resolved on the development of the area for Housing as part of the then Proposed ABSA/ COGHSTA project. Part of the area is not developable due to rocky outcrops.
Remainder of 655 Warmbaths	13HA	Council resolved on the development of the area for middle income, and it is located closer to the CBD. Potential BNG project.
Remainder of Wilgegend 17JR(Masakhane)	197Ha of which over 100 ha is still undeveloped/planned and may be available for future development.	The land is currently owned by Waterberg but is in the process of being transferred to the municipality. The municipality has earmarked the area for expansion of Masakhane Settlement as well as accommodation of a Cemetery and Land-fill site.
Mookgophong Ext 8		
Mookgophong Hostels		
Thusang Ext 1		
Mookgophong Ext 4 & Siclebos Farm		
Naboomspruit 348kr		



TABLE 34: NUMBER OF LANDFILL SITES PERMITTED AND UNLICENSED PER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

MUNICIPALITY	NUMBER OF LANDFILL SITES	PERMITTED SITES	UNLICENSED/ (Rehabilitation and closure lincense)
Bela Bela	1	1	0
Lephalela	2	2	0
Modimolle-Mookgophong	3	2	1 (Rehabilitation and Closure License)
Mogalakwena	1	2	0
Thabazimbi	2	2	3 (Rehabilitation and Closure License)
Total	12	8	3

TABLE 35: TYPES OF DWELLING

House or brick structure on a separate stand or yard
Traditional dwelling/hut/structure made of traditional materials
Flat in block of flats
Town/cluster/semi-detached house (simplex; duplex; triplex)
House/flat/room in back yard
Informal dwelling/shack in back yard
Informal dwelling/shack NOT in back yard
Room/flatlet not in back yard but on shared property
Caravan or tent
Private ship/boat
Not applicable (collective living quarters)

LAND

Land remains one of the biggest constraints towards development in the district, the province and the country. The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, is slowly changing the landscape in the agricultural sector by acquiring land and allocating it to the previously disadvantaged groups for productive utilisation. Waterberg district's share of the provincial land claim's lodge is 7.64%. In the district, 539 land claims were lodged from inception of the programme to date.

TABLE 36: LODGED CLAIMS

LODGED CLAIMS		OUTSTANDING CLAIMS	
Waterberg	539	159	

TABLE 37: RESTITUTION PROGRAMME

Thus far, 380 of the 539 (translating to 70.5%) of the land claims lodged were settled.

District	No of claims settled	H/H	Beneficiaries	Hectors	Financial Compensation Paid	Land Restoration	Grants	Total
Waterberg	380	9371	32903	222559,85	R 77m	R 1,2bn	R 28m	R 1,3bn

Waterberg district has 159 outstanding land claims which is approximately 30%.

Land Acquisition

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform acquired 176 farms since the programme inception until August 2019. The land use of the purchased farms is mainly for livestock, crop production and game farming.

TABLE 38: LAND ACQUISITION AS AT AUGUST 2019

District	Farms	Ha	Beneficiaries	Female	Households	Youth	Disabled
Waterberg	176	91899	1836	713	835	379	4

LAND DEVELOPMENT SUPPORT

One of the key objectives of the department is to promote sustainable rural livelihoods. The department's focus on food security and rural livelihood to address social policy question resulted in support to 10 projects on one hectare one household programme since the inception of the programme until Dec 2018.

TABLE 39: ONE HOUSEHOLD ONE HECTARE PROGRAMME

District	ONE HOUSEHOLD ONE HECTARE SINCE INCEPTION OF THE PROGRAMME 2016/17 TO END OF DEC 2018						
	Number of projects	Hectares	Beneficiaries	Female	House Holds	Youth	Disabled
Waterberg	10	471	471	199	471	48	06

RECAPITALIZATION AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

As part of farmer settlement support and recapitalization of land reform 87 projects (which is 33.3% of the provincial projects) benefited from the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform with production infrastructure. This infrastructure support includes amongst others intensive production system (tunnels), irrigation systems, Machinery and Equipment benefitting 603 previously disadvantaged groups.

TABLE 40: RECAPITALIZATION AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

District	RECAPITALIZATION AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME SINCE INCEPTION 2009/10 TO END OF DEC 2018						
	Number of projects	Hectares	Beneficiaries	Female	House Holds	Youth	Disabled
Waterberg	87	28375	603	249	87	57	7

The department through its PLAS programme focuses primarily on the poor and is based on the State proactively purchasing land with high agricultural potential. The department then select beneficiaries who can lease the land with the option to purchase it. The department has leased land to 61 farms on a 30-year period and 67 farms are in the pipeline.

TABLE 41: SIGNING OF PLAS LEASES

DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	NO. OF LEASES TO BE SIGNED	30-YEAR LEASES SIGNED
Waterberg	67	61

Waterberg District Municipality Informal Settlements

With established towns and townships within the municipal area, there are sprawling informal settlements that are found adjacent to the nodes, especially where there are mining activities. The existence of the informal settlements within the municipal area extends the service delivery backlogs in municipalities.

SPATIAL CHALLENGES & OPPORTUNITIES

- District SDF still to be reviewed
- Formalization of informal settlements to inform spatial hierarchy.
- Mushrooming of a informal settlement.
- High number of RDP houses without basic service.
- Fragmented nature of current urban development .
- Lack of Municipal land for development.
- Illegal land use activities on agricultural land.
- Poor planning in rural areas due to lack of implementation of land use management scheme/system.
- Illegal occupation of land/ land invasion.
- Dysfunctional spatial patterns.

SPATIAL IMPLICATIONS

- Deliberate measures to dismantle racial settlement patterns.
- CBD to incorporate into IDP for implementation.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

Map 14: Environmental Analysis



ENVIRONMENTAL LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORK

There are a number of regulation, policies, acts and treaties that are meant at the protection, preservation and conservation of our natural resources. Below is a summary of the legislative framework of the state.

THE CONSTITUTION

Section 24 of the Constitution of South Africa Act 108 of 1996 provides that everyone has the right to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being and to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that:

- Prevent pollution and ecological degradation;
- Promote conservation; and
- Secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development

THE NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ACT

The National Environmental Management Act, No. 107 of 1998 (NEMA) came into operation on the 1st January 1999. It is the flagship environmental statute of South Africa. NEMA's primary purpose is to provide for co-operative environmental governance by establishing principles for decision-making on all matters affecting the environment. NEMA also establishes procedures and institutions that will promote public participation in environmental management.

Chapter 1 of NEMA stipulates Environmental Management must place people and their needs at the forefront of its concern, and serve the physical, psychological, developmental, cultural and social interest equitably. It also advocates that development must be socially, environmentally and economically sustainable.

The principles enshrined in NEMA guide the interpretation, administration and implementation of the environment in South Africa. These principles serve as a framework within which environmental management must take place. They include amongst others, sustainable development and the 'polluters pay' principle.

THE NATIONAL WATER ACT

The National Water Act, No. 36 of 1998 ('the National Water Act') recognises that water is a natural resource that belongs to all people. The National Water Act regulates the manner in which persons obtain the right to use water and provides for just and equitable utilisation of water resources. Sustainability and equity are identified as central guiding principles in the protection, use and these guiding principles recognise:

- The basic human needs of present and future generations;
- The need to protect water resources;
- The need to share some water resources with other countries; and
- The need to promote social and economic development through the use of water.

NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT: WASTE ACT

The National Environmental Management: Waste Act, No. 59 of 2008 ('Waste Act') was enacted to reform the law regulating waste management and to govern waste management activities. The Waste Act has repealed and replaced those sections of the Environmental Conservation Act that dealt with the prevention of littering and waste management. The Act

creates a general duty in respect of waste management obliging holders of waste to minimise waste, recycle and dispose of waste in an environmentally sound manner. Holders must also prevent any employees from contravening the Waste Act. Section 18 introduces ‘extended producer responsibility’. The Minister may identify a product, in terms of which extended responsibility applies, identify measures that must be taken and by whom. The Minister may specify how to implement such extended responsibility and any financial arrangements that must be made.

NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT: BIODIVERSITY ACT

The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, No 10 of 2004 provides for the management and conservation of South Africa’s biodiversity, the protection of threatened and protected species and ecosystems, the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources and the equitable sharing of benefits arising out of bio-prospecting of those resources.

NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT: AIR QUALITY ACT

The Air Quality Act regulates air quality in order to protect the environment. It provides reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and ecological degradation and for securing ecologically sustainable development while promoting justifiable economic and social development. The Act further provides for national norms and standards regulating air quality monitoring, management and control by all spheres of government. It also provides for specific air quality measures.

POLLUTER PAYS PRINCIPLE

The ‘polluter pays’ principle provides that the cost of remedying pollution, environmental degradation and consequent adverse health effects and of preventing, controlling or minimising further pollution, environmental damage or adverse health effects must be paid for by those responsible for harming the environment’. NEMA imposes a duty of care on every person who causes, has caused or may cause significant pollution or degradation of the environment to take reasonable measures to prevent the pollution or degradation of the environment from occurring, continuing or reoccurring.

BIOPHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT

Climate, Rainfall and Topology

Location: the Waterberg District Municipality area covers approximately 49 523 km². It is the largest district in the Limpopo Province. It contains 5 local municipalities, namely: Bela-Bela, Lephalale, Modimolle-Mookgophong, Mogalakwena and Thabazimbi. A district sharing a boarder with North of Pretoria and to the West of the N1, is situated in the Limpopo Province, the renowned Waterberg Mountain bushveld. The complex bushveld is the largest layered complex in the world and covers an area of nearly 65 000 km² in addition to its scientific importance, and most importantly the region also harbors important sources of platinum and chromium. The Waterberg basin is bounded on the southern side by the Waterberg, the Springbok Flats to the east of Modimolle overlying rocks of the Bushveld Igneous Complex and coal bearing, especially in the area of Nylsvley. Sandriviersberg stretches northwards up to Lephalale, where it is bounded on the northern side by Karoo rocks. The Waterberg coalfield directly to the northeast and west of Lephalale are the sequences deposited in a vast intra-cratonic basin. In Lephalale area, there is a bordering offshoot towards the west into Botswana, and another bordering offshoot towards the north, up to the Blouberg region.

Climate: The Waterberg District is combination of two / 2 climatic regions can be distinguished in the Limpopo Province as the subtropical plateau, a flat elevated interior area hot and dry with winter rain. As well as the moderate eastern plateau with warm to hot and rainy summers, and cold dry winters. The northern and western regions of the area experience a hot and semi-arid climate. The southern and eastern regions are more humid and slightly cooler. The mean circulation of the atmosphere over southern Africa is anticyclonic throughout the year. Extremely hot in summer with frequent thunderstorms and hailstorms developing during the late afternoons and cooler across the high-altitude locations. With winter temperatures that are significantly cooler to cold, with clear sunny days. A record of an annual rainfall of 350mm - 780mm falling mainly during the months of September to April has been evident in the

Waterberg region; with changing climatic conditions. Climate Change is becoming increasingly apparent in the Waterberg region, with usual manifestations of evident climatic changes with long term changes in weather indicators such as rainfall or temperature. High impact climate events such as heat-wave days and high fire-danger days are consistently projected to increase drastically in their frequency of occurrence (Engelbrecht, et al., 2015) with reference made to some disaster events of -drought, floods and wild / veld fires- ; although quantification of such is not a straightforward task. Its importance lies as the resilience to climate variability and extreme weather events that are the basis for disaster risks and management approach.

Rainfall: Overall decrease in rainfall duration across all climatic zones of the Waterberg District has been recorded by CSIR and SA Weather Services from the past decade, with short extreme rainfall patterns. The area falls within the summer rainfall region of Limpopo Province, with the rainy season lasting from November to March. The average rainfall is 600-650mm with the highest measurements occurs in January and December. The average declines from east to west is evident due to extreme climatic changes. Thunderstorms and hailstorms are recorded fairly often, with fog encounters that are infrequent with drastic decrease in summer rainfall and with very low or very high river flows that directly result to water shortages in the Waterberg Region. The projected change in the frequency of occurrence of extreme rainfall events is defined as 20 mm of rain falling within 24 hours over an area of 0.5° x 0.5° (Engelbrecht, et al., 2012). Recent information from SA Weather Services regarding changes in extreme rainfall events and heavy daily rainfall in Waterberg region within Limpopo is increasing. Higher rainfall projections with less rainfall days indicate that the events and the possibility of severe rain events may increase (SA WEATHER SERVICES, 2023). Short duration-intense rainfalls in Waterberg result in floods that cause serious problems to urban infrastructure (i.e. dams, bridges, and storm water systems), population of informal settlements located in floodplains and agriculture is greatly impacted resulting to economic losses. The extreme events suggest focusing climate change analysis with average economic loss for the Waterberg region, due to disasters of flood events recorded from 2012 and more than 20% quota from extreme storms events, rather than measuring normal weather regulated changes on generic climatic means.

Temperature: Minimum temperatures experienced in Limpopo Province have increased about 0.5 – 1.2 Degrees Celsius in the last twenty years, and about 0.6 – 0.9 Degrees Celsius for maximum recorded temperature. Climatic Modelled results for temperature in future for the LOIH zone suggest a scenario within the realm of present days, with increase towards 2030, reaching 2 – 5 Degrees Celsius increase on temperatures in the Waterberg region resulting to heat waves disasters. The climate change long term scenario by SA Weather Services on extreme high temperatures predicts an increase between 3 – 7 Degrees Celsius from the baseline scenario. Waterberg as a hot semi-arid climate, summer days are hotter with temperatures varying between 28 – 38.5 Degrees Celsius when inclining to the Northern part of the Waterberg region (Mogalakwena and Lephalale areas) between the period of October and March months. During summer nights are hot to mild, with temperatures ragging from 16 – 30 Degrees Celsius. In winter temperatures may vary ranging from 19.6 – 25.1 Degrees Celsius in April to September. Winter nights are colder with temperatures declining to 4.3 – 13.2 Degrees Celsius. Drought is considered one of the most complex and least understood of all natural hazards, affecting more people than any other hazard within the Waterberg region; but it is also the most important natural disaster in Southern Africa in the context of economic, social and environmental terms (Buckland, et al., 2000). It is believed that at least 60% of sub-Saharan Africa is vulnerable to drought and probably 30% is highly vulnerable with extreme drought in the Limpopo River Basin which supports the Waterberg region natural ecosystems, as recorded for more than a century at intervals of 10 – 20 years by UNESCO. The Waterberg is one of the regions in Limpopo Province that is particularly vulnerable to experience veld-fires or wild fires on the denominated grassland areas, bushland and woodlands; especially during the months of July to September due to impacts of drought and aggravated strong winds resulting to devastating veld fires or wild fires that destroys large areas of grazing lands at a time when grass is in short supply (South African Weather Services, 2017).

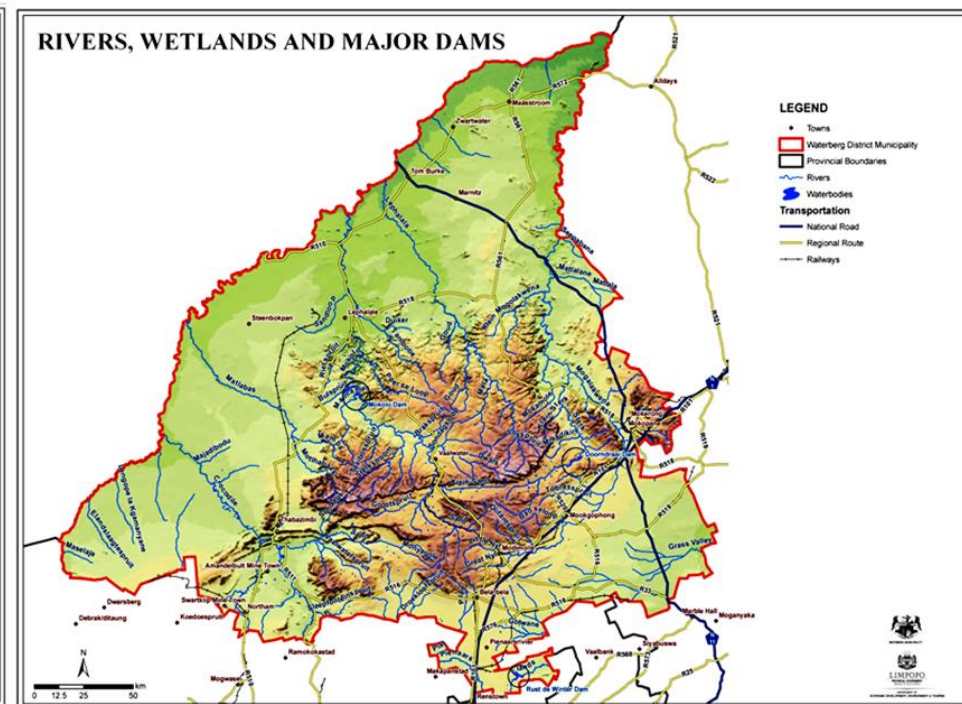
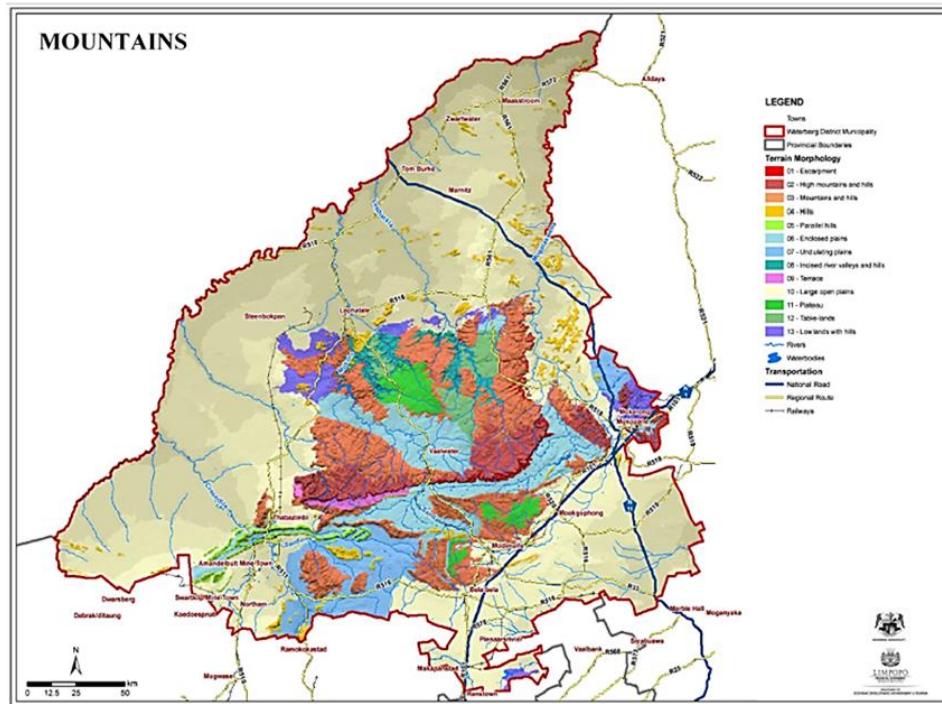
Mountains and Water Resources

Waterberg District derives its name from the Waterberg Mountains and was given by the indigenous people of the area because of the many water streams flowing down the mountain slopes. The Waterberg Mountain Range forming a central mountain plateau occupies the central part of the District. It is linked to the Sebetiela Mountains in the south-eastern part of the District, which in turn is link to the Great Escarpment of the Drakensberg Mountain Range by the Strydpoort Mountains. The Rooiberg Mountains are located in the south-western part of the District. The rivers flowing in the District drain in a north-westerly direction to the Limpopo River that has a direct influence on South Africa's neighbouring countries.

The following rivers are the **most prominent** in the District:

- Limpopo River; Lephhalala River; Mokolo River; Mogalakwena River; Sterk River; Oliphant's River and Nyl River

Rivers are and will always be areas where people congregate and have the highest impact, rivers support livelihoods and economies. These impacts take place over a considerable period of time. Rivers are described as environmental arteries and when damaged, dramatic environmental catastrophes result, having a ripple effect on other environments. Waters from these rivers are mainly used for irrigation and human consumption. The main catchment areas in Waterberg are Mokolo, Lephallale and Mogalakwena.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Water Quality Impacts

- Less irrigation and drinking water could be available due to increasing water temperatures linked to higher ambient temperatures.
- Favourable conditions for the incubation and transmission of water-borne diseases may be created by increasing air and water temperatures.
- Increased fish mortality due to reduced oxygen concentrations in aquatic environments and mortality of temperature-sensitive fish species.
- Human health and ecosystem impacts, associated with increased rainfall intensities, flash floods and regional flooding including overflowing sewers due to sewage pipes blocked with washed-off debris, damage to sewerage infrastructure resulting in raw sewage discharges into rivers, scouring and erosion of urban streams, increased sediment and pollutant overflow and damage to low lying water and wastewater treatment works disrupting drinking water supplies.
- Increased periods of drought mean less water is available to dilute wastewater discharges and irrigation return flows resulting in reduced water quality and associated downstream health risks to aquatic ecosystems.
- River Flooding due to disturbed or destroyed Wetlands ecosystems.

Flooding in the Waterberg Region

The most affected areas with flooding in the Waterberg Region are the following areas:

- Lephalale Local Municipal area is worse affected by floods as a result of **overflowing Mokolo and Phalala Rivers** and the following are their vulnerable communities. Thabo-Mbeki Township 177 victims, Mamojela Park informal settlement ±3000 people are being evacuated, Mogol farming communities along D171 route and Beska bridge, Mokuruanyane, Kauletsi, Martinique, Abbotspoort, Shongoane 1-3 and Ga-Seleka;
- Thabazimbi LM is mainly affected at Jabulani informal settlement due to the **mining dam eruption** due to heavy rains that over flooded the capacity of dam. **Koedoeskop Bridge water level annual increase** create floods in Thabazimbi. **Crocodile river is constantly rising** and overflowing due to floods during high rainy seasons.

WATER SOURCES IN MUNICIPALITIES			
Municipality	Surface Water Source	Groundwater	
Bela-Bela LM	Warmbath Dam Platrivier Dam Pipeline from Klipdrift purification works (Magalies Water Servitude Line)	Farm Boreholes	
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Modimolle Donkerpoort Dam Pipeline from Klipdrift purification works (Magalies Water Servitude Line) Mookgophong LM Welgevonden Dam / Frekkiegeyser Dam (Private Owned)	Perdelaagte borehole in Modimolle Mabaleng borehole Mabatlane borehole +12 boreholes(Mookgophong & Naboomspruit) +4 boreholes (Roedtan)	
Mogalakwena LM	Doorindraai Water Resources System (Private Owned)	Sefakaola Rural Water Supply Scheme – (+41 boreholes) Glen Alpine Rural Water Supply Scheme – (+34 Bore holes) Mapela Regional Rural Water Scheme (+45 boreholes) Bakenberg Regional Rural Water scheme (+51 boreholes) Nkidikitlana Regional Rural Water Scheme (+45 boreholes) Salem Regional Rural Water Scheme (+42 boreholes) Uitloop Farm (Private Owned boreholes) Weenen / Planknek (Private Owned boreholes)	
Lephalale LM	Mogolo Dam	Rural Water Supply Scheme – (+132 boreholes)	
Thabazimbi LM	Vaalkop Dam (Magalies Water Servitude Line)	B Seven (+1 borehole) Groep Five & Twelve (5 boreholes) Leeupoort (+2 Boreholes) Roosberg (+3 boreholes)	TOWNSHIPS WATER SUPPLY SCHEME

Modimolle- **Mabaleng Alma Sand River constantly rising** and overflowing due to floods during high rainy seasons.

- Bela-Bela town flooded after affected by **Bela-Bela Township, Klein Kariba & Thaba Monate Dam eruption** flooded R101 (with lots of potholes) route until in town where the Railway station, Industrial area and some businesses were under the water. **Pienaarivier rising** and overflowing due to floods during high rainy seasons.
- Mogalakwena **Sterkwater** river overflow due to floods during high rainy seasons; flooding township houses.

Waterberg Water Challenges

- Inadequate bulk water supply.
- Ageing infrastructure.
- Poor quality of drinking water.
- Inadequate bulk water supply.
- Inadequate funding and accumulative debts.
- Illegal connections, theft and vandalism.
- Municipal Sanitation – Water Waste Treatment Works infrastructure that are dysfunctional, Agricultural pesticides and Mining pollutants directly contaminates natural water resources (surface and underground water systems) rivers and aquifers which are the main contributors of Waterberg Water Catchments that nourish dams with portable water.
- Over extraction of underground water in rural villages and farms.

Implications

- Loss of revenue due to irregular systematic collection of water tariffs.
- Inability to reach/achieve Municipal Service Delivery targets.
- Impedes on possible investors in the District.

Recommendations

- Waterberg Water Catchment Management.
- Upgrading of water and sanitation supply will eliminate pollution of natural water resources.
- Close monitoring of Municipal Infrastructure Grant Funding outsourced from the Department of Water and Sanitation for projects to upgrade water and sanitation supply.

GEOMORPHOLOGY AND BIODIVERSITY

Geology, Topology and Landscape

The simplified geology of the Waterberg District can be classified into five distinct geology types, namely the Transvaal Super Group, Karoo Super Group, Waterberg Group, Bushveld Igneous Complex, and the Archaean Granite/Gneiss and Swazian Complex. The Karoo Super Group contains coal deposits while Bushveld Igneous Complex harbours important sources of platinum and chromium. The Waterberg Group contains no minerals of economic value. The Transvaal Super Group has iron ore deposits. The lithology of the area shows that there are 26 dominant rock types occurring in the Waterberg District. All of which are described. The landscape of the Waterberg District is a unique feature that distinguishes it from any other place in

South Africa. There are four main landscape features in the Waterberg District, namely the Waterberg Plateau, the Transvaal Plateau Basin, the Pietersburg Plain and the Limpopo Depression.

The character of the Waterberg Escarpment is an important feature of the area. It is an asset that should be protected. Similarly, the wide-open and vast bushveld plains of the Limpopo Peneplain represent a special South African bushveld character. This character is one of the key selling points that the tourism sector employs in their marketing strategy. Steep slopes have been identified in the EMF as they are inherently sensitive to change. The Waterberg District **conservation history** extends as far back as the Stone Age and is highly diverse. The history was greatly influenced by natural phenomena and features of the area. Some important cultural and historical features of the area include rock paintings and stone tools of San hunters and Khoe Khoe herders, Bambata clay pottery, and also ruins of Langa Ndebele settlements. The Waterberg District has a rich cultural history also, with various tribes that inhabited the area, as well as the colonial settlements. The interaction between the colonial Voortrekkers and local tribes in the area are of importance especially at sites such as the Makapan's Caves.

There are a **number of protected areas** within the Waterberg District, including a SANPARKS National Park, Ramsar Wetland, World Heritage Site, public and private Nature Reserves recognised by UNESCO. The presence of the **Waterberg Biosphere Reserve** in the Waterberg Region provides an opportunity to promote **biodiversity conservation** at the same time as advancing **eco-tourism and green economy**. Eco-Tourism, Agriculture, Wildlife Economy and other natural resource based economies are more intensive in the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve area. The Waterberg District host internationally renowned tourist attractions that can be used to attract more tourists and investors in the area:

- **Waterberg Biosphere Reserve**- received its international status in March 2001 and now forms part of the World Network of biosphere reserves, registered with UNESCO. The Waterberg Biosphere Reserve is the first “savannah” biosphere reserve registered in Southern Africa;
- **The Makapan Valley World Heritage Site** - is a site for one of the most dramatic incidents in the long and fascinating local history near Mokopane town in the Mogalakwena Local municipality. This cooking pot reached a boiling point between the Voortrekkers and the local Ndebeles. The Voortrekkers, which by the 1850s were already well established as far as Schoemansdal near Soutpansberg, used the local area as a thoroughfare. The Makapan Valley was declared as one of the first National Heritage Sites of the new united nation-an act supported by all local communities. In fact, current Chief Mokopane made contributions towards the development of the site as a cultural shrine and tourism icon. The application for the World Heritage Status has been approved by UNESCO.
- **Nylsvlei Wetland**- is a registered Ramsar site (Ramsar is the international convention for the protection of wetlands). More than 400 bird species have been recorded on the 16 000ha wetland extending some 70 kilometres between the towns of Modimolle, Mookgophong and Mokopane. The heart of the Nylsvlei wetland is in the Nylsvlei Nature Reserve with five modern bird hides providing perfect view and photo opportunities.
- **Marakele National Park** – a South African National Park (SANPARK) located in the northeast of Thabazimbi, this park is undoubtedly one of the greatest wilderness areas of South Africa, the park has become a ‘place of sanctuary’ for an impressive variety of wildlife due to its location in the transitional zone between the dry wester and moister eastern regions of South Africa.
- **Hot Spring Water**- the strong mineral springs with a flow of 220 000 litres of water per hour with a temperature of 52 degrees Celsius gave rise to the establishment of Bela-Bela (Warmbaths). The town's progress was to a large extent due to the hot water and their healing qualities. The water from the springs is rich with sodium chloride, calcium carbonate and other salts are, amongst others, beneficial to persons suffering from rheumatic ailments. About 400 000 people visit the beautiful swimming baths of the springs annually, mainly during winter months when the climate is pleasant.

The Waterberg District's natural vegetation has experienced degradation in some areas. This includes urbanisation, cultivation or mining. Severe over-grazing is problematic. Biodiversity hotspots and conservation priorities in the study area should be preserved before transformation leads to the loss of the entire conservation area. The **ecological sensitivity** of the area was determined using a number of factors, including vegetation types, the presence of rivers, streams, drainage lines and wetlands, presence of steep slopes or mountains, the scenic landscape and the potential presence of various plant and animal species of conservation concern. Ecological sensitivity is categorised in the Waterberg Environmental Management Framework through a descriptive map of the Waterberg Environmental Management Zones. The **Waterberg District Municipality Environmental Management Framework (WDM - EMF)**, is a mandated document for implementation of the National Environmental Management Act in local municipalities of the Waterberg District jurisdiction as designed by the National

Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment as a municipal tool that **guides biodiversity conservation** and **eco-tourism development** in the district. The WDM – EMF was reviewed in 2020/21 Financial Year by WDM under Inter-Governmental Relations principles in partnership with Sector Departments, the Public and the Private Sector.

Vegetation Classification

Most of the **Waterberg Region** falls within the **Central Bushveld Bioregion**, which falls within the **Savannah Biome**. There are also small patches of vegetation that fall within the Mesic Highveld Grassland Bioregion, which falls within the Grassland Biome. Patches of Azonal vegetation is also found within the area. Lowveld Riverine Forest, Springbokvlakte Thornveld, Central Sandy Bushveld, Makhado Sweet Bushveld and Subtropical Salt Pans are the vegetation types of most concern for conservation. The indigenous flora of the Waterberg municipal jurisdiction consists of the Waterberg Mixed Mountain Bushveld on the north and north – western side. The vegetation includes the tree layer, which is characterized by *Faureasaligna*, common *Acacia caffra*, *Burkea Africana*, *Terminiasericia* and *Peltophorum africanum* on the deep sandy areas, with *Kirkiaacuminata* *Combretum apiculatum*. The shrub layer is moderately developed and individuals of *Grewiaflavescens*, *Ochnapulchra*, *Eucleacrispa*, *Rhuszeyheri* and *Tapiphyllum parvifolium* are commonly found. The grass layer is moderate to well developed and grasses such as *Elionurus muticus*, *Loudetia simplex*, *Panicum maximum*, *Digitaria ariantha* and *Urelytrum agropyroides* are the conspicuous species the area is also characterized by the Mixed Bushveld and Clay Thorn Bushveld. A small part of the Wolkberg Centre of Endemism occurs within the Waterberg as per the Waterberg Environmental Management Framework. Conservation of this unique vegetation is important. Large areas of the Waterberg tourist region are covered with **Bushveld habitats**, also known as the **Savanna Biome**, consisting of tall grasses and low trees, most of them deciduous, fine-leaved and thorny. The region provides examples of the **dense shrub land** with large **trees and shrubs** that include **Umbrella Thorn, Marula, Mopane and Baobab**. The Waterberg Region forestry, vegetation and terrain type is rare, indigenous and endemic to Waterberg; hence the region attracts various tourists ranging from scholars for research to nature explorers for wild adventure. The general trend of ecological tourism / eco-tourism economy mention above has been encouraged by the establishment and development of the Waterberg Biosphere. This trend is expected to continue in enhancement and advancing of Waterberg tourism economy and conservation.

- **Plants:** Species information was obtained from SANBI, including from database searches and literature sources (EMF, 2010b). Sixty-four plant species of special concern are found within the Waterberg District. Twenty-two of the 64 species are threatened. Three are Critically Endangered, namely: *Euphorbia clivicola*, *Gasteria disticha* and *Orbea elegans* (potentially extinct). Three are Endangered, including *Brachystelma gerrardii*, *Delosperma macellum* and *Encephalartos eugene-maraisii*. Sixteen species are Vulnerable, namely *Brachycorythis conica*, *Ceropegia stentiae*, *Corchorus psammophilus*, *Cucumis humifructus*, *Cullen holubii*, *Cyphostemma hardyi*, *Elytrophorus globularis*, *Eulophia coddii*, *Jamesbrittenia bergae*, *Ledebouria atrobrunnea*, *Marsilea farinosa* subsp. *arrecta*, *Oryza longistaminata*, *Prunus africana* and *Sartidia jucunda*. Of the 64 species, 43 are not threatened nationally, but are of local concern. These species are listed as Near Threatened (12), Critically Rare (1), Rare (16) or Declining (14) (EMF, 2010b).

Animal Classification

The indigenous fauna of Waterberg municipal jurisdiction consists of Red List vertebrates (mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians) that could occur in the study area are listed. Those vertebrate species with a geographical distribution that includes the study area are discussed further. There are 43 mammal species of conservation concern that occur in the study area. Thirteen of these species are threatened with extinction and are on the Red List (classified as CR, EN or VU). Three centres of endemism occur near the eastern boundary of the Waterberg District. Seven of these species are only found in protected areas, game reserves or in private breeding programmes. These are the Tsessebe, Black Rhino, Roan Antelope, Sable Antelope, Cheetah, African Wild Dog and Lion.

There are six mammal species on the Red List that have a restricted distribution in the study area and which survive independently of conservation efforts, i.e. are dependent on maintenance of natural habitat outside of protected areas. These are the Short-eared Trident Bat, Botswana Longeared Bat, Peak-saddle Horseshoe Bat, Juliana's Golden Mole, the Giant Rat and the Pangolin. There are 21 threatened bird species (CR, EN or VU) that are found in the study area. They are found in a variety of habitats, although some patterns are evident. Large rivers, streams and wetlands provide important habitat for a number of species. Cliffs and mountain areas are important for many species, including a number of vulture species. Woodlands and savanna vegetation provide foraging habitat for many of the species found in the area. There is one frog species of conservation concern, the Giant Bullfrog, previously recorded in the

study area. There are two Vulnerable and one Near-threatened reptile species that have a distribution that includes the study area. The Near Threatened species occurs only peripherally in the study area. The other two species are the Crocodile and the African Rock Python.

A summary of existing information available in the Waterberg District for threatened Species and Species of Special Concern:

- **Mammals:** Forty-five mammal species of special concern inhabit the Waterberg District. A total of 15 species are listed as Critically Endangered, Endangered or Vulnerable. Those afforded protection in protected areas, game reserves or in private breeding programmes include the Endangered tsessebe (*Damaliscus lunatus*), the Endangered black rhino (*Diceros bicornis*), the Vulnerable roan antelope (*Hippotragus equinus*), the Vulnerable sable antelope (*Hippotragus niger*), the Vulnerable cheetah (*Acinonyx jubatus*), the Endangered African wild dog (*Lycaon pictus*), the Vulnerable elephant (*Loxodonta africana*), the Vulnerable hippopotamus (*Hippopotamus amphibius*) and the Vulnerable lion (*Panthera leo*). The remaining species have a restricted distribution range and are not afforded such protection, namely the Critically Endangered short-eared trident bat (*Cloeotis percivali*), the Vulnerable botswana long-eared bat (*Laephotis botswanae*), the Vulnerable peak-saddle horseshoe bat (*Rhinolophus blasii*), the Vulnerable Juliana's golden mole (*Amblysomus julianae*), the Vulnerable giant rat (*Cricetomys gambianus*) and the Vulnerable pangolin (*Manis temminckii*) (EMF, 2010b).
- **Reptiles:** The Vulnerable Nile crocodile (*Crocodylus niloticus*) and Vulnerable African rock python (*Python sebae natalensis*), and the Near Threatened Muller's velvet gecko (*Homopholis mulleri*), are distributed within the Waterberg District (EMF, 2010b). The Kalahari purple-glossed snake (*Amblyodipsas ventrimaculata*) was recorded near Vaalwater, and occurs nowhere else in South Africa (River Health Programme, 2006).
- **Birds:** Three Important Bird Areas (IBAs) of South Africa lie within the Waterberg Ecosystem; Rivers, Floodplains and the Northern Turf Thornveld (also see Waterberg District Bioregional Plan – January 2016 14 Section 2.2). As a result, bird diversity is high, with 21 bird species of special concern that are classified as Critically Endangered, Endangered or Vulnerable. The variety of ecosystems within the Waterberg District provides habitat for these birds, ranging from rivers, wetlands and mountainous areas, to savannas, forests and grasslands. The Critically Endangered Cape parrot (*Poicephalus robustus*) inhabits forest and is endemic to South Africa. The bittern (*Botaurus stellaris*) is also Critically Endangered and inhabits lowland swamps and wetlands. Some of the species classified as Endangered include the Cape vulture (*Gyps coprotheres*), white backed vulture (*Gyps africanus*), saddle-billed stork (*Ephippiorhynchus senegalensis*) and Pel's fishing owl (*Scotopelia peli*). Vulnerable species include, for example, the blue crane (*Anthropoides paradiseus*), African finfoot (*Podica senegalensis*), African grass Owl (*Tyto capensis*), bateleur (*Terathopius ecaudatus*), kori bustard (*Ardeotis kori*) and the martial eagle (*Polemaetus bellicosus*) (EMF, 2010b; EMF, 2010c).
- **Amphibian:** The Giant bullfrog (*Pyxicephalus adspersus*) is Near Threatened and relies on temporary wetlands and dams in the Waterberg District (EMF, 2010b).

SPATIAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT

In Waterberg Municipal Areas, the Waterberg Spatial Development Framework (WDM SDF) and Waterberg Environmental Management Framework (WDM EMF) identified functional zones; which consists of a range of features that clearly distinguishes it from the other zones and include the following:

- **URBAN ZONE:** typical urban activities dominate to the exclusion of other activities. The focus is around the 6 towns and includes the activities and land uses in the Townscapes. However, the rural hinterland starts to exhibit the features of a peri-urban area with elements of subsistence farming on the fringes of the more dense residential components due to labor immigration for mining job opportunities.
- **RURAL ZONE:** has many elements of the urban zone but differs to the extent that it includes very clearly defined agricultural activities in the form of subsistence farming, stock farming and game/ranching farming. The rural zone also consists of a large number of small permanent settlements with varying densities supported by eco-tourism estates, golf-lifestyle estates and retirement village settlements. These settlements are not functionally linked and exist largely independent of each other foundational to distinctive economic functions.
- **(i) Crop farming zone** which describes the areas with high potential for intensive agricultural activities. These areas have occupied most of the land in the Waterberg District municipal jurisdiction.

- **(ii) Ranching zone** is dominated by low intensity cattle and game ranching activities. This zone covers major parts of the municipal area and very often co-exists of overlaps with conservation activities.
- **MINING ZONE:** is defined by virtue of the ore/mineral bodies and open plains that can potentially be mined. It is basically determined by a single factor and is in many instances in conflict with other land uses.

ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT OF THE WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

CONSERVATION ZONES



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

**WDM – EMF CONSERVATION MAP
IN GAZETTE PROCESS: BY LEDET MEC**



Environmental Management
Framework for
Waterberg
District Municipality

Environmental Management Zones in District

-  Town/City
 1st Order Node
 2nd Order Node
 3rd Order Node
 Farmer Production Support Unit
 Agri Hub
 CASP
 Illina Project
 Gateway
 Landcare Project
 SPII Project
 Water Project
 River
 Railway
 National Road
 Major Road
 Main Road
 Transnational Corridor
 Study Area
 District Municipality Boundary
 Provincial Boundary
 Dam/Water Area
 District EDP Functional Region
 Traditional Authority
- Draft Environmental Management Zone**
- 1: Conservation/ Wilderness (Protected Area) Focus Area
 2: Ecologically Sensitive Zone with an Agriculture and Tourism Focus
 3: Agriculture Focus Area - Livestock
 4: Agriculture Focus Area - Crop Cultivation
 5: Urban Development Zone
 6: Rural Development Focus Zone
 7: Mining

Date: May 2001
Created by: Niek de Pijper
RHEM/Project No.: V-2099
Coord. System: UTMzone26N
Data Sources:
SAO/Miles Research Commission
Vancouver Demonstration Sites
CSTC/Lezerdam
Openwerfdeip
USGS
NASA



0 25 50
Kilometers

NEW EMF CONSERVATION MAP

Physical Determinants of Environmental Conservation and Management.

The assessment approach for developing the SDF (SPLUMA) and EMF (NEMA) is based on an overlay technique whereby a range of features are assessed through the application of geographic information analysis with the aid of GIS.

- Information from National Environmental Potential Atlas (ENPAT) was utilized as the base information describing the physical attributes of the municipal area.
- As described above six functional zones (Urban, Rural, Mining, Agricultural, Cattle and Ranching and Conservation) were identified as the basis for the assessment.
- Each theme was mapped per functional zone and regarded as equally important.

From a biodiversity management and conservation planning perspective, protected areas are key for meeting a number of objectives, including conservation targets for protecting representative portions of vegetation and habitats, linking landscapes, providing economic benefits, ensuring a continued supply of ecosystem goods and services and providing refugia for threatened organisms. According to the Convention on Biodiversity, “they constitute an important stock of natural, cultural and social capital, yielding flows of economically valuable goods and services that benefit society, secure livelihoods, and contribute to the achievement of Millennium Development Goals. Moreover, protected areas are the key to buffering unpredictable impacts of impending climate change.”

Eco-Tourism.

The importance of ecological tourism / eco-tourism industry to the economy of the Waterberg region is likely to continue to grow into the future. Could also be linked to any expansion of the industrial operations and the related business tourism. The existing importance of the business tourism sector, and its strong links to the mine and power station are also viewed as important. The challenge faced by the tourism industry in the area is to increase leisure/ecotourism visitors in the summer seasons. This would relate to ecotourism rather than hunting. There is the opportunity to increase tourism in the area through tours to the power station (s) and/or mines. The area is renowned for hunting, wildlife and scenic beauty and nature reserves, sports and adventure. Five routes have been developed in the municipal area and include the following:

The Waterberg Savannah Biosphere, an UNESCO declared Biosphere covers the large portion of the Waterberg District Municipality. The central vision of the Waterberg Biosphere reserve is to maximize the area's potential for conservation, sustainable development and social upliftment. The Waterberg plateau has an overall character that despite the development of numerous lodges and disturbances such as landing strips still maintains a wilderness character. Similarly the wide open bushveld plains of the Limpopo Peneplain represent a special South African bushveld character. This area of pristine bushveld and small sleepy towns makes for a special character not found elsewhere in South Africa. This character is one of key selling points that the tourism sector employs in their marketing strategy. Environmental Adventure and Accommodation facilities such as holiday resorts, nature reserve, game farms, guest farms, camping, hunting and fishing activities. Eco-tourism has shown considerable consistent growth in the recent years. It is a good example of sustainable use of opportunities and natural resources; as well offers the benefit of a range of employment options for local people. In rural village areas of Waterberg within Lephalale and Mogalakwena is where the majority of the current population lives. The very high rate of unemployment implies that opportunities for establishment of more tourism businesses and tourism products which are labor intensive should be pursued further in order to employ the available potential workforce.

Agriculture

The agricultural potential of the area is intimately associated with topographical, pedological (soil) and climate determinants. As a general trend the potential for dry land cropping decreases with the rainfall distribution from south to north and west to east. The area of surface water bodies is constituted by perennial rivers together with numerous river tributaries / streams and vast wetlands that establish a major Waterberg water catchment area of the lower Limpopo basin. Farms and rural developments in its broader sense are compatible and consistent with most agricultural land use activities. Existing agricultural activities are game farming, subsistence crop farming and stock farming. The rural villages are mainly characterized by cultivated subsistence dry land mainly located within the Mogalakwena and Lephalale jurisdictions. Vegetable crops include the following: Squash butternut, Squash hubburb, Onions, Watermelons, Cabbage assorted, White maize, Pumpkin Grey, Pumpkin White, Beetroot, Carrots, and Peppers. The larger portion of the Waterberg region is characterized

by degraded forest, woodland, bush clumps, thicket and that is where game – ranching related farming thrive with a competitive advantage in game-related tourism. A strong footprint of game lodges are well established in the Waterberg municipal jurisdictions mass beef and game production.

Threats to this aspect of the land include erratic rainfall and high input costs. This is evident in the number of fields that have been cleared of bush but that are only covered in grass or encroaching bush at the moment. A component of the high input cost is land value that is skewed at present through aspects such as land restitution, increased urban, mining development and foreign land ownerships. The bottom line is that with the increased costs (costs of inputs, cost of land etc.) and environmental risks (erratic rainfall, soil degradation, bush encroachment) economically viable crop production options are diminishing rapidly. Crops such as cotton, tobacco, maize and sorghum have been badly affected by low international prices and over production and plantings have been reduced significantly, often with negative financial and employment implications. Alternative crops like sunflower, wheat, soya beans, groundnuts and paprika are all internationally traded commodities and thus sensitive to the rand/dollar exchange rate.

MINING CLUSTERS OF THE WATERBERG DISTRICT

Coal Mining and the Petrochemical Cluster at Lephalale

More proposals are being developed to expand the existing Grootegeeluk Coal Mine to the Botswana Borders and also to build an aromatics extraction factory, which will form the core of this cluster. The factory will be fed with chemical grade coal from Grootegeeluk Mine. A wide range of down-stream opportunities exists in the styrofoam, plastic, nylon and rubber product industries. A memorandum of understanding for the compilation of a feasibility study has been signed between Grootegeeluk Mine and Limpopo Province. Public sector interventions include approval for the expansion of the existing power station, water source development, education and skills development with specific reference to the chemical industry, and a rail link to Richards Bay in the long term. The existing and proposed future developments pertaining to the Coal and Petrochemical Cluster are both prioritized Provincial economic strategic goals. The existing Power Stations Matimba and Medupi collectively consume about 80 million tons of coal per year. With an opencast mining resource of 12.5 billion tons, these power stations can be sustained for 156 years. Various studies indicated that the Waterberg coal is among the most liquefiable in the world. A feasibility study for a coal to liquid process in the Waterberg has been concluded by Sasol. Coal Mining in Lephalale municipal jurisdiction is an economic value chain that is used to generate electricity in industries such as Eskom and the manufacturing of Petrochemical industrial products. The existing Grootegeeluk Coal Mine of the exxaro mining company and the power stations of Medupi and Matimba result to high atmospheric emissions of air pollutants. Coal is exploited from the Waterberg coalfields at Grootegeeluk Coal Mine (Kumba Resources). This colliery was developed in mid 1970s. Increased production in coal mines within Lephalale local municipality result to increase of pollution and environmental degradation.

The Waterberg Coalfield appears to be the replacement for the Mpumalanga coalfields. However, the Waterberg Coalfield is located away from major markets. In trying to solve the transportation problem a combined task team was established to consider at a new railway line linking the Waterberg area to Middleburg, which would allow Grootegeeluk to rail coal over a much shorter route. Kumba and Exxaro Resources estimates that coal output from the Waterberg coalfields could double to about 120 Mt/year as part of the investment in additional power generation. Availability of good infrastructure in the district will enhance the potential for the Waterberg to become a significant mining and industrial center in South Africa. The coalfield is also a promising area for coal bed methane extraction for future energy hub, as well as coal to liquid process produce as per study that was concluded by Sasol; the study evidently presented emissions of more hazardous pollutants that can be harmful to living ecosystems, natural environment, and human health holistically.

Platinum Group Metals Mining Cluster

There are currently four operating platinum mines in the Waterberg district which include the Union and Amandebult sections of the Rustenburg Platinum mine, Potgietersrus Platinum and Northam Platinum mine. The Union Section, Amandebult Section and Northam Mine exploit the Merensky Reef and the UG 2 Chromitite while Potgietersrus Platinum is currently the only mine exploiting the Platreef. Potgietersrus Platinum by Anglo-American is currently operating 3 / three open pits: the Sandsloot, Zwartfontein south pits and the Zwartfontein north. The

largest producer of refined platinum in Waterberg district municipality is the Amandelbult mine in Thabazimbi, followed by Union Section, Northam Platinum and Potgietersrus Platinum respectively. Union Section is located just across the boundary from Amandelbult (Thabazimbi) and is situated in Northwest Province. At Amandelbult Section there was an increase in the refined platinum ounces produced since year 2000. Within the Northam area reserves measured at 12.7 M oz with resource base of 17.4 M oz, Northam Platinum Mine also recorded a production of refined platinum from 202459 oz to approximately 340 000 oz of platinum, palladium, rhodium and gold (3 PGE + Au) from the Merensky Reef and the UG 2 Chromitite. Potgietersrus Platinum is the only operating mine in the northern limb exploiting the Platreef. It produces about 200 100 ounces of refined platinum from two pits (Sandsloot and Zwartfontein south pit).

The Waterberg District has the potential to become the major producer of platinum group metals in the world. Export earnings are forecast to increase from 3 378 million US dollars in 2003 to 5 127 million US dollars in 2008 and to more lucrative high estimates in future years (SAIM, 2003/2004). The planned expansions and opening of new platinum mines (particularly in the Mokopane area) will lead to an increase in gold, copper, nickel and cobalt production in the Waterberg District. The increase in the platinum group metals prices in recent years has put much pressure on mining and exploration companies to increase their production and consequently, to expand the lifespan of the mines. This has resulted in renewed search for new deposits and an expansion of ore reserves hence new mines such as Ivan Plats in Mokopane reserves were opened. The Bushveld Complex, in particular the northern limb has in the recent years become a major exploration target for the PGE and other elements such as nickel and copper. Companies exploring the Platreef include Platinum Group Metals (Pty) Ltd, Platreef Resources (Pty) Ltd, Anglo Platinum, Eersteling Gold Mining Company, Anoroaq Resources, AfriOre, Pan Palladium, AIM Resources and Ivan Plats Group.

Other potential mining development clusters in the Waterberg Region

Iron Ore waste, the hematite deposits in the Thabazimbi Iron Mines may be processed for its iron content in the future depending on the demand, price and availability of iron deposits in the country. Vast reserves of vanadium bearing, titanomagnetite occur in the Upper Zone of the Bushveld Complex in Thabazimbi area.

Lead occurs along bedding planes in early intergranular spaces in the dolomite of the Lyttelton Formation, in vertical siderite veins, as well as in pod-like bodies of siderite with galena deposited in karst cavities, about 1 500 t of galena has been mined from the deposit on Leeubosch 129 KQ, 16 km north of Thabazimbi in the Malmani dolomites (du Toit, 1998). Occurrences of lead mineralization have been reported from the farms Turflaagte 214 LR, Deugdzaamheid 197 LR, Waterval 443 KQ, Planknek 43 KS and Nooitgedacht 92 KR.

Tin and Nickel in the Waterberg district is produced as a by-product of PGM processing from the Platreef and the Merensky Reef. Hydrothermal nickel occurrence is reported from Blaauwbank 515 KQ about 6 km to the east of the main workings of the Rooiberg Tin mines (Hammerbeck and Schürmann, 1998). Tin deposits occur associated with the acid phase of the Bushveld Complex. The Zaaipplaats tin deposits are located some 35 km northwest of Mokopane. The most important deposits are found on the farms Roodepoort 222 KR, Zaaipplaats 223 KR, Salomon's Tempel 230 KR, Groenfontein 227 KR, Welgelegen 246KR, Doornhoek 342 KR and Stravoren 676 KS. Tin mineralisation occurs in pipe-like roughly cylindrical bodies, flat ventricular bodies and as disseminations. These pipes range in diameter from a few centimetres to 12 m with an average diameter of 1 to 2 m. Pipe-like bodies have a cassiterite content ranging from nil to 70 percent with metallic tin averages 12 to 30 % (Crocker et al., 1976). On the farms Groenvley 224 KR and Appingendam 805 LR cassiterite occur along with molybdenite, arsenopyrite, fluorite, bastnaesite and other rare-earth minerals (Bullen et al, 1995). Values of up to 3.2 % Sn have been recorded on the farm Groenvley 224 KR over a width of 0.91 m. The Sn content of these rocks varies significantly.

Galena also occurs as an accessory mineral associated with the tin mineralisation (i.e. on the farm Groenvley 224 KR and Stavoren 676 KS) hosted in the Bobbejaankop granite of the Bushveld Complex.

Tantalum and niobium are Cassiterite from tin deposits related to the Bushveld Complex contains an average of less than 0.5 % tantalum and niobium (Ollia, 1986).

Tungsten occurrence is reported on the farms Zaaipplaats 223 KR and the Roodepoort 222 KR (Bowles and Hammerbeck, 1998). Scheelite is the major ore bearing body of tungsten in the Waterberg district.

Vanadium deposits are found on the farms Gezond 235 KR, Commandodrift 238 KR, Molendraai 811 LR, Nooitgedacht 11 JQ, Rooipoort 46 KS, Macalacaskop 243 KS, Jaagbaan 291 KR and Mozambique 807 LR. Occurrences are also recorded on the farms Eulalie 186 LR, Deugdzaamheid 197 LR and Klippan 437 LR. These deposits and occurrences generally occur in the titaniferous magnetite seams in the upper portion of the Rustenburg Layered Suite of the Bushveld Complex. Vanadium is found mainly associated with iron and titanium.

Manganese in the Waterberg district occurrences of manganese are reported on the farms Frischgewaagd 445 KR, De Nyl Zyn Oog 423 KR, Tweefontein 463 KR and Cyferfontein 457 KR (Hammerbeck, 1976). These deposits are either small or poor quality that even small-scale mining is uneconomic. At the Thabazimbi iron mine manganese ore assaying up to 57 % Mn occurs (Astrup and Tsikos, 1998). According to Astrup and Tsikos (1998) the ore is of good quality, but mining presents serious difficulties because of the treacherous nature of the ground.

Chrome occurs in seams in the Critical and Lower Zones of the Waterberg Complex within Mogalakwena in high deposits and Bela-Bela in low deposits. It was extracted from the Bushveld Complex rocks south of Mokopane on the farm Grasvalley. Depending on the price, demand and supply for chrome, the Grasvalley deposit represents a potential resource for exploitation. **Chromite** On the farm Zwartfontein 818 LR north-northwest of Mokopane, three chromitite layers are present in the plagioclase bearing rocks (Schürmann et al., 1998). Two other chromitite layers of no economic importance crop out on the farm Vaalkop 819 LR (van der Merwe, 1978). In the Mokopane area chromitite was discovered in the early sixties on the farms Grassvalley 293 KR and Zoetveld 294 KR about 17 km south-southwest of Mokopane (Coetzee and Coetzee, 1976). The composition for this ore ranges from 42-45 percent Cr_2O_3 , 14 -15 percent FeO, 6-9 percent SiO_2 and a Cr/Fe ratio of 2.4 to 2.7 (Coetzee and Coetzee, 1976). This ore was superior in grade to any other chromitite mined in the Bushveld Complex at that time (Hulbert and Von Gruenewaldt, 1986). This deposit was exploited by Grasvalley chrome mine owned by SAMANCOR. However, the area is structurally complex.

Dimension stone are large variety of rocks with a potential to be used as dimension stone occur in the Waterberg district municipality within Mogalakwena, Modimolle, Mookgophong areas. The stone incorporates all naturally occurring rock material cut, shaped or selected for use in blocks, slabs, sheets or other construction units of specific shape or size, and employed for exterior or interior parts of buildings, foundations, kerbing, paving, flagging or for other architectural or engineering purposes (Stone in Southern Africa, 1999). The dimension stone quarried from the Bushveld Complex is in strong demand on the world market and dominates export sales, owing to high quality, competitive prices and reliability of supply. Lack of good road and rail infrastructure are major limiting factors in the development of the dimension stone industry in the district. Processing of the material should also be done in the vicinity of quarrying in order to reduce transportation costs, thereby increasing income from such operations. Waste produced from these operations can be used as aggregate for construction.

Limestone occurs in the Transvaal Supergroup and this can be exploited and used for cement production and/ or for agricultural purposes. Rocks of the Frisco Formation that forms the footwall rock to the Bushveld Complex on the farm Vaalkop 819 LR are a potential source of limestone (Martini, 1987). The main limestone deposit in the Waterberg district is located 9 km north-northeast of Mokopane on the farm Uitloop 3 KS (Martini and Wilson, 1998). This deposit was exploited in the past but production ceased.

Rough Granite is produced from the Bushveld Complex by Africa Red Granite Quarries, Red Stone Mining and Bestaf Granite (Pty) Ltd and Marlin Granite (Pty) Ltd. Bushveld Granite is exploited on the farm Klipplaatdrift 787 LR and Leyden 804 LR by Lebowa Granite (Pty)/Bestaf Granite (Pty) Ltd in Mookgophong area. This sector employs more than 250 people. Limestone is currently exploited on the farms Calais 563 KS, Malgas 154 KS, Singapore 585 KS and Syferfontein 608 KR by Leo Limestone, Inca mining and Syferfontein calcite (Pty) Ltd respectively within the Mookgophong area. Currently, the Syferfontein deposit is exploited by Syferfontein calcite (Pty) Ltd. Syferfontein calcite (Pty) Ltd ever since year 2000. Zwartkop is the only mine currently exploiting chrome in the Waterberg district municipality on the farm Zwartkop 369 KQ in Bela-Bela area.

Clay deposits are more concentrated in the floodplains of Modimolle area. Kaolin deposits occur on the farm Rooibosbaak 107 KS, approximately 20 km northeast of Zebediela railway station (Horn and Strydom, 1998) and also on Weenen 40 KS. The Weenen deposit is exploited by Weenen and Nylstene Brickyard for brick making. Refractory plastic or fire clay occurrence has been reported from Cyferfontein 457 KR south of Modimolle. Other benefits of clay is manufacturing of beauty products.

Diamonds deposits occur on the Bela-Bela farms of Palmietgat 34 JR, Oaks 153 MR and Zuurverdiend 167 KP. The deposit at Palmietgat 34 JR is exploited by Palmietgat mine and the Oaks mine (De Beers Mine Group) is exploiting by the Oaks deposit. The Oaks mine established in 1998 is located about 20 km from Swartwater. The Oaks kimberlite pipe is approximately one hectare in size. This is a group L type kimberlite, which was intruded into the quartzo-feldspathic and amphibolite gneisses of the Limpopo belt. The current reserves at the Oaks mine will be depleted in 2008. The kimberlite ore body has inferred resource of 3.7 million tons and reserve of 2.1 million tons to a mining depth of 110 m. The Zuurverdiend 167 KP diamond deposit was never exploited till to date. The Oaks Diamond Mine has with production 100 123 carats from treating 312 kt of ore at 32.1 carats/100 tons since 2003. On Grootfontein 352 KQ andalusite mining began in 1977 by Weedon's Minerals (Pty) Ltd (Oosterhuis, 1998). Anglovaal Ltd acquired this company in 1991 and the name was changed to Rhino Andalusite mines. It is the largest andalusite producer in South Africa. Andalusite Resources (Pty) Ltd a subsidiary of African Mineral, Trading and Exploration (Pty) Ltd produces andalusite from its operations at Maroelesfontein 366 KQ in Waterberg.

Andalusite is well developed near Thabazimbi in the Timeball Hill Formation shale of the Transvaal Supergroup (Blain et al., 1976). Deposits of andalusite occur on the farms Buffelsfontein 353 KQ, Rooywal 441 KQ, Grootfontein 352 KQ and Rhenosterkloof 483 KQ, with occurrences reported on Buffelshoek 351 KQ, Roodedam 368 KP and Weltevreden 478 KQ. On the farm Grootfontein 352 KQ, andalusite occurs as medium grained porphyroblasts, 0.4 cm in diameter and up to 5 cm in length in weathered hornfels. According to Oostrhuis (1998), the orebody strikes in a northeast-southwest direction with a true thickness of 210 m and a dip of 55 ° to the southeast. On this farm andalusite contains about 54 - 59 wt percent Al_2O_3 , constituting 10 to 13 % of the rock.

Calcite deposits occur in Thabazimbi on the farms Syferfontein 608 KR, Leeuwdoorns 607 KR and Middleplaats 604 KR. The Syferfontein deposit was exploited by Monte Carlo while the Leeuwdoorns 607 KR and Middleplaats 604 KR deposits were never exploited.

Fluorite was exploited northwest of Mookgopong on the farm Buffelsfontein 347 KR by Buffalo Fluorspar mine. This mine was closed in 1994 due to low prices of fluorspar. The dumps are currently being reworked as a source of crushed rock. Fluorspar was mined from acid rocks of the Bushveld Complex in the past, however due to the low price of fluorite the mines have closed. Crocker and Martini (1976) reported ore reserves amounting to 60 million tons at 16 percent CaF_2 . The Vischgat deposit occurs south of Mookgopong on the farm Vischgat 520 KR. Fluorite deposit were also exploited in the Vila Nora segment of the Bushveld Complex on the farm Grobbelaars Hoek 462 LR. Fluorspar was also exploited west of Bela-Bela (Warmbaths) on Zwartkloof 470 KR by the Zwartkloof Fluorspar mine and also on the farm Rhenosterhoekspruit 466 KQ by Rheno Fluorspar mine. The Zwartkloof Fluorspar mine closed due to the low prices of fluorspar and problems in upgrading such low-grade material to acid grade (Crocker and Martini, 1976). An original estimate of the Zwartkloof deposit indicated an ore body of 5 to 7 million tons. Tin and Fluorite mines were operating in the Waterberg district municipality. However, due to low prices for tin and fluorite the mines have closed. The increase in the demand for tin and fluorite can lead to reopening of some of these mines in the future.

Molybdenum occurrence is reported on Groenvlei 224 KR, Hartbeestfontein 62 KS, Appingendam 805 LR and Stravoren 676 KS. Molybdenum is also found associated with **tin deposits** (i.e. at Stravoren 676 KS). Appingendam mine exploited the Groenvlei deposit. The Groenvlei deposit has an estimated reserve of 1 300 t at an average grade of 3 % MoS_2 (Wilson and Cole, 1998). There is currently no molybdenum production in the country.

Cobalt is produced as a by-product from platinum group metals mining in the Merensky Reef, Platreef and the UG 2 Chromitite. This zone carries about 1.5 % cobalt (Hammerbeck and Schürmann, 1998). However these bodies have limited lateral and vertical extent and are of no economic importance (Hammerbeck and Schürmann, 1998).

Copper produced in the Waterberg comes from the Bushveld Complex as a by-product from the Merensky Reef and the Platreef and also associated with the Transvaal Supergroup rocks. Copper in the Bushveld Complex copper occurs associated with both the acid and mafic rocks. Copper occurrences are reported close to the mutual border of Planknek 43 KS and Weenen 40 KS about 10 km east of Mokopane (Wilson, 1998). These occur in the form of malachite, bornite and chalcopyrite associated with galena in the quartz veins within dolomite. Other occurrences are reported on the farms Mauritius 183 MR, Theuniskloof 164 MR, Smirna 188 MR, Klipvley 174 MR, Mietjesfontein 220 MR, Karrieboschdrift 163 MR, Rosendale 221 MR, Slangkop 162 MR, Davidslust 240 MR, Cambridge 242 MR, Dassenburg 75 MR, Bottellang 115 MR, Zeekoevlei 11LR, Reward 435 LR, Glenover 371 LQ and Lngwater 62 KR. On the farm Stavoren 676 KS copper is found associated with tin mineralisation (Wilson, 1998). Disseminated copper sulphides occurrence is reported from the farm Nederland 51 KS 20 km southeast of Mokopane.

Gold is produced as a by-product from platinum mines exploiting the UG 2, Merensky Reef and the Platreef in the Bushveld Complex. In the Transvaal Supergroup gold mineralisation is found associated with the basal conglomerate of the Black reef quartzite formation in the Kaapsehoop area at the base of the Transvaal Supergroup (Ward and Wilson, 1998). Mining for these deposits was not successful because of the limited extends of the conglomerate and erratic distribution of gold with Thabazimbi and Mokopane areas.

Phosphate has been exploited from Glenover 371 LQ, Houndslow 372 LQ and St. Agnesfontein 347 LQ between 1958 to 1983 by Glenover Phosphate Ltd (Wilson, 1998). In the Upper Zone of the Bushveld Complex occurrence of apatite with P_2O_5 content in the magnetite averaging between 5 and 8% is reported on Deugdzaamheid 197 LR, Turflaagte 214 LR, Grootwater 436 LR and Klippan 437 LR (Wilson, 1998). A resource of 25 Mt has been established to a vertical depth of 100 m on the farm Turflaagte (Grobler and Whitefield, 1969).

Mining and Environmental Management Plans



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Environmental Management Plans (EMPs) and Environmental Management Programme Reports (EMPRs) in mining developments must be prioritised and implemented by the mining industries and energy generation industries such as Eskom. South African mining industries are based on the Minerals Act 50 of 1991. The Act focuses mainly on mining management and the regulation of existing mines. It deals with issues such as authorization and utilization of minerals, industrial development policy, trade and finance; however the Act does not address issues of environmental management.

The EMPs and EMPRs ensure that the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA) principles are adhered to and incorporated in policies and practice rather than the Act. To plan for and manage environmental impacts of mining, all new mines must submit an Environmental Management Plan in order to acquire a mining license. An EMP must describe the management of the 'cradle to grave' environmental impact of the mine and is authorized by the Department of Minerals and Energy. The EMPs compiled and implemented by South African mining companies (self-regulatory system) comply with the International Organization Standards (ISO14001). EMPs are submitted to the Department of Mineral and Energy to assess the criteria whether they meet criteria. However, these programmes do not make adequate provision for the community and monitoring environmental pollution.

Lack of awareness of environmental issues among the communities that are affected by mining operations need to gain an understanding of how their lives are impacted; for an example the release of polluted effluent to a local watercourse creates a serious danger of polluted water which affects people, fish and micro-organisms. The effects of cyanide poisoning on human, animals and other living organisms should be explained in plain language to community leaders so as to conduct and assess environmental audits. The communities must be included as prioritised affected stakeholders during the development of mining rehabilitation plans which comprise of an Environmental Impact Assessment, air pollution control plan and water pollution control plan in conjunction with municipal institutes.

AIR QUALITY AND CLIMATE CHANGE

State of Air: Air Quality

The Waterberg-Bojanala Air Priority Area was declared on 15 June 2012 by the minister of Environmental affairs in response to the potential risk to ambient air quality due to the proposed expansion plans. The presence of the Lephalale Coal Fields and the Medupi Power Station affects all 5 Local Municipalities of the Waterberg District as all the municipalities are impacted by air pollution sources due to cross boundary pollution that also impact Bojanala District. The sources of pollution include power generation, mining, industrial emissions, domestic fuel burning, vehicle emissions, agricultural activities, biomass burning, waste treatment & disposal, and dust from various sources. The Air Quality Management Plan for Waterberg DM (June 2009) provided an emissions inventory with the main air pollution sources listed above, however the WDM AQMP plan is outdated as it was developed in 2009 – the plan will be redeveloped by the district when funding is available from environmental sector departments. **The 2009 AQMP** listed the following sources as more eminent in the Waterberg region and the air pollutants sources are increasingly growing due to increasing industrial activities in municipalities over the years. In Waterberg, the air quality hot spots are Lephalale, Mogalakwena and Thabazimbi due to intensive and extensive mining / industrial activities in the areas with less conservation zones for carbon control basins.

The Air Quality Management Plan for Waterberg DM (June 2009) provided an emissions inventory with the main air pollution sources related to mining identified as:

- Power generation, with Matimba Power Station the main source of SO₂ emissions in Lephalale municipality and with the new Medupi Power Station just west of Lephalale also anticipated to becoming a significant source of sulphur dioxide emissions, and with power generation the main contributing source of the Waterberg's SO₂ and NO₂ emissions, contributing 95% and 93% respectively; and
- Mining in general, with this relating to fugitive dust emissions from mining activities. Additional air quality issues come from:
 - Industrial emissions, mainly from small boiler sources and brickworks, contributing to PM₁₀ and SO₂ concentrations;
 - Domestic fuel burning, mainly coal and paraffin burning in informal settlements;
 - Vehicle emissions from petrol and diesel vehicles along the major roads and the N1 highway with this, however, not considered to be a significant pollution source in this district;
 - Agricultural activities which, although not quantified, are considered to be a considerable source of ambient particulate concentrations;

- Biomass burning, with this also not quantified as this is irregular and seasonal, but adds to the ambient particulate concentration load;
- Waste treatment and disposal, and with incineration occurring on a small scale in hospitals; and
- Wind erosion of exposed areas, also not quantified, and allied to agricultural activities where fields are bare for certain periods between crops.

There is a desperate need for clarity on what the government's long term plans are in respect to the further development of the Waterberg Mining Zones with Coal Fields, especially in relation to electricity generation and potential liquid effluent from coal processing.

Main Threats

Potential significant negative changes in the air quality of the district and the Lephalale area in particular, is likely to occur in future due to the development of the Lephalale Coal Field (LCF). Current air pollution sources of concern are:

- ♣ Dust from mines, quarries, brickworks, spoil/overburden heaps and heavy vehicles using gravel roads.
 - ♣ The burning of solid waste at waste disposal sites, informal waste dumps and especially on farms and at tourism facilities in natural areas.
 - ♣ Smoke from vehicles especially heavy vehicles that drive through towns. Relevant to the WDM is the operation of the existing Matimba Power Station, and the construction and operation of the Medupi Power Station near Lephalale. Emissions of SO₂, NO_x and particulate matter from Medupi will add to the current baseline concentrations on a regional scale.
- In addition, with an increase in emissions associated with the development and the inevitable urbanization, i.e. motor vehicles and domestic fuel burning, there is a potential for exceedances of health-based ambient air quality standards to occur and a risk to human and environmental health. The greatest potential threat to ambient air quality exists in the WDM through the planned expansion of energy-based projects and coal mining in the district and in Botswana. The planned development poses a threat to human and environmental health in the region and it poses challenges for air quality management in the region. The greatest potential threat to ambient air quality exists in the WDM through the planned expansion of energy-based projects and coal mining in the district and in Botswana. The planned development poses a threat to human and environmental health in the region and it poses challenges for air quality management in the region.

The Lephalale Municipality has been identified as the air quality hot spot, under the declaration of the Waterberg-Bojanala Air Quality Priority Area by the National Department of Environment. Air quality legislation comprises primary standards which protect human health and secondary standards which protect properties, vegetation, climate and aesthetic values. Air quality management by-laws should be developed for non-compliance to the air quality standards. The development of industries that increase air pollution through emission of gases in the atmosphere should be managed through Atmospheric Emission Licensing processes. An air quality plan for the municipality should be developed in order to manage air pollution and environmental degradation.

The environmental features that are found in the municipal area are affected by natural environmental challenges inter alia, ozone depletion, global warming, solid and hazardous wastes, the endangerment of biological diversity and land degradation. Environmental degradation in the form of soil erosion, overgrazing, deforestation, over exploitation and habitat destruction should be prevented. There should be capacity in terms of human resources for the execution of related environmental duties.

Climate Change Impact

All local municipalities of the Waterberg district will need to plan and implement more for climate change impacts. The burden on municipalities will grow because of the expected increases in natural disasters, water scarcity and disease, and reduced agricultural production and food security. Some municipalities will be more sensitive to these changes than others, and many municipalities may lack the adaptive capacity because of existing developmental challenges, such as low incomes, weak institutions, low levels of education and primary health care, lack of markets and infrastructure and already-degraded ecosystems.

Rural communities and local municipalities will need to find appropriate and efficient ways of developing resilience to climate change through adaptation measures. These measures will need to be supported at a systemic level, including through intergovernmental finance mechanisms. It can be a result of both anthropogenic factors and natural factors, because human beings burn fossil fuels to heat their homes, run their cars, produce electricity, and manufacture all sorts of products, this adds more greenhouse gases to the atmosphere. By increasing the amount of these gases, the warming capability of the natural greenhouse effect has been enhanced. It is the human-induced enhanced greenhouse effect that causes environmental concern, because it has the potential to warm the planet at a rate that has never been experienced in human history.

Environmental Challenges

The potential risks that can be highlighted include:

- Increasing rate Deforestation and Veld fires
- Bush Encroachment
- Urban Sprawl and increasing informality
- Increase in Alien Invasive Plants invasion
- Soil Erosion and Wind Erosion
- Poor Management of landfill sites and illegal dumping in green open spaces
- Inadequate sanitation systems (sewer spillages into the Natural Environment)
- Pollution of Water, Land and Air.
- Land Degradation and Overgrazing.
- Animal and Plant Poaching.
- Chemical spills and/ or other hazardous accidents.
- Poor Management: Air Quality, Water Quality and Land Quality due to lack of budget and functional governance system.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

CLIMATE CHANGE

WATERBERG VULNERABILITY AND RISK ASSESSMENT:

- Hot/Semi-Arid climate with Extreme Hot Temperatures:
- Severe Drought, Decrease of Underground Water and Wild Veld Fires
- Surface-water Evaporation (e.g. rivers).
- Heat-wave result to Death of Animals & Humans
- Increase of Summer Rainfalls:
- Floods, Biodiversity Loss, Water Pollution and Disease Outbreaks
- Extreme Cold Weathers:
- Loss of Agricultural Crops and Animals

GOOD GOVERNANCE:

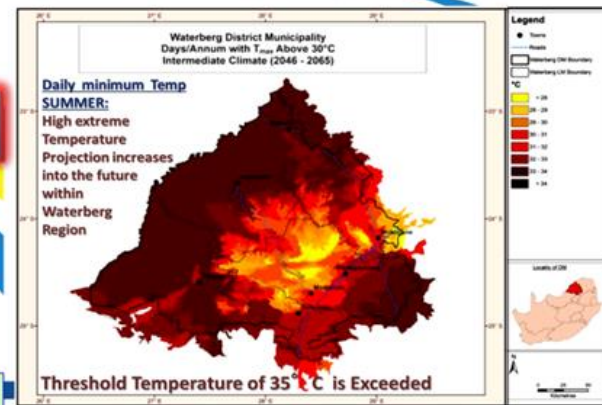
- Reporting & Mainstreaming:
- WDM Climate Change Strategy

MINES & QUARRIES without processing facilities and activities are Regulated through DUST MANAGEMENT COMPLIANCE Process.

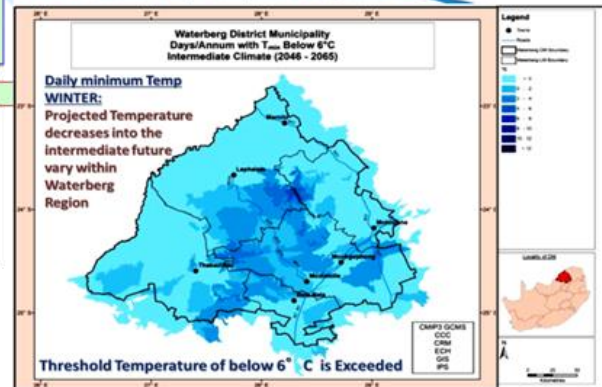
WDM DISASTER MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORK & PLAN: Address Identified DISASTER Risks

- DFFE & DALRRD will assist WDM in Implementation of the Strategy
- Atmospheric Emission Licensing Process for Industries and Mines:
- Will regulate compliance and help with reduction of air pollution
- Municipal Health Services Monitors Disease Outbreaks
- Monitoring of Water Quality through LAB Tests

CLIMATE CHANGE Map – Temperature Projections: 2046 to 2065



CLIMATE CHANGE Map – Temperature Projections: 2046 to 2065



13. SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

Sustainable development is required to ensure the integration of social, economic and environmental factors in decision-making so that development serves present and future generations. Furthermore, sustainable development requires that a risk-averse and cautious approach be applied to decision-making.

The Waterberg District and all the 5 Local Municipalities of the Waterberg District has an environmental function to execute and ensure that the fundamental environmental rights of the community as enshrined in the constitution are realized. The fundamental rights as stated in the constitution are:-

- ❖ To prevent pollution and ecological degradation.
- ❖ To promote conservation.
- ❖ To secure ecologically sustainable development and use of the natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.

The Waterberg District Municipality has sensitive and conservation worthy areas within its jurisdiction, such as the wetlands, river systems, cultural sites, rare and endangered species and part of the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve. There are also many areas that require remedial attention. i.e. the eradication of alien vegetation, soil erosion control and aspects that require special management, such as pollution control and land use management. The Municipality has the capacity to perform duties that enhance sound environmental management practices which include EIA related issues.

Parks and Open Space Management

Open spaces are recognized as a critical and fundamental element to building of **climate resilient communities and sense of place in human settlements**. Open spaces with both social and ecological functions are perceived as infrastructure equal to roads, water, electricity and the other traditional municipal services that have long taken precedence over open spaces. The critical relationship between people and ecological systems creates sustainability and climate resilient settlements with dependence on ecosystem services. The National Development Plan (NDP 2015) requires authorities to scale-up and provide open space ecological infrastructure on par with typical municipal infrastructure funded under Municipal Infrastructure Grant Fund (MIG), to ensure balanced ecological and urban systems.

Open spaces must be granted a **status of urban land use** equal to any other ‘typical’ urban function. The term 'Open Space' covers green space consisting of any vegetated land or landform, water or geological feature in an urban area and most cities also include civic space consisting of squares, market places and other paved or hard landscaped areas with a dominant civic function. Natural open spaces include ridges, watercourses, wetlands, dams, conservation areas, play parks, as well as sports and recreation and utility areas including sports areas, city entrances, streets, traffic islands, squares, boulevards, parking areas, infrastructure servitudes, cemeteries and many more. It is important that urban functions, facilities and infrastructure be designed in consideration of **open spaces and reserves of biodiversity** for creation of a diverse planning, ecological resilience and climate resiliency of **open space network**.

Natural open spaces will be considered separate from parks areas but be integrated with a social function. although the two may intersect and overlap, the absolute size provision must be calculated separately, for an example social spaces must ideally be provided at a ratio of 2ha (or more) per 1000 people in addition to the natural open spaces that is required for ecological functioning, even if the two spaces overlap. The design process needs to consider both the impact of infrastructure development on biodiversity, and the potential benefits or services that are derived from a functioning ecosystem through careful planning or formulation of (SDFs) Spatial Development Frameworks that will prohibit encroachment on sensitive natural environmental features such as wetlands, rivers, floodplains and many more. Open Spaces may be utilized as **environmental stormwater management infrastructure** in order to maintain and optimize the existing linear infrastructure services, in order to avoid progressive degradation of built infrastructure and ecological ecosystems. By implication, urban design through SDFs must provide adequate buffer areas as well as design and management strategies for open spaces that accommodates urban impacts and that provides protection of natural ecosystems from urban effluents by-products discharge (such as untreated wastewater effluent, hazardous oil substances and many more) from entering sensitive environments as such as rivers, wetlands, floodplains. Open space has long been recognized as a key building block of inclusive communities by functioning as a place that purifies water, harbors plant and animal life, cleans the air, and regulates weather and climate. This life-giving function of open space is the most threatened by urban development and spatial fragmentation. Open space **key benefits that provide** quality of life ranging from social, health, environmental and economic benefits.

Social Benefits: Open spaces provide a range of social benefits that are increasingly being recognized as important drivers in shaping future communities. Open space connects and builds strong communities by providing opportunities for local people to interact for a range of leisure, cultural and other activities leading to enhanced social cohesion and inclusion.

Health Benefits: Access to open spaces encourages physical activity that in turn enhances physical and mental well-being, enhances children’s development and well-being, reduces the risk of chronic diseases such as diabetes, obesity and many more.

Environmental Benefits: Natural open spaces provide protection of biodiversity, cultural heritage value; and regulates climatic extremes, land pollution, stormwater management and air pollution control.

Economic Benefits: Recreation activities, food garden services, tourism attraction points and many significant sources of employment for communities.

TABLE 42: CLIMATE RISKS, VULNERABILITIES AND ADAPTATION

KEY INDICATOR	CLIMATE CHANGE PROJECTIONS	RISKS, VULNERABILITIES AND ADAPTATION OPTIONS	RISK POTENTIAL
WATER VULNERABILITY			
ANNUAL RAINFALL AND PROJECTED CHANGES	Projections from a suite of CMIP5 climate models show slight reductions in MAP into the immediate future of the 2030s, generally of around 10-20 mm, but up to 20-30 mm in the southeast which translates into reductions of 2-4%	A projected reduction of 10-20 mm per annum, equivalent to a 2-4% reduction in annual rainfall may not appear very significant, but can translate into a ~ streamflow reduction of 4-10%. However, this projected reduction has to be seen in light of simultaneous increases in temperature and with that increases in crop irrigation water demand, a reduction in soil water content and in dam storage. All sectors are considered to be “losers”. Adaptations will be primarily in the conversion of reduced annual rainfalls to reduced annual runoffs which imply • Judicious water usage and general water savings, • household tanks being installed, • more frequent water rationing • leakage control • more drought resistant crop varieties being grown • careful irrigation scheduling and • more judicious environmental flow controls.	Low
STREAMFLOW CHANGES	Major % flow decreases of up to 40% appear in the north of the Waterberg DM in dry years while equally major % increases are shown in the Limpopo valley in wet years	The main risks in the WDM are the generally low streamflow, their episodic nature and the high CVs which, in combination, pose a major threat to local surface water resources and their management, and in particular in low flow years. The major adaptations will involve water suppliers at all levels of government, including more frequent water rationing.	High
SEASONAL RAINFALL	Relatively benign projected changes in seasonal	At risk are both dryland farmers and irrigators growing summer	

CHANGES	rainfall, the most important impacts are likely to be the anticipated slight increase and concentration of summer rainfall, with summer being the main rain season, but probably more important the decrease in autumn rainfall with a dry winter awaiting the DM.	crops planted in spring – dryland farmers because reductions in rainfall in association with higher temperatures imply reduced soil water availability and more plant stress days and irrigators because of an increase in the number of irrigation applications necessary for optimum growth. The adaptations listed under projected changes in MAP apply equally to projected seasonal changes, only more severely,	Low
FROST OCCURRENCE	Frost is a major constraint in the Waterberg DM, especially in the central highlands, with up to 30- 40 frost days there, but with very few frost occurrences along the northwest and northeast borders of the DM. Severe frost, when minima reach below -2°C, are experienced much less frequently. Projected to the intermediate future of the 2050s the projections are for significant reductions in frost occurrences throughout, including the central highlands, with severe frosts a very rare occurrence	Where to grow cold sensitive vegetable and fruit varieties will be an important adaptation to make agriculturally. However, incidences of more pests and crop/animal diseases may increase. Night-time energy demand will decrease, as will the reduced use of firewood resources among poorer rural communities.	High
POTENTIAL EVAPORATION	Climate projections with CMIP5 GCMs from the present into the immediate future of the 2030s show increases from ~ 95 to ~ 110 mm over most of the DM this translating to a percentage increase of around 5.5% spells, especially in the northwest, the northeast and	All water resource suppliers will have reduced water available from the increased evaporation. In most of the DM evaporation losses from dams are already very high. The water sector cannot really apply adaptation measures to counter enhanced evaporation apply adaptation measures to their practices and their management choices. It also places pressure on farmers.	Medium

	the south of the DM. Additionally, the longer the duration the more the entire DM		
GROUNDWATER RECHARGE	Virtually no change projected across DM in dry years. Mean annual recharge into the immediate future, shows decreases from 4-10 mm, with the central highlands displaying gains, while this pattern is strengthened for 1:10 year high groundwater recharge, with two thirds of the WDM displaying marked decreases of > 10 mm except again in the central highlands where equally significant increases are shown	Projected changes are important because recharge feeds base flows, especially dry season flows in areas where streams are episodic or ephemeral. In this regard the exceptionally high CVs of recharge compared with those of streamflow show a further amplification that any change in climate may have on an “invisible” underground resource such as groundwater. Adaptation to projected changes in groundwater recharge is complex as it is an invisible resource which responds slowly and where repercussions may be felt only years after recharge events, be they positive or negative, take place. Planners will therefore have to be exceptionally vigilant when any groundwater related development takes place	Low
AGRICULTURE VULNERABILITY			
CHANGE IN OVERALL ABOVE-GROUND PRIMARY PRODUCTION (ROSENZWEIG EQUATION)	Into the immediate future of the 2030s with relatively little change in rainfall together with increases in temperatures, an enhancement of primary production, and thus agricultural potential of climatically robust crops, is projected. This ranges from a ratio of 1.2, i.e. 20%, to 1.4, i.e. 40%	Potentially positive impact; Potentially higher crop, and grazing yields. Based on seasonal growth characteristics of natural vegetation. For robust crops outlook is good; for heat sensitive crops cannot necessarily presume high productivity	Medium
IRRIGATION WATER REQUIREMENTS	Mean annual net irrigation water requirements vary across the DM. Into the future of the 20130s, net irrigation water requirements	Risks in the irrigation sector is the availability of water (river run-off or from dams), irrigation return flows and leachates likely to be of poorer quality, pressure by the irrigation sector for more	

	increase, varying from 6-7.5% in a median year and 4-7% in a dry year.	licenses to irrigate. Risks in the irrigation sector is the availability of water (river run-off or from dams), irrigation return flows and leachates likely to be of poorer quality, pressure by the irrigation sector for more licenses to irrigate	Low
ACCUMULATED HEAT UNITS	The projected increases in heat units have major on-farm repercussions ranging from changes in growth rates, shortening of heat unit dependent phenological periods for certain crops, increases in the number of life cycles per year of certain pests and diseases, or changes in yields. Into the intermediate future – a ratio changes of 1.28-1.32, or 28-32% is projected. It is especially the cooler central highlands which display the well-known higher sensitivity of temperature parameters to climate change in cooler areas	The increase in heat units holds a positive response for farmers due to increased growth rates, shortening of heat unit dependent phenological periods and the potential increase in the number of life cycles a year. Livestock and game farmers will have to adapt to reduced production and conception rates by the introduction of new and more heat resilient breeds	Medium
POTENTIAL EVAPORATION	Soils dry out rapidly after rain resulting in crop stress, and irrigation water demands within the DM are already high. On the other hand, where and if soils are moist, crops grow very quickly. The significant additional potential evaporative losses under projected future climates do not bode well for irrigators, be they abstracting water from dams or from run-of-river.	Under historical climatic conditions (1950-1999) mean annual A-pan equivalent potential evaporation ranges from 1 700 mm in the central highlands to around 2 100 mm in the Limpopo valley. Climate projections with CMIP5 GCMs from the present into the immediate future of the 2030s show increases from 95 to 110 mm over most of the DM, this translating to a percentage increase of around 5.5%. Mulching and minimum tillage will reduce soil water evaporation	Medium
MAIZE YIELDS AND PROJECTED CHANGES	Dryland maize projections of yields into the future are mostly positive, albeit small at 0.2 t to	An example of changes in optimum plant dates of maize, derived using the ACRU maize yield model which also captures rainfall	

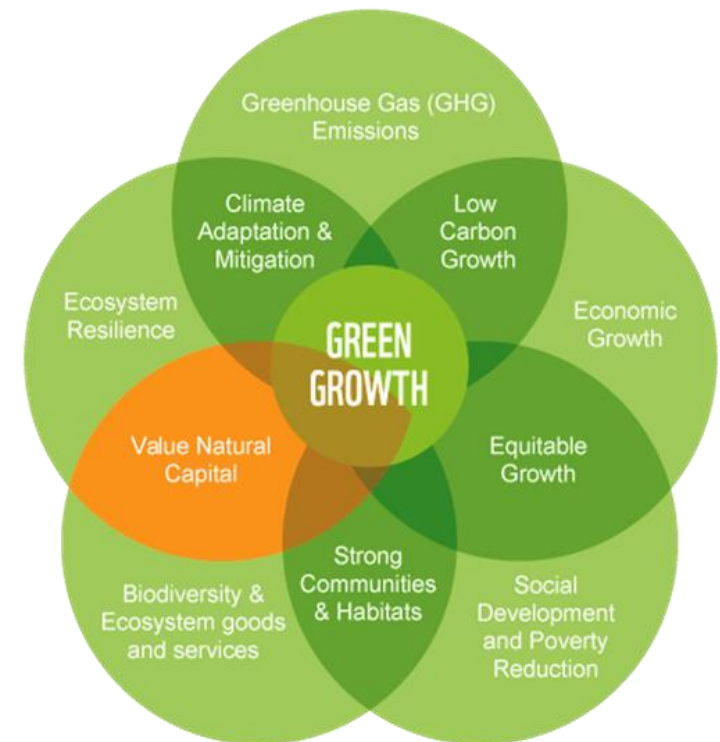
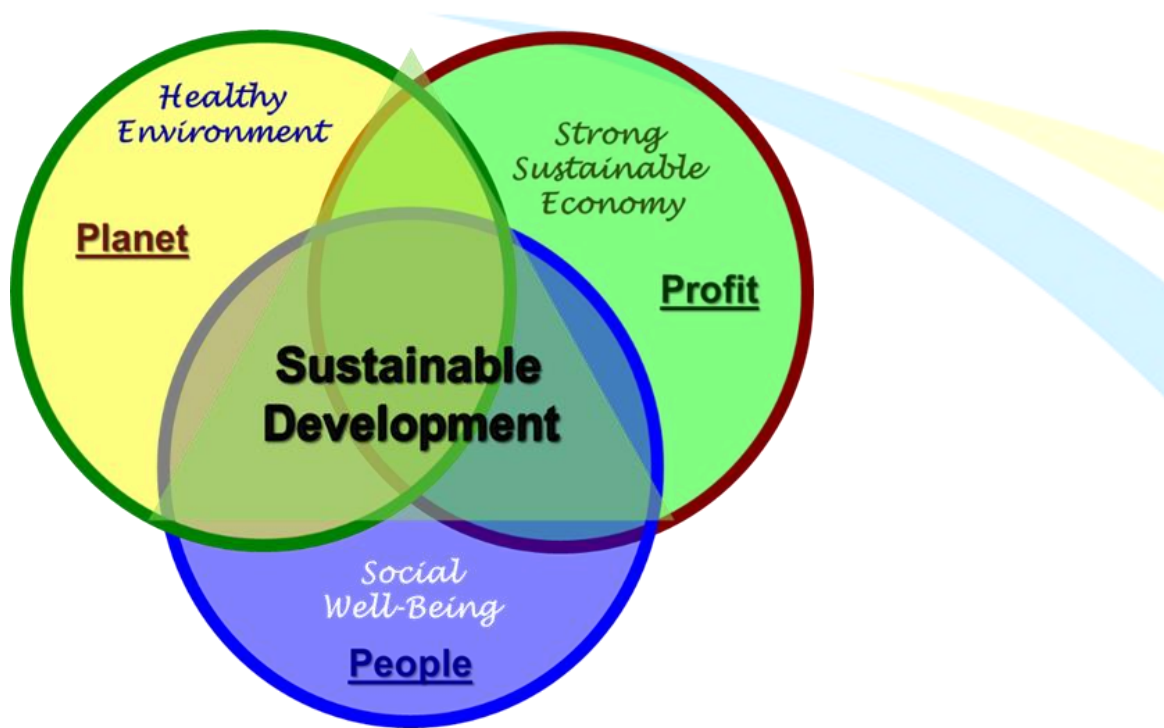
	maximally 1.2 t/ha, with distribution of the gains very patchy. Irrigated maize: in a hotter future in an area already hot the prognosis is for decreases in irrigated yields, mostly of the order of 0.40 t, but in places the projected decreases are up to 1.40 t/ha.	adequacy and soil moisture stress at critical growth stages, shows for the Waterberg DM that a future optimum planting date into the intermediate future is 1-2 weeks later than at present. Critical for farmers to know the optimum conditions (planting and flowering dates) for different varieties of maize. Need to supply sufficient water for irrigation, and need to correct the hybrid or variety of maize to cope with changing conditions; need accurate weather forecasts	Medium
SORGHUM YIELDS AND PROJECTED CHANGES	Into the intermediate future (2050s) the projected sorghum yield changes are relatively small, with ~ 85% of the DM showing gains of 0.25 to 1.50 t/ha/season and only ~ 15% of the region projected to losing yields in future, mostly < 0.5 t/ha, with this translating into both gains and losses of up to 40%.	Generally increased yields and good for food security; better chance of adapting though still important to breed more resident grain sorghum varieties	High
SOYBEANS YIELDS AND PROJECTED CHANGES	Dryland soybean yield in the intermediate future are projected to increase, this increase ranging from 0.5 t in the west to > 1.4 t/ha in the central highlands, with these increases equivalent to percentage increases of 25 to more than 65%	Generally increased yields. In SA the adaptation strategies of conservation practices and crop rotation seem to not only counter the impact of climate change, but to positively impact on profitability, with soybeans seen as a very viable alternative to maize when the latter's price decreases	High
CITRUS FRUITS AND PROJECTED CHANGES	Navel oranges: suitable in central highlands – less suitable in future; Valencia oranges: less suitable out of central highlands and more suitable in central highlands of WDM;	Depends on location – changes in suitability between different areas of the WDM which may mean that the crops move to different areas to adapt; different cultivars; will probably require irrigation. Shade nets and additional transport costs and energy costs re: storage temperatures	Low

	Grapefruit: gains in the central highlands and south which are currently not very suitable for grapefruit; Lemons: projected suitability gains in the northeast of WDM		
CATTLE AND HEAT STRESS	The 100 to 200 favourable days/year in the WDM w.r.t. heat stress in cattle are reduced by between 60 and 85 days into intermediate future of the 2050s, while the 80-110 days with “middle-of-the-range” critical conditions under historical conditions also display “middle-of-the-range” uncertainties in the future showing range of projected changes from 35 more critical days in the cool central highlands to 25 fewer critical days in the hot Limpopo valley. The 10-60 very stressful emergency days of the present, however, are projected to increase by an additional 25 to 85 days	Decreased reproductive performance; decreased milk production. Very disconcerting findings with significant reduction in favourable days and significant more critical days in terms of heat stress; also highly stressful to game animals. Careful mitigation measures must be instituted: feeding management, increased water availability; spacing around cows when drinking; housing and facility adjustments; shade availability etc. High levels of management response required	High
GOATS AND HEAT STRESS	Into the warmer future of the 2050s, the favourable days for goats decreases by 65 to 80 days per annum. Projected to have an additional 50 to 70 moderate stress days for goats. Severe stress days for goats are only experienced on between 1 and 20 days per year, but with an additional 2 to 20 severe stress days by the 2050s	Reduction of growth performance, reproductive performance, milk production and animal health and welfare. Effects are likely to be lower in goats’ vs larger ruminants due to small body weight, well developed water retention in the kidney and lower metabolic rates – mohair goats may be more susceptible. Indigenous goats are most adaptive. Some measures such as supplementary feeding, grazing management etc. to be considered	High

BIODIVERSITY AND ENVIRONMENT			
ALIEN INVASIVE PLANTS	Alien Invasive plants (AIPs) have potentially drastic impacts on local and catchment water resources. Currently, AIPs are estimated to reduce yields of dams and rivers by about 1.4% of RSA's MAR; however, AIPs are frequently located in riparian areas so under warmer future conditions and year-round growth, MAR could be reduced considerably more than at present; and they replace prime agricultural land, especially in floodplain areas	Likely to increase growth and vigor; widespread infestations in the south, generally transpire more than natural vegetation and reduce streamflow; can be fire danger, positive side can be source of firewood. Riverine infestations in particular need to be eradicated as soon as possible by the Working for Water initiative as well as by individuals, as infestations could well become denser with a warmer climate and they would then likely impact even more negatively on water resources than at present.	High
LANDSCAPE DEGRADATION	Degraded thicket and bushland in the north; degraded forest and woodland elsewhere but especially in the south-east of WDM.	All sectors are losers, particularly agricultural sector and water sector. Depends on commitment to sound management: grazing management, conservation farming and physical rehabilitation of eroded areas.	High
GROUNDWATER RECHARGE	In the WDM risks associated with reductions in groundwater recharge are highest in the south where the repercussions of projected reductions in groundwater recharge may also have severe ecological implications.	Adaptation to projected changes in groundwater recharge is complex as it is an invisible resource which responds slowly and where repercussions may be felt only years after recharge events, be they positive or negative, take place. Planners will therefore have to be exceptionally vigilant when any groundwater related development takes place.	High
HUMAN HEALTH VULNERABILITIES			
HUMAN DISCOMFORT AND PROJECTED CHANGES	Most significant variables are humidity, wind, and temperature. Comfortable Days: Historical data: < 40 in Limpopo Valley and 140 in central highlands. Projected to the 2050s to reduce	Increased air conditioning costs, more heat-related emergencies, re-look at working hours, uncomfortable living conditions. Thermal discomfort on more days per year; implies more discomfort for livestock; humans can adapt using technology, but	

	comfortable days < 10 in Limpopo Valley and to 80 days in the central highlands Historic data: Uncomfortable Days: 40-60 days in Limpopo valley and about 10 days in central highlands. Projected to increase from 40-100 uncomfortable days in Limpopo valley and from 10-20 days in central highlands	implications for costs, working hours, tourism industry, housing needs and insulation requirements; possible health implications through higher disease risk	High
INCREASED MALNUTRITION AND HUNGER AS A RESULT OF FOOD INSECURITY	Climate Change will affect food systems, compromising food availability, access and utilisation, leading to food insecurity (particularly of subsistence farmers).	This is a real risk. A consolidated effort is required to address this critical vulnerability.	High
DISASTER MANAGEMENT, INFRASTRUCTURE AND HUMAN SETTLEMENT			
EXTREME INFRASTRUCTURE DESIGN RE. RAINFALL EVENTS AND PROJECTED CHANGES	From the 1 to the 2 to the 3-day accumulated design streamflow, there is a visible increase in magnitudes of flow. Between the 10 and the 50 year return periods there is, similarly, an expected increase in design flood	Flood damage, higher insurance; difficult to model extreme events; Should not relax standards or reduce design criteria.	Medium
EXTREME INFRASTRUCTURE DESIGN RE. STREAMFLOW AND PROJECTED CHANGES	From the 1 to 2 to the 3-day accumulated design streamflow there is a visible increase in magnitudes of flow; Between the 10 and the 50 year return periods; there is, similarly, an expected increase in design floods. The larger river systems such as Mokolo flowing northwards, display markedly higher magnitudes of rare flooding. Conventional wisdom would suggest more extreme flooding in	“Extreme” streamflow with high recurrence intervals impact a wide range sectors from water planners at all levels, disaster risk management, all facets of agriculture, the insurance, mining and tourism industries, the transport sector, human settlements. Indications are that the northeast and parts of the central highlands are particularly vulnerable to large floods, and special care should be taken by engineers when designing hydraulic structures there. Extreme events cannot be isolated with great confidence.	Medium

	climate changed future, but projections do not always display this; the 1:50 year projections display more areas of higher extremes than the 1:10 year	Care should therefore be taken for DM engineers not to assume a reduction in design streamflow events, and should NOT to relax present design criteria based on long term historical data. Considerably more research is required into design hydrology under climate change, using outputs from more GCMs	
INCREASE IN FIRE DANGER RATINGS	Historical climatic conditions show favourable conditions in WDM; i.e. small number of days 2.5-10% of days (10-40 days/year) of fire risk, countered by the mean number of very likely fire days in range of 250-350 days per year due to frequent dry atmospheric conditions and high biomass.	Historical climatic conditions show favourable conditions in WDM; i.e. small number of days 2.5-10% of days (10-40 days/year) of fire risk, countered by the mean number of very likely fire days in range of 250-350 days per year due to frequent dry atmospheric conditions and high biomass. The projected increase in the number of very likely days in the fire danger rating index does not bode well into the future, the southwestern interior and the northwestern highlands being the most vulnerable. The many different impacts of fire are tabulated for a wide range of sectors. The population at large and especially disaster management agencies will need to be very vigilant to the dangers of fire under projected future climatic conditions.	High



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

GOOD GOVERNANCE

Green municipality for sustainable development

The Local Municipalities of the Waterberg District partake actively in the Provincial Green Municipality Competition, the LEDET GMC. Green Municipality Competition (GMC) is an environmental program with a broad focus on environmental management, sustainable development and service delivery. GMC has six / 6 core elements which are **waste management, energy efficiency and conservation, biodiversity management and conservation, landscaping and beautification, public participation and community empowerment, leadership and institutional arrangement**. All local municipalities within the jurisdiction of the Waterberg District Municipality has performed consistently in the all the GMC competitions held in the previous years of 2009 to 2019.

Promotion of green developments by developing and implementing environmental municipal sector plans that:

- (i) encourage and enhance of green economy.
- (ii) creates environmental considerations in infrastructural developments.
- (iii) develop tools of community environmental education, environmental awareness and environmental campaigns.
- (iv) improve environmental skills development in communities.
- (v) shape and create full-structured municipal environmental unit / section in municipal organisational structures.
- (vi) conceptualise a strong foundation for environmental compliance for the preservation of municipal environments for future generations within local municipal jurisdictions.
- (vii) creates attraction for green funding and increase green funding.

Integration phase with strategic objectives

The prioritization of environmental skills development and structural building of municipal environmental units / sections for green future building, predominantly is to strengthen the environmental function in municipal administration in order to ensure successful performance of the municipality across all environmental mandate (based on environmental legislation). As well, to also identify gaps that exist within municipalities and make recommendations on improvements. Interventions across all environment sectors will be detailed in each municipal administrative environmental thematic area.

Existing Municipal Environmental Structures



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 43: AVAILABILITY OF ENVIRONMENTAL ORGANISATIONAL STRUCTURE

DM & LMs	AVAILABILITY OF STRUCTURE	NUMBER OF PERSONNEL	MANAGER S	AQO/AQM	WO/WM	B&C	EIA	CC	EO	ENV C&E	EMI
Waterberg DM	Yes Social Services Structure: MHS Structure	3	1	✓	✓	X	✓	✓	X	✓	4
Bela-Bela	Yes Social Services Structure	1	1	X	✓	✓	✓	X	X	X	0
Lephalale	Yes Social Services Structure	4	2	X	✓	✓	✓	✓	X	✓	0
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Yes Social Services Structure	5	2	X	✓	✓	✓	X	X	X	1
Mogalakwena	Yes Social Services Structure	5	2	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	0
Thabazimbi	Yes Social Services Structure	4	2	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	0



Table 1.1 - Number of Personnel available per thematic area in the Waterberg DM

Clearly shows that Waterberg District Municipality has a partial **environmental related structure** under Municipal Health Services section structure. There are three / 3 top Officials appointed and are responsible for environmental related jobs in the district, MHS divisional manager with overseeing role and responsibility of Environmental Health with focus on Waste Management and Air Quality Management as per specified job description. Followed by two / 2 Air Quality Officers that conduct air quality management work in monitoring, inspections, Atmospheric Emission Licenses (AELs) and compliance. In addition; the above top officers conduct ad-hoc work in the functions of environmental impact assessment (EIA) processes and Climate Change. In the district, there is no appointed or designated environmental officer/s responsible for diverse environment sectors or environmental thematic areas. The district also has 4 designated EMIs (Environmental Management Inspectorates) by LEDET and all the 4 EMIs are awarded a Grade 2 status and not Grade 1 status, due to the level of training DFFE conducted for the municipal officials.

All local municipalities of Bela-Bela, Lephalale, Modimolle-Mookgophong, Mogalakwena and Thabazimbi also have environmental related structures under Social Services in different environmental thematic areas, however the environmental related personnel appointed in municipalities is professionally limited and inadequate for implementation of environmental functions in municipalities.

Municipal Environmental Functions and Personnel

The Waterberg District Municipality has no existing Environmental Officer / Manager. The institute rely on Municipal Health Services (MHS) Management in implementation of the district environmental function, and MHS has a very limited content in diverse environment sectors of environmental management and environmental planning. MHS solely rely on EHPs (Environmental Health Practitioners) to implement environmental functions in all 5 locals, and EHPs are academically competent for health management functions which includes waste management (pollution control) function only - under environment sectors.

Only two / 2 local municipalities that strategically created funded positions in environment and also implemented by appointing environmental officers, namely Mogalakwena LM - appointed an environmental planner under municipal spatial planning section and Thabazimbi LM - appointed an environmental officer under Social Services section. The municipal environmental officers as per job description are responsible for overarching environment sectors with functions ranging from waste management, air quality, biodiversity, climate change, environmental impact management and environmental control / compliance.

In three / 3 local municipalities; namely Bela-Bela LM, Modimolle-Mookgophong LM and Lephalale LM mainly depend on Waste Management Officers to implement environmental functions, while the waste officers are only employed by municipalities to be responsible for waste management function only.

In waste management function, all local municipal managements prioritize waste function as it is deemed essential by government and funded directly by Treasury through MIG (Municipal Infrastructure Grant) financial systems. In addition, all local municipalities have a social services structure that has a related environmental function specifically in Parks Management and Recreation with appointed parks managers and parks officers. The section is responsible for green open space management function in local municipalities. The green open space management function aligns perfectly with biodiversity and conservation; however, the existing structure is not well engineered to suite an overall biodiversity and conservation functions in local municipalities.

Recommendation



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Thence DFFE recommends environmental re-engineering of all municipal social services structures, both for the district municipality and for local municipalities; in order to build Environmental Units. This approach of structural re-engineering in environment sectors will maximize new vital job opportunities within local government. Young unemployed environmentalists and future young environmental professionals / graduates will be well accommodated in professional jobs, in the now and in the future.

STATUS QUO OF WASTE MANAGEMENT IN LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES

In all Waterberg District Local Municipalities, waste management is a funded mandate and a major challenge for local municipalities that render the service. Waste challenges in Local Municipalities of the Waterberg District range from:

- Human behaviour patterns that result to people illegally dumping waste, littering and burning general waste in open spaces.
- Waste overflowing in municipal skip bins due to unsystematic collection or no collection of waste by local municipalities.
- Licenced Waste Disposal Facilities that are not complying in accordance with the authorised waste licence conditions.
- About 99,9% of operational Waste Disposal Sites / Landfill Sites in Waterberg Local Municipalities are full to capacity and most of the sites are issued with authorised closure and rehabilitation licence by the Provincial LEDET administration.
- Waste Management is not applied as per National DFFE National Environmental Management Waste Act (NEMWA).
- Waste Minimisation is not prioritised by local municipalities in Waterberg District.
- Budgetary constraints in local municipalities is a great deterrent in implementing recycling processes and establishment of built recycling infrastructure

National Treasury waste management grant is meant for basic waste management services such as general waste collection, purchasing of new waste trucks or maintenance of existing waste trucks, manage daily landfill site processes and mainly for payment of municipal waste personnel salaries. Thence the challenges in the waste management sector within local municipalities.

Waste Minimization and Waste Recycling

The status of waste minimisation and recycling in Waterberg municipalities is very basic, recycling initiatives are more on waste picking and minimization is mainly cleaning of waste illegal dumping areas. Municipalities must work with industry and other stakeholders to extend recycling at municipal level. Municipalities must provide additional bins for separation at source and are responsible for diverting organic waste from landfill and composting it. Municipalities must facilitate local solutions such as Material Recovery Facilities and buy-back centres, rather than providing the entire recycling infrastructure themselves. Capacitation of waste pickers on recyclable materials and entrepreneurial skills in the local municipality is required and very important. Creation of business in waste separation at source, waste classification, waste recycling environment, waste recycling business research and waste recycling business ventures.

Recycling materials require fair compensation, as the buyback centres and other markets pay a very low rate that is not fairly supporting the business livelihoods of the waste pickers. Funding opportunities are greatly needed by waste pickers in local municipalities, in order to support the daily work of waste pickers (with PPE such as bailing machines, trollies, etc.) and create more revenue for small recycling businesses. Waste pickers mainly require assistance to register as small businesses, require assistance on processes of re-zoning and getting land to have storage spaces. Assistance in funding and access to recycling markets is paramount for waste pickers, so as to transform and grow businesses in proper recycling markets.

Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP)



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Municipalities are mandated to designate a waste management officer from their administration to coordinate waste management matters. They must also submit an IWMP plan to the MEC for approval. The IWMP must be integrated to the municipal integrated development plans (IDPs), and the municipal annual performance report must include information on the implementation of the IWMP. Municipalities must also register transporters of waste above certain thresholds on a list of waste transporters. At their discretion, municipalities may set local waste service standards for waste separation, compacting, management and disposal of solid waste, amongst others. Local standards must be aligned with any provincial and national standards where these exist.

The development of an IWMP is a requirement for all government spheres responsible for waste management in terms of the National Environmental Management Waste Act 59 of 2008 for government to properly plan and manage waste.

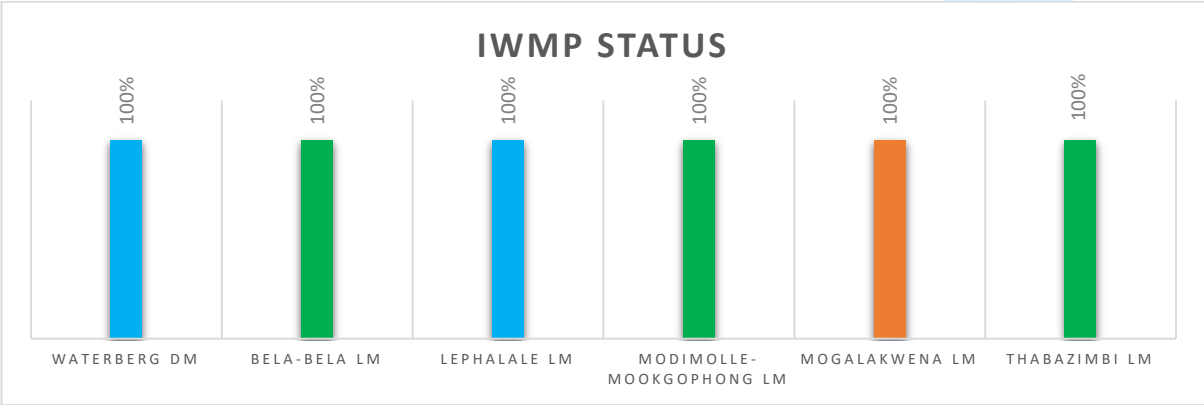


Figure 8 - Status of IWMPs in municipalities

Waterberg District Municipality IWMP is due for review / redevelopment. Lephalale LM IWMP is under review / redevelopment by a municipal appointed service provider. Bela-Bela LM, Modimolle-Mookgophong LM and Thabazimbi LM IWMPs are developed, approved by council and endorsed by LEDET MEC. Mogalakwena LM IWMP is developed and approved by council, now is waiting for LEDET MEC approval.

Waste Management By-Laws



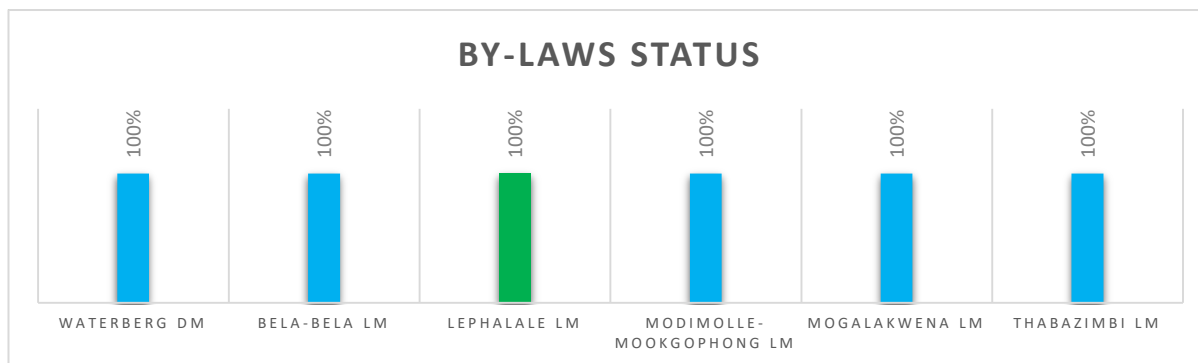


Figure 9 - Status of Waste Management By-Laws in municipalities

Waterberg District Municipality and all 4 Local Municipalities namely Bela-Bela LM, Modimolle-Mookgophong LM, Mogalakwena LM and Thabazimbi LM have available draft by-laws and the by-laws are not gazetted. Only 1 LM, namely Lephalale has developed, available and gazetted by-laws that are enforced in local municipal jurisdiction.

TABLE 44: WASTE FACILITIES AND WEIGHBRIDGES

MUNICIPALITY	WASTE FACILITIES	LICENSE TYPE	WEIGHBRIDGE STATUS	TOTAL
Bela-Bela LM	Bela-Bela Landfill Site	LEDET: Waste Disposal License	No Weighbridge	1 Landfill Sites
Lephalale LM	Lephalale Landfill Site	LEDET: Waste Disposal License	1 Formal Weighbridge Functioning	1 Landfill Sites
Modimolle-Mookgophong LM	New Modimolle Landfill Site: <i>under-construction</i> Project No.: PC001002002001-00001	No Operational License	1 Formal Weighbridge Functioning	4 Landfill Sites
	Old Modimolle Landfill Site	LEDET: Closure License & Rehabilitation Plan	No Weighbridge	
	Mabatlane Vaalwater Landfill Site	LEDET: Closure License & Rehabilitation Plan	No Weighbridge	
	Naabomspruit Landfill Site	LEDET: Waste Disposal License	No Weighbridge	
Mogalakwena LM	Piet Potgietersrus Landfill Site	LEDET: Waste Disposal License	1 Formal Weighbridge Not Functioning	2

	Rebone Landfill Site	LEDET: Waste Disposal License	No Weighbridge	Landfill Sites
Thabazimbi LM	Thabazimbi Doonkerpoort Landfill Site,	LEDET: Waste Disposal License	1 Formal Weighbridge Not Functioning (<i>old infrastructure</i>)	3 Landfill Sites
	Northam Landfill Site, former Quarry	LEDET: Closure License & Rehabilitation Plan	No Weighbridge	
	Rooiberg Waste Disposal Site	LEDET: Waste Disposal License	No Weighbridge	
	Transfer Station:			1 Transfer Station
	Leeupoort Landfill Site – converted to a Transfer Station	LEDET: Waste Disposal License	No Weighbridge	

Waste Facilities: Licensed Landfill sites, Transfer Stations and Functional Weighbridges in municipalities

Illustrates the status of waste facilities, all locals municipal landfill sites in the Waterberg district are licensed, but not compliant / do not comply to license conditions. Two / 2 old licensed landfill sites in two / 2 municipalities, namely Thabazimbi LM and Modimolle-Mookgophong LM has closure licenses and landfill sites are under rehabilitation.

Waterberg local municipalities' waste disposal licensed sites have very limited number of formal functional weighbridges. In the Waterberg district, only Lephalale local municipality has a formal functional weighbridge. Mogalakwena LM formal new weighbridge that was funded by DFFE is not functional due to electrical connection challenges. The Thabazimbi LM formal old weighbridge is not functional due to aging infrastructure challenges. Bela-Bela LM, Modimolle-Mookgophong LM, Mogalakwena LM and Thabazimbi LM landfill sites conduct an estimation measure method to calculate the amount of waste disposed-off into the landfill site. Use of a formal functional weighbridge by the Lephalale LM to weigh waste quantities disposed-off in the municipal landfill site, is exceptionally well.

SAWIS Reporting

The South African Waste Information System (SAWIS) developed by the DFFE in 2005 is a system used by government and industry to capture routine data on the tonnages of waste generated, recycled and disposed of in South Africa on a monthly and annual basis. All local municipalities are expected to report on SAWIS in order to plan properly for their waste.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

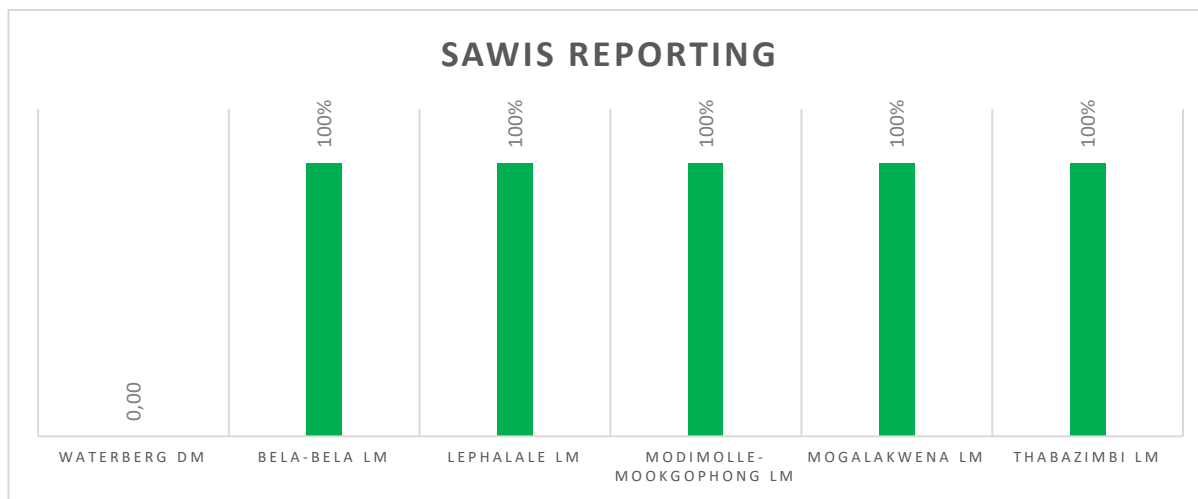


Figure 1 - SAWIS reporting in local municipalities

Figure 10 illustrates that all Waterberg DM local municipalities report to SAWIS. The district municipality does not have mandatory obligation of waste disposal and collection services; only local municipalities are granted a full mandate of waste management, hence all LMs report on waste disposal data in the SAWIS system.

Designation of WMO



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

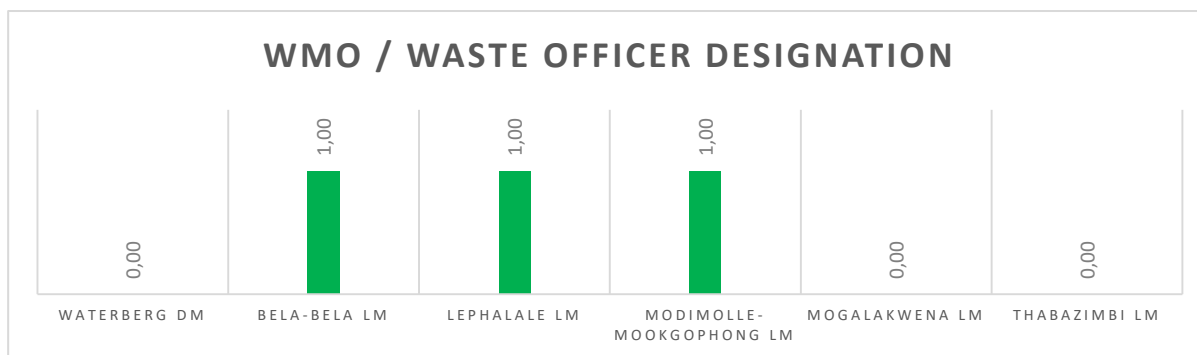


Figure 11 - Designation of Waste Management Officers per municipality

Figure 11 demonstrates that in Waterberg District Municipality, only Mogalakwena LM and Thabazimbi LM does not have designated waste management officers. Only three / 3 LMs namely Bela-Bela LM, Lephalale LM and Modimolle-Mookgophong LM have designated waste management officers as authorized by LEDET MEC.

Recommendation

DFFE recommends and require prompt gazetting of Waste By-Laws in all local municipalities (LMs). Mogalakwena LM and Thabazimbi LM designation of waste management officers must be followed up by the district at LEDET, to ensure that both LMs follow protocol and comply in accord with NEM: WA Act. Installation of functional weighbridge is paramount in waste disposal facilities; due to legislative processes of waste landfill sites audits for SAWIS Reporting and due to weighing diverted waste from landfills by waste pickers.

15. Biodiversity and Conservation

Biodiversity management is entrenched in the Constitutional Environmental Right, the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act No. 10 of 2004 (NEM:BA) (being a Specific Environmental Management Act) that provides further guidance and clarity with regards to the precise biodiversity management roles of all three spheres of government. The NEM:BA essentially therefore gives effect to the constitutional commitment to take reasonable legislative measures that promote conservation by means of managing and conserving biological diversity. The fundamental role of local government (district and local municipalities) in development planning and management of biodiversity is also recognised in the National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (2015-2025).

Although the onus which is placed on all organs of state in all spheres of government to prepare an invasive species monitoring, control and eradication plan (Section 76(2) of the NEMBA) for land under its control, is perhaps the most familiar requirement, the act also makes for provision for the development and adoption additional biodiversity management tools. The aforesaid tools provided for in the NEM:BA includes amongst others includes bioregional plans as well as biodiversity management plans.

Within a municipal context, the integration of biodiversity considerations in municipal planning is key to ensuring that the objectives of the NEM:BA are achieved at the local government sphere. To this end the NEM:BA also makes provision for the integration of Biodiversity Sector and Bioregional Plans in key municipal strategic documents which includes Integrated Development Plans (IDPs), municipal planning tools such as Spatial Development Frameworks, Bio-Regional Plans, Environmental Management Frameworks and many more.

The NEM:BA furthermore explicitly also require municipalities to ensure that IDPs takes into account the need for the protection of listed ecosystems. The parameters which are considered in the capacity analysis therefore seeks to determine the extent to which biodiversity and conservation tools have been adopted by municipalities in relation to the legislated biodiversity mandate. The capacity analysis furthermore also assesses the degree to which municipalities are implementing initiatives geared towards the protection and conservation of sensitive ecosystems and therefore biological resources. Implementation of NEM:BA is critical in the Waterberg DM, due to the UNESCO international declaration status of the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve within the district municipal jurisdiction.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

Bioregional Plan

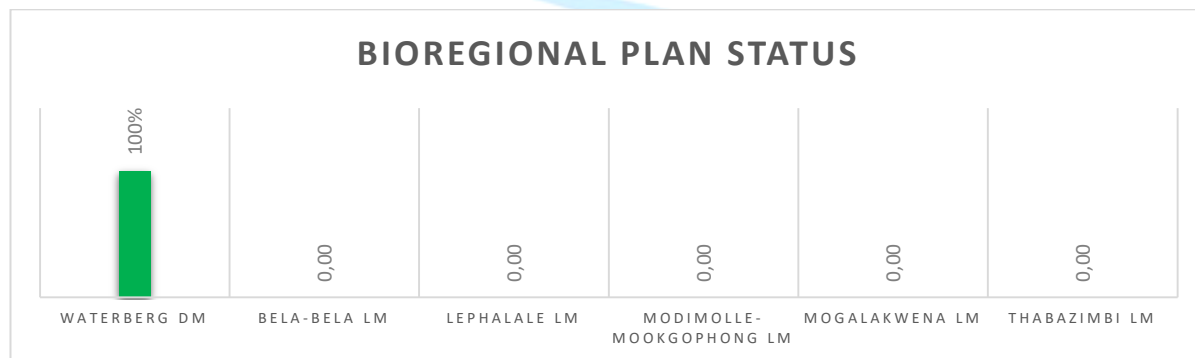


Figure 2 - Bioregional Plan/s in the Waterberg DM

The Waterberg District Municipality (WDM) was greatly assisted by LEDET (Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism) in funding and development of the WDM Bioregional Plan in 2015-2016 financial year. The planning tool was formally gazetted in 2018-2019 financial year. Ever since 2019, the WDM management has been implementing the Bioregional Plan accordingly.

Open Space Management

Green Open spaces play an integral part in maintaining the environmental integrity in settlements. Overtime, these open spaces have been degraded due to several demands ranging from housing developments and other land use demands and at times end up being illegal dump sites.

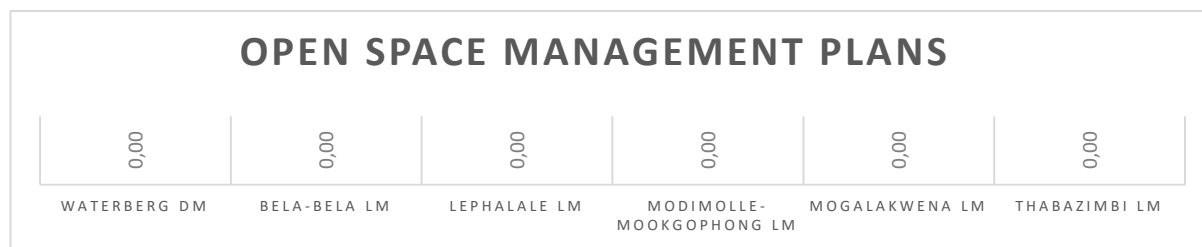


Figure 3 - Open Space Management per municipality

Figure 13 above illustrates Open Space Management by Local Municipalities in Waterberg DM. All 5 LMs including the district, never developed and do not possess Open Space Management Plans.

By-Laws: Greening / Open Space / Biodiversity and Conservation



Figure 4 – Greening / Open Space Management / Biodiversity and Conservation By-Laws per municipality

Figure 18 above illustrates availability of greening / open space management / biodiversity and conservation By-Laws in the Waterberg District Municipality, all local municipalities (LMs) never developed or does not possess greening / open space management / biodiversity and conservation By-Laws.

Alien Invasive Species / Eradication Plan

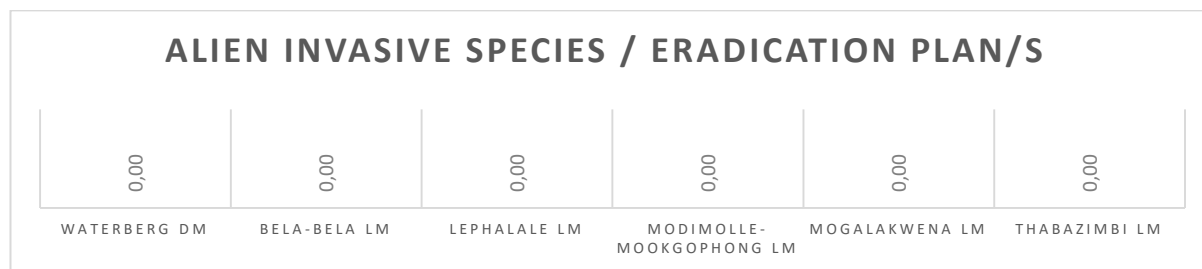


Figure 5 - Alien Invasive Species / Eradication Plans per municipality

Status of Alien Invasive Species / Eradication Plan or Plans in the Waterberg District Municipality is that all local municipalities (LMs) never developed or does not possess Alien Invasive Eradication Plan/s.

Recommendation

DFFE recommends that all local municipal Parks Managers in the Waterberg DM should undergo a thorough training on NRM (Natural Resources Management) Programmes, for a higher understanding of the roles and responsibilities of Parks Managers in Biodiversity and Conservation space.

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

Environmental re-engineering and building of Environmental Units in all municipal structures in district and local municipal levels, will indeed contribute positively in the professional capacity beneficiation of municipalities within the spectrum of Biodiversity and Conservation sector.

Climate Change

DFFE supports the municipalities through the Local Government Climate Change Support Programme (LGCCSP) and the Sector Support Work Programme. The adaptation climate support work stream is delivered in collaboration with the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development (DALRRD). The Waterberg DM Climate Change Strategy that was funded and developed by DALRRD in 2019; in implementation of DFFE mandate that cuts across all developmental sectors in all three / 3 spheres of government while clearly encourages sustainability and enhancement of green economy in all infrastructural developments.

Environmental education, awareness and environmental skills development for green future is embedded in municipal plans such as Integrated Development Plans (IDPs), Spatial Development Frameworks (SDFs), Climate Change Mitigation and Adaptation Strategies, and other many more planning tools. DFFE programmes aim to provide technical support to the sector departments and local municipalities by providing training / capacity building on how municipalities can identify climate risks and response measures to the impacts of climate change, and how to develop and submit funding proposals for climate change finance projects and programmes.

Climate Change Response Plans

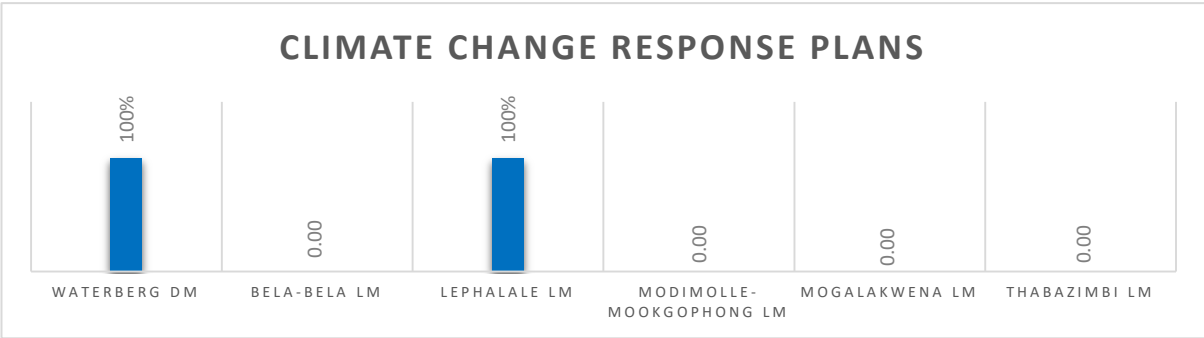


Figure 16 - Climate Change Response Plans in municipalities

Waterberg DM Climate Change Response Plan was developed in 2019. The Lephalale Climate Change Response Plan was developed in 2014 internally by the LM, DFFE and LEDET and the plan is due for review / redevelopment. In 2022, DFFE awarded a budget for the redevelopment of the Lephalale Climate Change Response Plan.

Climate Change Mitigation Projects

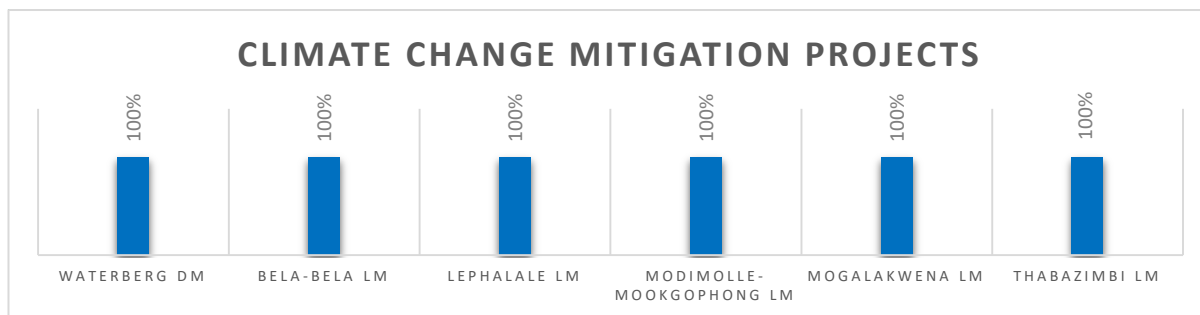


Figure 6 - Climate Change Mitigation Projects in municipalities

The graph above shows that Waterberg DM does have Climate Change Mitigation Projects, including LMs, all climate change projects are covered partly in the MIG Infrastructure Projects and also covered by the DFFE Forestry project on greening and tree planting projects in all LMs. However, the funding is not specified as Climate Change Projects but rather hard or soft infrastructure projects that assist with mitigation.

Amendment of Disaster Management Plan to factor Climate Change

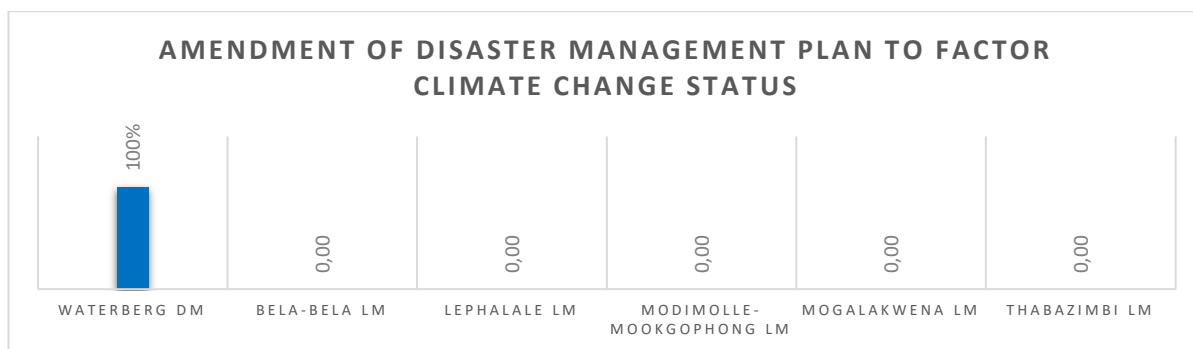
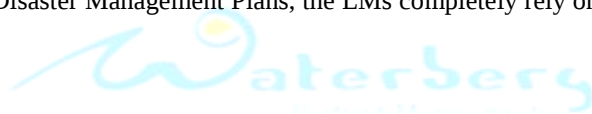


Figure 18 - Amendment of Disaster Management Plan to factor Climate Change

The graph above indicates the amended Waterberg Disaster Management Plan that has incorporated climate change and also streamlined the information in the municipal IDPs. All local municipalities in the district does not have Disaster Management Plans, the LMs completely rely on the district capacity for the implementation of the disaster management function at local level.

Cross Cutting



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Environmental Advocacy

Foundational to the Section 24 environmental rights enshrined in the Republic of South Africa constitution, clearly stating that everyone has the right to an environment that is not harmful to their health or wellbeing. In principle, all municipalities base their mandate of promoting community actions on environmental issues by embarking on environmental awareness campaigns and by building capacity of community members through raising community awareness; in diverse environment sectors. The environmental management education and awareness campaigns therefore seek to rollout awareness through public education and assists the communities in their various formations in acquiring a basic understanding of the mainly the natural and human activities that have a potential to adversely harm the environment and the human health.

The awareness campaigns are therefore aimed at the following:

- Creating a general awareness among people as far as the environmental problems are concerned.
- Motivating people towards conservation of resources, protection of environment and advance of extravagance and wastage.
- Promoting understanding and cooperation among public to help in facing various ecological issues; and
- Conserving indigenous knowledge, traditions and culture that favour environment protection

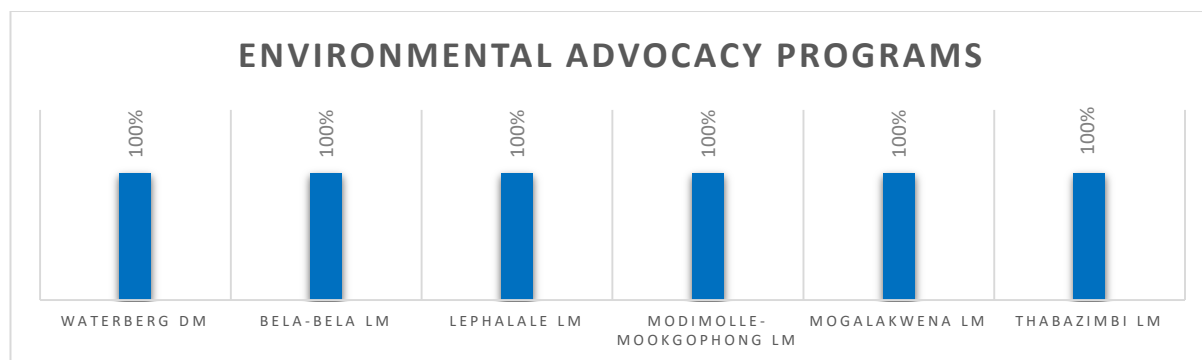


Figure 19 - Environmental Advocacy in municipalities

All municipalities and the Waterberg DM renders environmental education and awareness to schools and communities. The role of environmental education and awareness is to empower and sensitize communities of the importance of the environment and dangers that comes after infringing the environment. There are several environmental advocacy programmes and projects in the district, which are jointly run with LEDET, DFFE and many other institutions both public and private in:

- Greening Programme
- Environmental education and awareness on various themes of the environment
- Good Green Deeds Programme offered by DFFE

- Youth Community Outreach Programme
- Greenest Municipality Competition.
- EPIP funded projects and other environment projects funded either by municipalities themselves or by other institutions.

Environmental Management Framework

An Environmental Management Framework (EMF) is a tool that serves as a spatial screening mechanism for EIAs in the study area through the development of environmental constraints dataset which indicates the issues that should be investigated in more detail during the EIA process. It also provides strategic context for EIA applications in the study area through the development of management zones dataset to indicate through the decision support matrix whether an envisaged activity is compatible in a specific area/zone or not as seen from a strategic perspective. It can be used to inform strategic spatial planning in the area through the development of management zones dataset which, in future, inform the development of a Spatial Development Framework (SDF) responsible for strategic spatial planning and guiding land use management in the area.

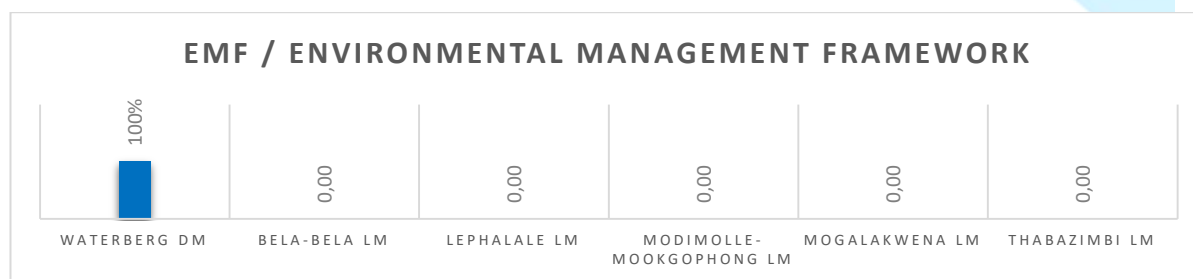


Figure 7 - Environmental Management Framework per district

Figure 20 illustrate Environmental Management Framework is the environment-planning tool that balances environmental and developmental imperatives in sensitive areas. As depicted in the graph above, only the Waterberg DM has an EMF due to the fact that an EMF is a regional environmental planning tool. All LMs are not mandatory to develop the tool. The Environmental Management Framework for Waterberg District was initially developed by DEA / DFFE in 2010, thereafter in 2020-2021 the EMF was funded and reviewed by the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development (DALRRD).

EIA Commenting & EIA Consideration in Environmental Projects



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

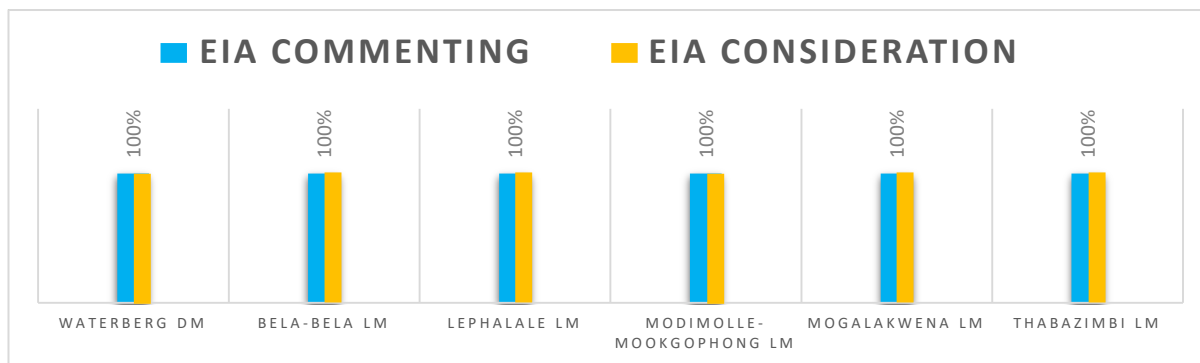


Figure 8 - EIA Commenting & EIA Consideration in Environmental Projects per municipality

Waterberg DM and all local municipalities factor EIA in municipal projects and also comment on EIA processes as interested and affected parties through the assistance of Social Services Section and Spatial Planning Section.

Environmental Outlook

An Environmental Outlook presents an extensive overview of the current condition of our environment, the pressures upon it and our responses to those pressures. It further presents a glimpse into what the future state of the environment may be like if current trends continue and suggests interventions we should consider implementing. Its aim is basically to provide scientifically credible information and assessment that will help drive the future environmental agenda.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

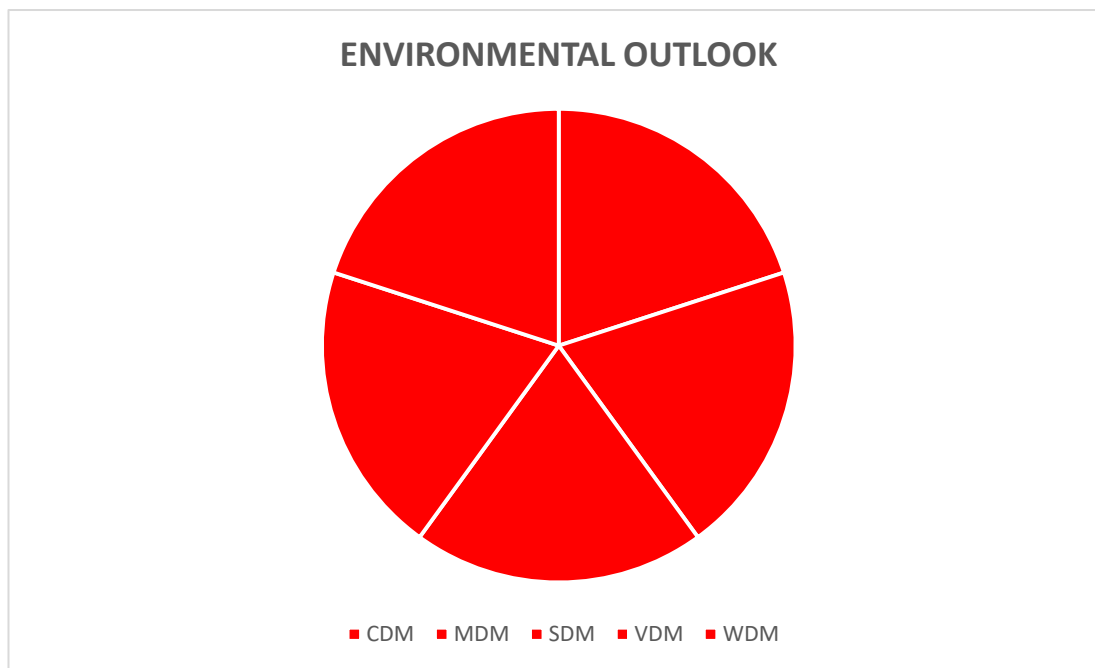


Figure 22 - Environmental Outlook

LEDET funded and developed the provincial Limpopo Environmental Outlook planning tool in 2015-2016 financial year for all 5 Districts in Limpopo Province; namely Capricorn District Municipality, Mopani District Municipality, Sekhukhune District Municipality, Vhembe District Municipality and the Waterberg District Municipality. The Limpopo Environmental Outlook for all 5 districts is due for review.

TABLE 45: FORUMS

MUNICIPALITY	WASTE FORUM	AIR QUALITY FORUM	ENVIRONMENTAL FORUM	TOTAL
Waterberg DM	None	Waterberg AQMP – ITT Implementation Task Team	Waterberg District Municipal Environmental Forum	2
Bela-Bela LM	Bela-Bela Landfill Site Audit Committee	None	None	1
Lephalale LM	Lephalale Waste Forum	None	None	1

Modimolle / Mookgophong LM	Modimolle / Mookgophong Landfill Site Audit Committee	None	None	1
Mogalakwena LM	Mogalakwena Recycling Forum	None	None	1
Thabazimbi LM	None	None	None	0

Table 1.3: Waterberg Forums

Waterberg DM have an Environmental Management Forum available where all their locals participate to discuss all environmental issues quarterly, including waste management. The district does not have separate forum on waste. The Waterberg DM also has an air quality forum (AQMP-ITT Implementation Task Team) dedicated only for air quality discussions, on quarterly basis. Under Waterberg DM Mogalakwena LM has a Waste Recycling Forum and Lephalale has Waste Management Forum other locals do not have Waste Forum. In addition, Bela-Bela LM and Modimolle-Mookgophong LM formed landfill site audit committees that also discuss issues of waste management in depth.

Recommendation

DFFE recommends that forums recommendations must be escalated to the higher office of the MEC and the Premier so as to hold municipal leadership accountable. This can be achieved by ensuring that all forum resolutions are implemented as planned, within planned timeframes for the success of sustainable development and quality service delivery at local government level.



Budget

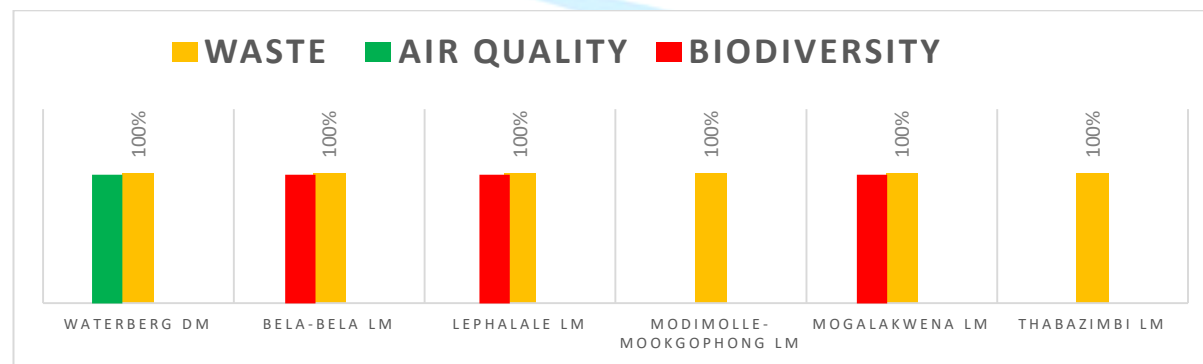


Figure 9 - Budget in thematic areas per municipality

As demonstrated in Figure 23, the Waterberg District Municipality has a specified MHS Air Quality and Waste Management budget. All local municipalities in the district have an allocated budget for waste management specifically. Only Bela-Bela LM, Lephalale LM and Mogalakwena LM have budgets for biodiversity projects allocated for greening corridor development; paired with funded DFFE EPIP Wildlife Economy projects. The report assessment also notes that all biodiversity and air quality budgets also subtly translate to climate change mitigation, hence there is no specific climate change budget in municipalities IDP budget.

It is in this light that DFFE and SALGA encourages municipalities to apply for a direct national and international Climate Finance funding in order to report appropriately in the IDP budget chapter.



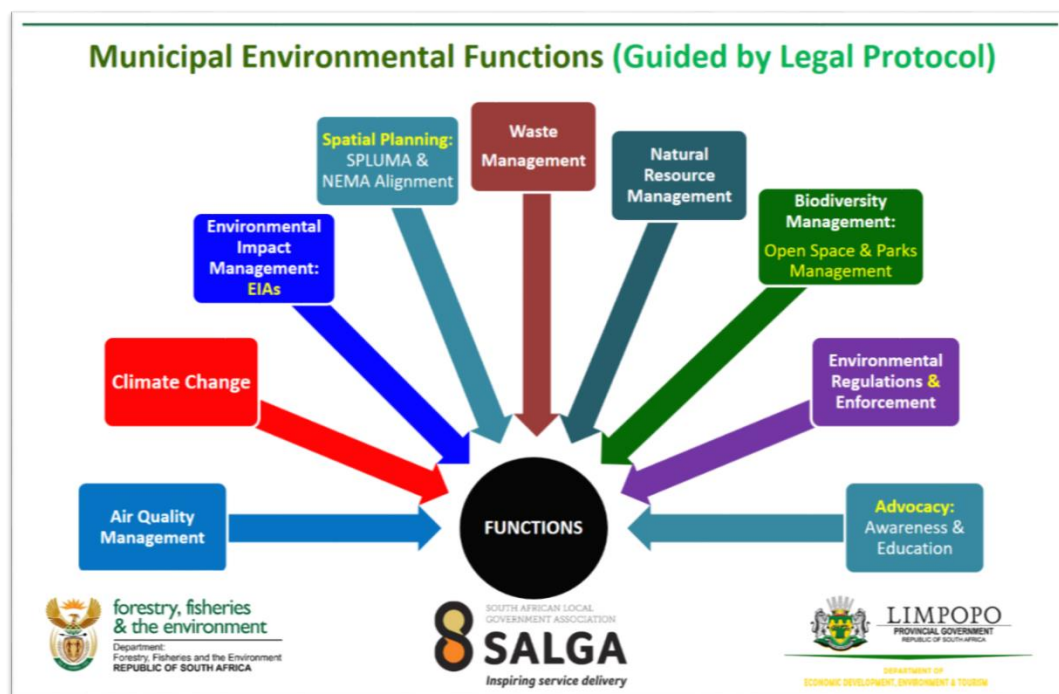
© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Recommendation

Thence the national Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) and the provincial Department of Limpopo Economic Development Environment and Tourism (LEDET) recommends re-engineering of Bela-Bela Local Municipality Social Services structure, in order **to build an Environmental Unit** that will serve the environmental function properly. This approach of Social Services structural re-engineering will include all environment sectors and maximize new vital job opportunities within the local municipality. Young unemployed environmentalists and future young environmental professionals / graduates will be well accommodated in municipal environmental professional jobs, in the now and in the future. However, in the meantime; the municipality is encouraged to consider **appointing a municipal Environmental Officer** that will be able to conduct daily professional environmental work.

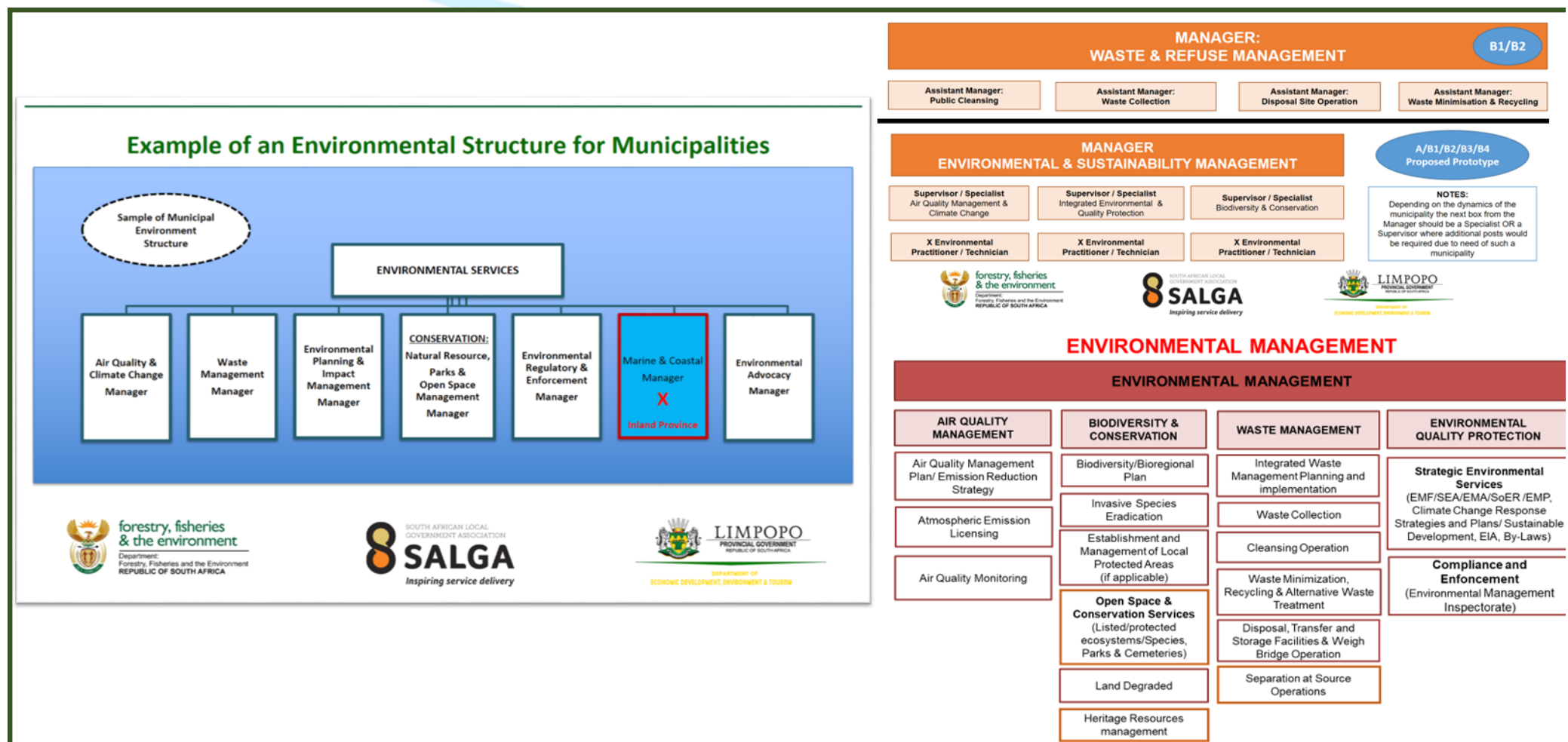
Figure 1: Municipal Environmental Functions – Guided by Legal Protocol



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Figure 2: Recommended Environmental Structure under Social Services Section



ENVIRONMENTAL PLANNING TOOLS, FORUMS, PROGRAMMES AND PROJECTS

Table 1: Environmental Programmes and Projects

SECTOR PROGRAMS	ACTIVE PROJECTS
*LEDET: Waste Cleaning Campaigns *LEDET: Environmental Campaigns	*MISA-COGTA & WDM-DDM: Waste Innovation Project – EPWP *DFFE & LEDET Greening Project: Tree Planting – EPWP *DFFE & LEDET Waste Cleaning and Greening Project – EPWP *DFFE NRM: Natural Resources Management – EPWP *DFFE YCOP: Youth Community Outreach Project

The national Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) and the provincial Department of Limpopo Economic Development Environment and Tourism (LEDET) supports all 5 Local Municipalities of the Waterberg District Municipality (WDM) each financial year, with human resources personnel that is based at district level.

The environmental support is packaged with financial support that is allocated through environmental programs and projects that are implemented by the environmental sector departments in collaboration with WDM management. The National DFFE and Provincial LEDET personnel, innovatively plan further and create public partnership programs with other government sector stakeholders and private sector stakeholders that conduct and carry the mandate of environment; in environmental planning, environmental management, environmental programs and environmental project in order **to support municipalities and communities** with implementation of environmental activities holistically.

Conclusion

The study focused on Waterberg environmental management functions that are mandatory for all municipalities to perform under the following six environmental thematic areas: 1. Municipal Environmental Structures, 2. Waste Management, 3. Air Quality Management, 4. Biodiversity & Conservation, 5. Climate Change, and 6. Cross Cutting. It is paramount to note that all the diverse environmental sectoral functions are not properly implemented in municipalities; thence establishment of environmental units in the district municipality (DM) and 5 local municipalities (LMs) is key for implementation of environmental sustainability, environmental governance and environmental finance.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

3.2 BASIC SERVICE AND DELIVERY

3.2.1 WATER ANALYSIS

TABLE 46: WATER RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

Water Resource (WR) System	Current Prioritized Water Resource Development Option and Estimated Date of Water Delivery		
	2020 - 2030	2031 - 2040	2041 – 2050
Crocodile West River System	Mokolo Crocodile (West) Water Augmentation Project (MCWAP) by 2027 (R15 Billion)	Re-Use of Effluent	Re-Use of Effluent
Olifants River System	Olifants Water Resource Development Project (ORWRDP) Phases 2B (R6.6 Billion)	Re-Use of Effluent	Olifants Dam (Possibly Rooipoort Dam)

**TABLE 47: LEVELS OF DAMS IN LIMPOPO FALLING IN THE LIMPOPO WMA 1
(17 February 2020)**

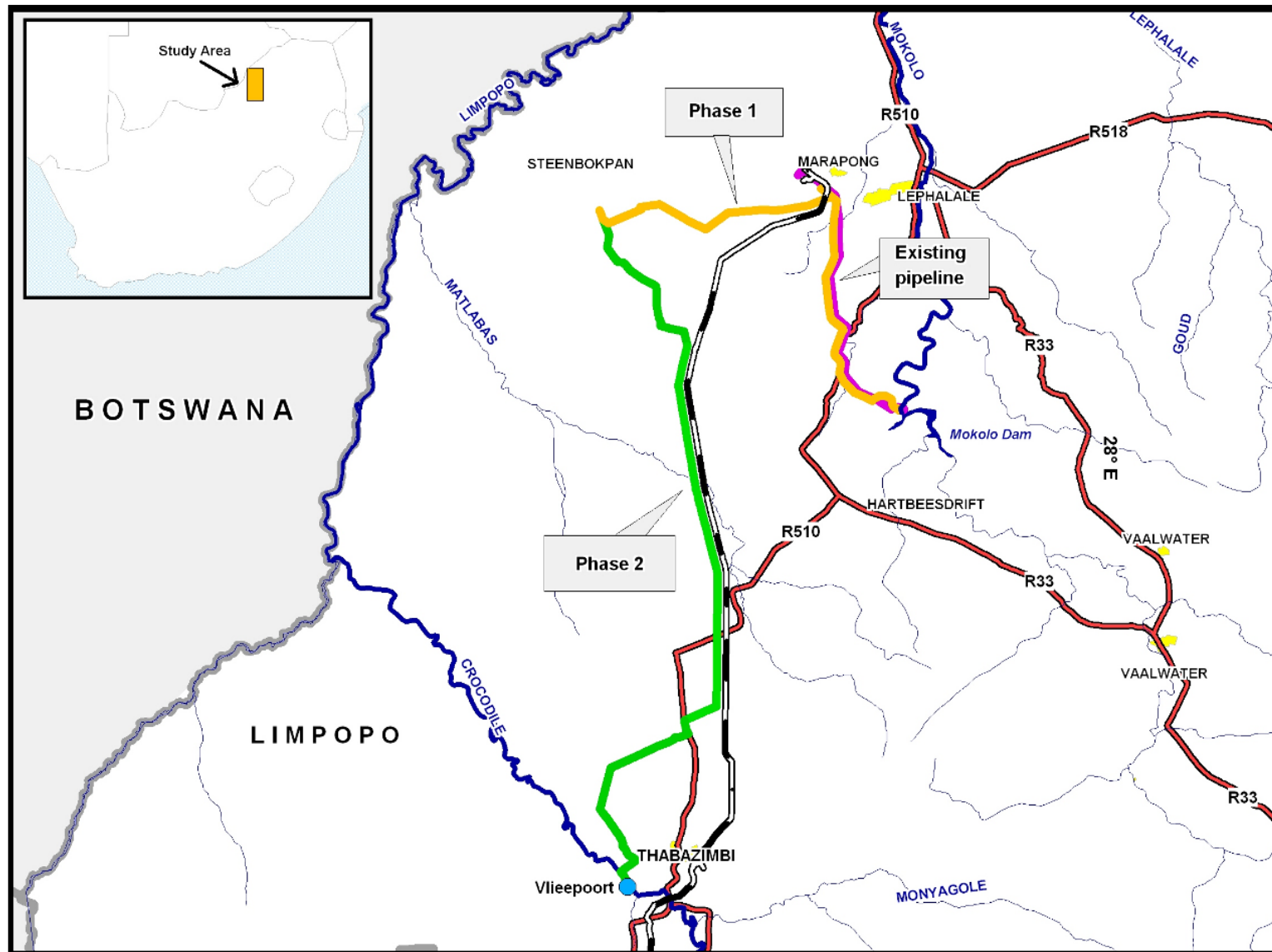
Station Number	Dam	River	Date:				
			2020/02/17				
			Gauge Plate (M)	Capacity in %	Discharge in Cumecs (m ³ /s)	Full Supply (M)	Rain (mm)
A4R001	Mokolo	Mokolo	36,079	70,25	0,000	41,84	0,00
A6R001	Doorndraai	Sterk	8,230	12,91		18,96	0,00



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 16: mokolo and crocodile river (west) water augmentation project – locality and phasing



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

Critical Bulk Water Supply Systems

TABLE 48: WATER SOURCES IN MUNICIPALITIES

WATER SOURCES IN MUNICIPALITIES			
Municipality	Surface Water Source	Groundwater	
Bela Bela	Warmth Dam Platrivier Dam Pipe from Klipdrift purification works (Magalies Water Servitude Line)	Farm Boreholes	
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Modimolle Donkerpoort Dam Pipeline from Klipdrift purification works (Magalies Water Servitude Line) Mookgophong Welgevonden Dam / Frekkiegeyser Dam (Private Owned)	Perdelaagte borehole in Modimolle Mabaleng borehole Mabatlane borehole +12 boreholes(Mookgophong & Naboomspruit) +4 boreholes (Roedtan)	
Mogalakwena	Doorindraai Water Resources System (Private Owned)	Sefakaola Rural Water Supply Scheme – (+41 boreholes) Glen Alpine Rural Water Supply Scheme – (+34 Boreholes) Mapela Regional Rural Water Scheme – (+45 boreholes) Bakenburg Regional Rural Water Scheme – (+51 boreholes) Nkidikitlana Regional Rural Water Scheme – (+45 boreholes) Salem Regional Rural Water Scheme – (+42 boreholes) Uitloop Farm (Private Owned boreholes) Weenen / Planknek (Private Owned boreholes)	
Lephalale	Mogolo Dam	Rural Water Supply Scheme – (+132 boreholes)	
Thabazimbi	Vaalkop Dam (Magalies Water Servitude line)	B Seven (+1 borehole) Groep Five & Twelve (5 boreholes) Leeupoort (+2 boreholes) Rooiberg (+3 boreholes)	TOWNSHIP WATER SUPPLY SCHEME

Local Municipality	Scheme	WTW	Source	Village/ settlement	Population	Capacity Ml/d		Scheme Performance %	Supply Period	
						Design	Output		Less 24h	24h
WATERBERG DM										
Modimolle / Mookgophong	Mookgophong	Welgevonden	Welgevonden dam	2	39 059	5.2	2	38 (S)	2	-
	Modimolle	Donkerpoort	Donkerpoort Dam	2	86 289	10	4	40 (S)	2	-
Mogalakwena	Doorndraai		Doorndraai Dam	2	299 636	12	6	50 (S)	2	-
TOTAL				6	424 984	27.2	12	50%		

TABLE 49: ACCESS TO WATER PER MUNICIPALITY

	2011			2016			% increase		
MUNICIPALITY	ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	NO ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	NUMBER OF HH	ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	NO ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	NUMBER OF HH	ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	NO ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	NUMBER OF HH
THABAZIMBI	23,530	1,550	25,080	24,163	11,300	35,463	3%	629%	41%
LEPHALALE	29,080	799	29,879	30,778	11,295	42,073	6%	1314%	41%
MODIMOLLE- MOOKGOPHONG	26,544	899	27,443	22,627	6,350	28,977	-22%	1407%	11%
BELA-BELA	17,482	586	18,068	17,057	4,297	21,354	-2%	633%	18%
MOGALAKWENA	72,922	6,473	79,395	56,028	27,576	83,604	-23%	326%	5%
WATERBERG	169,559	10,308	179,867	150,653	60,819	211,472	-11%	490%	18%

Source: Stats SA 2016

WATER QUALITY-RELATED IMPACTS

- Less irrigation and drinking water could be available due to increasing water temperatures linked to higher ambient temperatures.
- Favourable conditions for the incubation and transmission of water-borne diseases may be created by increasing air and water temperatures.
- Increased fish mortality due to reduced oxygen concentrations in aquatic environments and mortality of temperature-sensitive fish species.
- Human health and ecosystem impacts, associated with increased rainfall intensities, flash floods and regional flooding including overflowing sewers due to sewage pipes blocked with washed-off debris, damage to sewerage infrastructure resulting in raw sewage discharges into rivers, scouring and erosion of urban streams, increased sediment and pollutant overflow and damage to low lying water and wastewater treatment works disrupting drinking water supplies.
- Increased periods of drought mean less water is available to dilute wastewater discharges and irrigation return flows resulting in reduced water quality and associated downstream health risks to aquatic ecosystems

TABLE 50: WATER BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY

MUNICIPALITY	TOTAL NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS	NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS SERVED	BACKLOG REMAINING HOUSEHOLDS
Bela Bela	14 900	14 900	0
Modimolle	19 804	18 654	5 181
Mogalakwena	75 313	72 084	3 229
Modimolle-Mookgophong	9 147	7 930	1 217
Lephalale	27 950	21 644	6 104
Thabazimbi	23 872	23 776	96
Waterberg District	170 986	158 988	15 872

Source: Stats SA 2016

WATERBERG WATER CHALLENGES

- Inadequate bulk water supply.
- Ageing infrastructure.
- Poor quality of drinking water.
- Inadequate bulk water supply.
- Inadequate funding and accumulative debts.
- Illegal connections, theft and vandalism.
- Municipal Sanitation – Water Waste Treatment Works infrastructure that are dysfunctional, Agricultural pesticides and Mining pollutants directly contaminates natural water resources (surface and underground water systems) rivers and aquifers which are the main contributors of Waterberg Water Catchments that nourish dams with portable water.

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

- Over extraction of underground water in rural villages and farms.

IMPLICATIONS

- Loss of revenue due to irregular systematic collection of water tariffs.
- Inability to reach/achieve Municipal Service Delivery targets.
- Impedes on possible investors in the District.

RECOMMENDATIONS

- Waterberg Water Catchment Management.
- Upgrading of water and sanitation supply will eliminate pollution of natural water resources.
- Close monitoring of Municipal Infrastructure Grant Funding outsourced from the Department of Water and Sanitation for projects to upgrade water and sanitation supply.

3.2.2 SANITATION ANALYSIS

TABLE 51: ACCESS TO SANITATION PER MUNICIPALITY

MUNICIPALITY	2011		2016		% increase	
	FLUSH/CHEMICAL TOILET	OTHER	FLUSH/CHEMICAL TOILET	OTHER	FLUSH/CHEMICAL TOILET	OTHER
Thabazimbi	17,211	7,869	23,175	12,287	35%	56%
Lephalale	13,820	16,060	21,059	21,014	52%	31%
Modimolle-Mookgophong	19,476	7,966	20,624	8,353	10%	11%
Bela-Bela	14,602	3,466	19,017	2,337	30%	-33%
Mogalakwena	22,765	56,631	26,086	57,518	15%	2%
Waterberg	87,874	91,992	109,961	101,510	25%	10%

Source: Stats SA 2016



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 52: FREE BASIC SERVICES

MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG MUNICIPALITY

INDIGENT SUMMARY				
Amount of Subsidies to Indigents per service				
Municipality	Water	Electricity	Sewerage and sanitation	Solid waste management
Modimolle-Mookgophong	0	0	0	1 420

Source: MODIMOLLE -MOOKGOPHONG Budget and Treasury

MOGALAKWENA

INDIGENT SUMMARY				
Amount of Subsidies to Indigents per service				
Municipality	Water	Electricity	Sewerage and sanitation	Solid waste management
Mogalakwena	4 541	4 541	4 541	4 541

Source: MOGALAKWENA Budget and Treasury

LEPHALALE

INDIGENT SUMMARY					
Amount of Subsidies to Indigents per service					
NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS PROVIDED WITH FREE BASIC SERVICES					
Water	Sewerage and Sanitation	Electricity	Refuse Removal	Total households	Total H/H served as %
14 102	565	3 429	14 102	29 880	47.2%

Source: LEPHALALE Budget and Treasury



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

BELA BELA**INDIGENT SUMMARY****Amount of Subsidies to Indigents per service**

Month 2016/2017	Water		Refuse		Rates		Electricity		Sewerage		Prepaid Electricity		Total
Total	2845	1 949 165	3363	1 477 984	1647	302 151	15	21 557	3326	1 384 073	3307	4 361 797	9 496 728

Source: BELA BELA Budget and Treasury

THABAZIMBI**INDIGENT SUMMARY****Amount of Subsidies to Indigents per service**

Water	Sewerage and Sanitation	Electricity	Refuse Removal	Total households	Total H/H served as %
0	0	0	0	0	0

Source: Thabazimbi Budget and Treasury

MUNICIPALITY ON SERVICE DELIVERY BACKLOGS

Municipality	Water	Sanitation	Electricity	Refuse removal
Bela-Bela	2.64%	12%	12%	22.2%
Lephalale	3.21%	12.15%	6.2%	6.2%
Modimolle-Mookgopong	8.2%	4.28%	7.62%	79.2%
Mogalakwena	25%	25%	17%	59%
Thabazimbi	27%	34%	31%	33%
Waterberg (Average)	13%	15.7%	10.5%	52%

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

SANITATION BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY

Municipality	Total Households	Total Below RDP Water Households	Backlog if Infrastructure failures are included	HH Served 1994 to 2013	HH with access to RDP and above Water
Bela-Bela	18 305	-	1 772	2 981	18 305
Lephalale	30 272	-	3 078	11 952	30 272
Modimolle-Mookgophong	27 802	2 250	2 451	14 709	25 552
Mogalakwena	80 437	1 490	11 445	42 270	78 947
Thabazimbi	25 408	2 220	4 493	12 143	23 188
Waterberg	182 224	5 960	23 239	84 055	176 264

DWS: National

SANITATION CHALLENGES

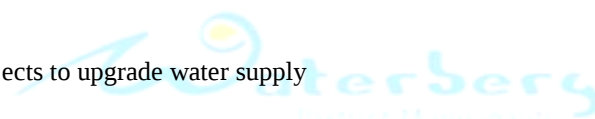
- Ageing infrastructure
- Inadequate bulk water supply
- Inadequate funding

IMPLICATIONS

- Loss of revenue
- Inability to reach/achieve MDG targets
- Impedes on possible investors in the District

RECOMMENDATIONS

- Upgrading of water supply
- Funding outsourced from DWA for projects to upgrade water supply



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

3.2.3 ENERGY AND ELECTRICITY

TABLE 53: ENERGY FOR COOKING, HEATING AND LIGHTING FOR WATERBERG MUNICIPALITY

	2001			2011		
	Cooking	Heating	Lighting	Cooking	Heating	Lighting
Electricity	9174	10515	16904	18046	18059	25398
Gas	369	195	67	927	262	34
Paraffin	1598	1139	525	2202	1401	164
Candles	-	-	6683	-	-	4143
Wood	12929	11837	-	8600	6258	-
Coal	114	137	-	18	20	-
Animal dung	49	40	-	11	15	-
Solar	71	43	46	17	142	77
Other	79	477	159	25	1	-
Number of households with no electrical connections/backlog 4482 (15%)						

Source: Stats SA 2016.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

OTHER SOURCE OF ENERGY PER MUNICIPALITY

MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG MUNICIPALITY

TABLE 54: TYPES OF ENERGY SOURCES USED BY HOUSEHOLD

Household location	Solar energy	Gas	Electricity	Firewood
Mookgophong township	0%	5%	70%	25%
Roedtan	1%	2%	93%	4%
Thusang	0%	0%	60%	40%
Naboomspruit town	2%	15%	83%	0%
Tuinplaas	0%	0%	70%	30%
Crecy	0%	0%	70%	30%
Euphoria Golf estate	5%	7%	88%	0%
Constantia	2%	15%	83%	0%
Die Oog	2%	15%	83%	0%

Electricity Challenges

- Illegal connection
- Upgrading electricity supply in Mookgophong
- No energy master plan
- Ageing infrastructure
- Faulty meters
- Copper theft
- Insufficient funds to upgrade network and for electrification projects to eradicate backlog
- Increased number of informal settlements

TABLE 55: ACCESS TO ELECTRICITY

MUNICIPALITY	CONNECTED TO ELECTRICITY	OTHER
Thabazimbi	35,462	9,581
Lephalale	36,651	7,817
Modimolle-Mookgophong	27,173	3,937
Bela-Bela	18,695	2,730
Mogalakwena	79,096	4,543
Total	182,863	28,608

Source: Stats SA 2016

Challenges pertaining to the provision of Electricity

- A major challenge to the municipality is the funding of projects, more specifically for maintenance of existing infrastructure.
- The electrification of low cost housing, which mostly occur in the Eskom supply area, of which normally there are not enough capacity on the main feeder lines to the villages.
- Meeting the “electricity for all” targets of National Government can therefore not be met at all times.

MOGALAKWENA MUNICIPALITY

TABLE 56: HOUSEHOLD ACCESS TO ELECTRICITY

	In-house conventional meter	In-house prepaid meter	Connected to other source which household pays for (e.g. con	Connected to other source which household is not paying for	Generator	Solar home system	Battery	Other	No access to electricity
	17144	292756	241	204	-	32	-	638	14275
Source: Statistics South Africa (Stats SA), Community Survey 2016									



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 57: ELECTRIFICATION BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY

Local Municipality	Connection Backlog
Thabazimbi	8422
Lephalale	1898
Bela-Bela	3653
Mogalakwena	12033
Modimolle-Mookgopong	6000
Total	32 006

Source: Eskom

3.2.4 ROADS AND STORM WATER

TABLE 58: ROAD LENGTH AND SURFACE

Municipality	Paved		Unpaved		Total	
	Km	%	Km	%	Km	%
Thabazimbi	573	23%	1916	77%	2490	100%
Modimolle -Mookgopong	816	32%	4347	84%	5164	100%
Lephalale	944	16%	4976	84%	5920	100%
Bela-Bela	434	22%	1572	78%	2006	100%
Mogalakwena	787	12%	5571	88%	6357	100%
Total	3555	16%	18383	84%	21938	100%

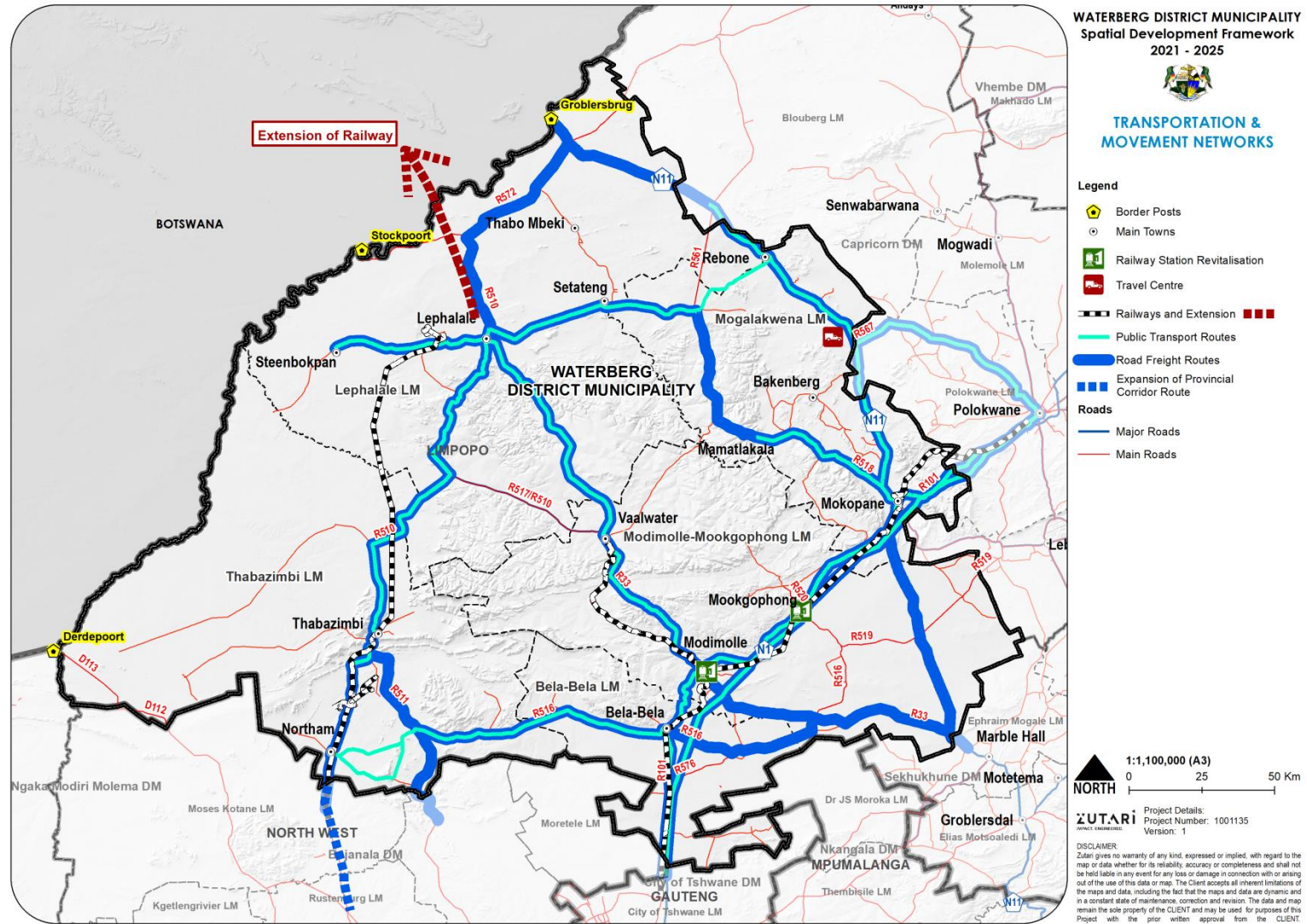
N.B: Waterberg District Municipality has a total road distance of 21 938 Km of which only 16% or 3 555 Km are surfaced and the local access roads are gravel and predominantly utilised by buses and taxis. The conditions of these roads is below standard, they require upgrading



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 17: Classification of Roads Network



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 59: WDM MAJOR ROADS IN DISTRICT GROWTH POINTS

Description	Municipality
R33 to modimolle to Vaalwater to Lephalale	Mookgophong, Modimolle , Lephalale
R101 Pienaarsrivier, Rapotokwane	Bela-Bela
mookgophong to Welgevonden to Alma to Rankispaas to Marekele Nature Reseve to Thabazimbi	Mookgophong, Modimolle, Thabazimbi
Groenvley to Mashismali to Rooipan to Grootvlei	Lephalale
Bulgerrivier to Wolwefontein to Sterkfontein to Rooipan to Grootvlei	Lephalale
Rietspruit to Rooiber mine to Marekele to Matlabatsi	Bela-Bela, Thabazimbi, Lephalale
Dwaalboom to Derdepoort Border post	Thabazimbi
Koedoeskop to Northam to Dwaalboom (PPC)	Thabazimbi

TABLE 60: ROUTES CLASSIFICATION IN THE MUNICIPALITY

Routes	Description	Powers and functions	Economy related issues
N1	Classified as a freeway, including the Kranskop & Zebediela toll gate.	SANRAL	Gateway to Limpopo Province and the rest of Africa and access to Gauteng Province.
P1/3	Classified as a main route, alternative route to the North.	DISTRICT	Access route for tourists in the Warmbaths-Modimolle area.
P55/1	Classified as an arterial route and situated in the Modimolle & Mookgophong Municipalities.	RAL	Access route to Modimolle and the rest of Waterberg District Municipality.
P1/5	Links the Modimolle road with the N1 on the northern side and is mainly situated in Modimolle	SANRAL	Links Modimolle as well as large part of WDM with the N1 on the northern side.
P1/25	Classified as a national route and situated on the southwestern side of Mokopane.	RAL	Gateway to the north and situated between Mookgophong and Mokopane.

TABLE 61: BACKLOGS ON ROADS, STORM WATER AND ANY OTHER RELEVANT INFORMATION REGARDING ROADS AND STORM WATER.

Bela-Bela	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Mogalakwena	Thabazimbi
722.54km	1388.1km	1013.5km	1035. 2km	1139.43km

NB: Waterberg District Municipality has a total road distance of 21 938 Km of which only 16% or 3 555 Km are surfaced and the local access roads are gravel and predominantly utilised by buses and taxis. The conditions of these roads are below standard, they require upgrading.

ROADS AND STORM WATER CHALLENGES

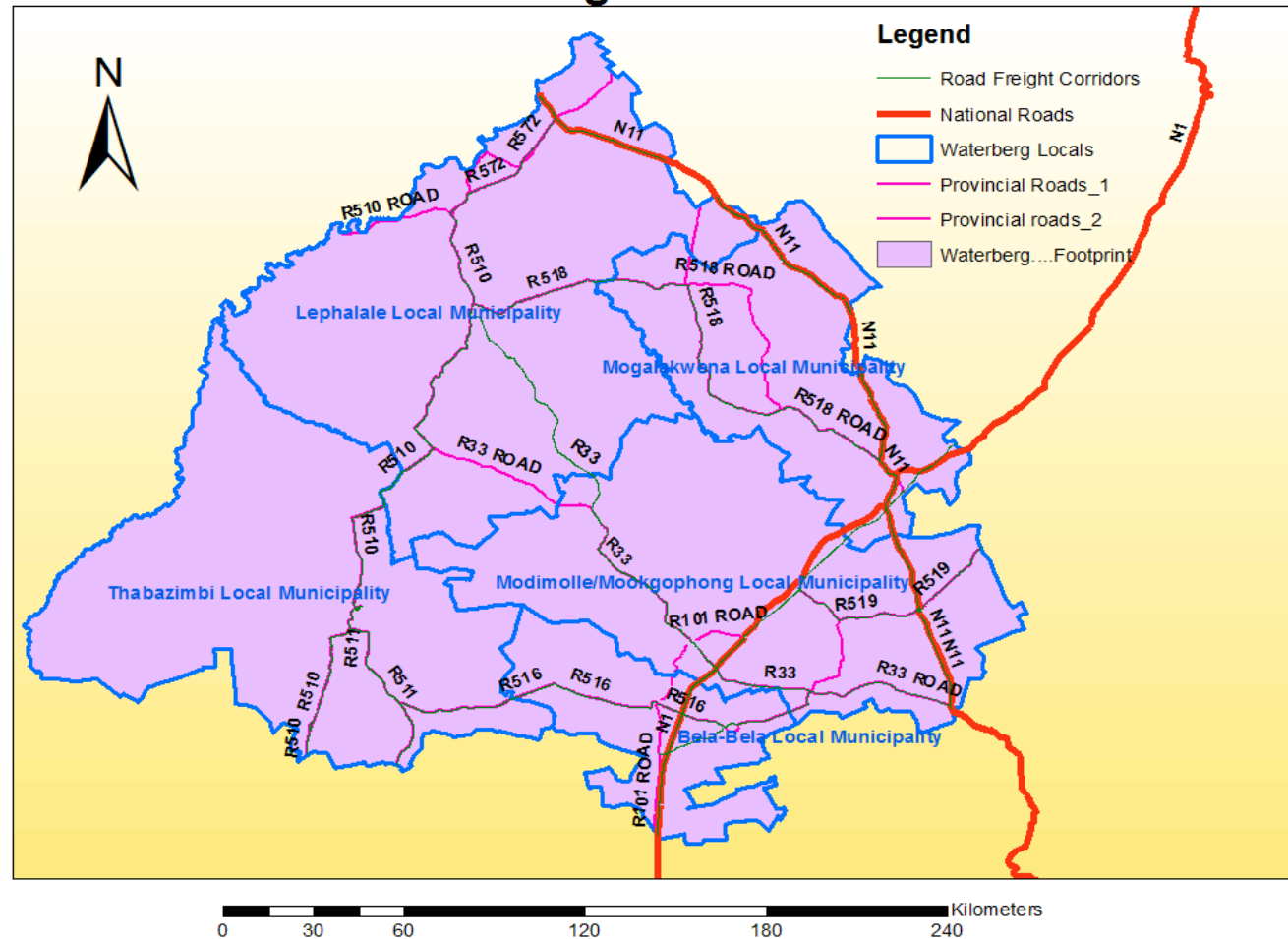
- **Poor access roads**



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Waterberg District Municipality Road Freight Corridors



3.2.5 WASTE MANAGEMENT

The municipality developed the Integrated Waste Management Plan which allocated the function of solid waste disposal sites. The function involves: determination of waste disposal strategy, regulation of waste disposal and the establishment, operation, and control of waste disposal sites, bulk waste transfer facility and waste disposal facilities. In implementing its function the municipality has a role to ensure that waste management systems are in place in all its local municipalities. General waste collection in the District Municipality is domestic, commercial, industrial and institutional. Currently most of the waste is collected from households, followed by commercial industries.

STATE OF REFUSE REMOVAL IN URBAN AND RURAL SETTLEMENTS.

According to Stats SA 2011, only 39% of the households in the Waterberg District Municipality have access to acceptable refuse removal service levels. Modimolle has the highest percentage of households with access to refuse removal services (73.3). It is followed by Bela Bela ,69.7 and Mookgophong 64.1%. Thabazimbi 60.4% and Lephalale 41.0%. Mogalakwena has the lowest percentage of households with access to refuse removal services at 26.8%.

Waste Collection Methodology

Bela- Bela

Settlements that receive municipal waste collection are Bela- Bela and Pienaarsrivier. Generally, the municipality provides waste management fairly in their jurisdiction.

Modimolle-Mookgophong

The Municipality has two land fill sites in Mabatlane and Modimolle/Phagameng. The Modimolle/Phagameng landfill site has 320 000m³ and the total general waste collected is 840 000 m³ per year. Currently there is a need to relocate the Modimolle Town Land fill site as there is a township development process undertaken in extension 10. The refuse dumps existing in the municipal area have reached their life span capacity. This brings a challenge as there is no land to construct a new land fill site in the municipality. Settlements that receive regular waste collection services in the Mookgophong Municipality are in the urban areas of Naboomspruit, Mookgophong, Roedtan and Thusang. Other areas in the municipal jurisdiction utilize the informal dumping sites, communal dump, own refuse dump and have no refuse disposal means. Generally there is waste collection in all municipalities as indicated in the Waste management Plan of the District municipality. There is a need of improving the rate of collecting waste as the settlements in the municipalities are growing. It is important that the District municipality including the local municipalities improve the waste management as collection of waste management does not only improve the environment of the community. It also forms as a base for employment creation and revenue generation for the municipalities.

Mogalakwena

General waste collection in the municipality is found from domestic or households. Settlements that receive municipal waste collection are Mokopane, Mahwelereng and Rebone. The municipality like all municipalities in the Waterberg District Municipality does not provide the service in rural areas. In mining areas, the latter provide the service.

Thabazimbi

Settlements that receive municipal waste collection services are Thabazimbi, Regorogile, Rooiberg, Northam and Leeupoort. Other settlements in the municipality in the remote rural areas do receive the service. In mining areas, the mines collect the waste for the settlements near their jurisdiction.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Lephalale

Generally waste collected is domestic or household waste mostly in urban areas especially in town. Like other municipalities the provision of the service in rural areas is limited. Communities depend on backyard dumping sites and communal sites.

TABLE 62: REFUSE REMOVAL BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY

Municipality	Households below basic Level of service/Backlogs
Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality	1 804
Mogalakwena	7 384
BelaBela	16 611
Thabazimbi	None
Lephalale	12 003

Source: Stats SA Community Survey 2016

MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG BACKLOG

TABLE 63: WATER, ELECTRICITY SANITATION AND REFUSE REMOVALS BACKLOGS

Services	Total no of households	Households with access	Households without access	Total backlogs
Water	28977	28047	930	930
Electricity	28977	27173	2279	2279
Sanitation	28977	25454	3 523	3523
Refuse Removal	28977	27173	1804	1804



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

MOGALAKWENA

Waste Management Access and Backlogs

The number of households whose refuse is removed by local authority weekly has increased from 16.9% in Census 2001 to 26.8% in Census 2011, while those households whose refuse was removed less frequently than once a week declined from 0.8% to 0.4% during the reference period. The percentage of households depending on a communal refuse dump increased slightly from 1.1% to 1.3% between 2001 and 2011. There was a slight increase in the percentage of households that owned their own refuse dumps. Finally, there was a decrease in the proportion of households without any refuse disposal from 9.7% in Census 2001 to 7.7% in 2011. The table below shows the various waste disposal methods per households.

TABLE 64: ACCESS TO REFUSE REMOVAL SERVICES

Total no of household		Removed by local authority/private company at least once a week		Removed by local authority/private company less often		Communal refuse dump		Own refuse dump		No rubbish disposal		Other	
2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
70132	79396	11839	21286	610	347	789	996	50114	50256	6775	6101	6	410
Source: Statistics South Africa (Stats SA), Census 2001 and 2011													

Removed by local authority/private company/community members at least once a week	Removed by local authority/private company/community members less often than once a week	Communal refuse dump	Communal container/central collection point	Own refuse dump	Dump or leave rubbish anywhere (no rubbish disposal)	Other
15921	11479	10331	336	191321	7384	5223
Source: Statistics South Africa (Stats SA), Community Survey 2016						



TABLE 65: BELA-BELA NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS IN RECIEVING WASTE COLLECTION AS DEFINED BY THE WASTE COLLECTION SERVICE STANDARDS, MUNICIPAL DATA

TYPE OF HOUSEHOLDS	NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS
Suburb	1 360
Townships	7 539
Village	5 177
Indigent	2 535
TOTAL	16 611
Informal settlements	3 327 no receiving waster services (backlog)

CHALLENGES WITH REGARD TO REFUSE DISPOSAL AND ANY OTHER RELEVANT INFORMATION REGARDING WASTE MANAGEMENT

In general, the residents, businesses and institutions are main producers of municipal solid waste. Some of the waste is hazardous and require special handling to protect humans and the environment. These hazardous wastes include pesticides, petrochemicals, medical wastes and heavy metals. Unfortunately, most of landfills are unlicensed, and are located within the leaching distances of both human beings and plants nor are they recycled. The municipalities are not strong in controlling both solid and hazardous wastes.

- Limited number of disposal sites to cover the all communities in municipal areas.
- The geographic area is large and it comprised of mostly rural areas, with scattered villages with low population densities and poor quality roads.
- Increased residential development in urban areas often without concurrent increase in resources.
- Illegal dumping areas both in urban and rural settlements.
- Most dumping sites have reached their capacity levels.
- Limited financial resources to establish new dumping sites.
- Refuse removal service is not up to the required standards.



3.2.6 PUBLIC TRANSPORT

TABLE 66: PUBLIC TRANSPORT CORRIDORS

Mogalakwena	LEPHALALE	MODIMOLLE- MOOKGOPHONG	BELA-BELA	THABAZIMBI
From P19/2(Viana) /R518/N11 to Mokopane From Masodi (D3521) to George Masibe Hospital / Bakenberg (D4380 From Nallie (D3505) to George Masibe Hospital / Bakenberg(D4380) to Mokopane (R518/ N11) From Magabane (D3556/D3550) to Bakenberg(D4380) to Mokopane (R518/N11) From Cleremond (D3540/ D3537) to Bakenberg (D4380) to Mokopane (R518/N11) From Segole (D3561) to Mokopane (N11) From Steilooop/ Uitzech/ Ga - Molekane N11 to Mokopane From Mapela Cross Road/ Hans / Ga – Kara (D4380/ D3500) to Mokopane (R518/ N11) From Sandsloot (D3500) to Mokopane (R518 /N11) From Tshamahansi (N11) to Mokopane From Mahwelereng (Dudu Madisha Drive) to Mokopane From Moshate / Sekgakgapeng (N11) From Seleka/ Shongwane	From Steinbokpan (D1675) / Marapong (D2001) to Lephalale Town From Ga – Seleka (R572/ R510 to Lephalale Town From Thabo Mbeki (D3110/R518 / R510) to Lephalale Town From Shongwane (R518 / R510) to Lephalale Town From Lephalale (R510) to Thabazimbi From Lephalale (R510/R33) to Vaalwater / Modimolle and Pretoria (N1)	From Mabatlane (R33) to Modimolle Town From Mabaleng (P240/1 & R33) to Modimolle Town From Katjibane (D1444, R516, P184 & R33) to Modimolle Town From Bela – Bela (R101) to Modimolle From Modimolle Township (Joe Slovo, Alf Makaleng , Thabo Mbeki & Mandela Drive) to Modimolle Town From Mokopane (R101) to Mookgophong From Zebediela / Roedtan(R519) to Mookgopong From Zebediela / Roedtan (R519, D943, R33, D2756, R516, D936 and N1) to Pretoria	From Bela – Bela Township to Bela Bela Town (Thabo Mbeki Drive / R101) From Hamanskraal/ Pienaarsrevier / Radium (R101) to Bela Bela Town From Katjibane(D1444 / R516 / R576) to Bela – Bela Town From Rapotokwane (D2536/ R576) to Bela – Bela Town From Modimolle (R101) to Bela – Bela	From Sandfontein (R510) to Northam (R510)and to Thabazimbi Town(R510) From Swartklip Mine (D869) to Northam From Swartkop / Smesher Block (R510) to Thabazimbi Town / Northam From Amandebult (R510) to Thabazimbi Town/ Northam From Regorogile to Thabazimbi Town

(R518) to Mokopane (N11) From Zebedela (P18/1) to Mokopane From Polokwane (N1/ R101) to Mokopane From N11 / R101 South to Mokopane				
--	--	--	--	--

TABLE 67: TAXI OPERATIONS IN WDM

Local Municipality	Total Number of Routes
Bela-Bela	13
Modimolle-Mookgophong	10
Mogalakwena	64
Lephalale	12
Thabazimbi	41
TOTAL	140



TABLE 68: BUS OPERATIONS IN WDM

Local Municipality	Total Number of Bus Terminals	Total Number of Formal Bus Terminals	Total Number of Informal Bus Terminals
Bela-Bela	1	0	1
Modimolle-Mookgophong	1	0	1
Mogalakwena	4	1	3
Lephalale	3	2	1
Thabazimbi	0	0	0
Total	9	3	6

Waterberg District Municipality's CPTR**RAIL OPERATIONS**

At present, no commuter rail transport services are in operation in the Waterberg District Municipality. The whole rail network in the Province is owned by Transnet Freight Rail formerly known as Spoornet, serving only long distance passengers. The infrastructure is in relatively good condition and the rail stations in Mogalakwena, Modimolle-Mookgophong, , Bela-Bela and Pienaarsrivier are the main stations serving mainline passengers. The following lines cover the district:

Modimolle - Mabatlane line. The line from Modimolle to Mabatlane covers a distance of 74 kilometres. This railway line had been traditionally used for the transportation of agricultural produce. Utilising the line for tourism should be considered more especially that there has been some interest expressed in the past to operate a steam train;

Mookgophong - Zebediela line. The line from Mookgophong to Zebediela covers a distance of 84 kilometres and was used in the transportation of agricultural produce and citrus fruit such as oranges. In addition, passengers were often transported over weekends by special trains from Johannesburg;

Northam - Thabazimbi and Lephalale line;

Northam to Thabazimbi is a distance of more or less 46 kilometres. There are mining shafts near the following halts and stations:

Northam; Tussenin; Chromedale; and Thabazimbi.

LIGHT DELIVERY VEHICLES

LDVs are generally used as public transport in all areas of Waterberg District Municipality, especially in remote rural areas and farming areas, such as GaSeleka and Steilloop. LDVs may be used as means of transport for scholars, but they have been rejected in some municipalities within the Waterberg District Municipality, particularly in Mogalakwena. The concern has been that, in terms of an accident, it looks very ugly. The option was to subsidise scholars who use either taxis or buses. However, LDVs may be used for conveying agricultural produce, not people.

NON-MOTORISED TRANSPORT

In some areas NMTs are used as an alternative mode of transport, especially in areas such as Mokopane, Steilloop, Modimolle, Bakenberg, Moshate and Tshamahanse etc. It should be noted that in some parts of the Waterberg District Municipality the NMTs have been formalised as a recognised mode of transport which is in line with intermodalism. It emerged during the consultation workshops that these modes of transport play a significant role in conveying goods and people and that it should be fully incorporated into the transport system of the district. However, there is a need for policy and strategy to promote the use of these modes.

METERED TAXI OPERATIONS

Metered taxi operations have been identified as one of the significant operations in some municipalities such as Mogalakwena, particularly because of their complementary role they could play in providing transport during awkward hours. Trains from Gauteng and the surroundings drop people very early in the morning and late in the evenings. As a result, other unofficial transport providers take advantage and rob poor passengers who are stranded at that time. They either pay unreasonable amounts or they do not reach their destinations. Other Municipalities reject such operations, particularly in Thabazimbi. More information still needs to be gathered on meter taxi operations for inclusion in this report.

TRANSPORTATION OF LEARNERS

At present, there is official scholar transport system for learners available in certain municipalities which include Mogalakwena, Modimolle - Mookgophong, Lephalale, Bela-Bela and Thabazimbi local municipalities. Urban learners rely on foot or by public transport, private transport, private school buses or privately arranged special transport to go to school.

What came out consistently in relation to learner transport is that:

Transport for learners should be affordable and subsidised;

Public transport be made accessible to enable learners reach the educational institution on time;

Non-motorised transport for learners be implemented;

They rejected LDVs as means of transport for learners; and

Reduce the distance learners have to walk to and from school provide safe, reliable and affordable transport for learners.

TRANSPORT FOR PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES

From our observation; the current public transport system in WDM does not seem to be user-friendly for disabled persons. The general lack of public transport infrastructure in the area is the main reason for this problem. It may even be stated that there are basically no public transport facilities available for disabled persons in the area.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

The following are the specific principles and objectives that have to be achieved as part of the development of a strategy for addressing the needs of persons with disabilities:

Proper information systems and communication structures (before and during the journey);
Specialist transport services (e.g. dial-a-ride type services);
The design of vehicles/rolling stock so as to allow for people with disabilities (special and normal vehicles);
Special care during the design of public transport facilities, including ablution facilities;
Ensuring access to public transport facilities and vehicles for the mobility impaired; and
Creating institutional and financial opportunities.

TRANSPORT CHALLENGES AND ANY OTHER RELEVANT INFORMATION REGARDING PUBLIC TRANSPORT

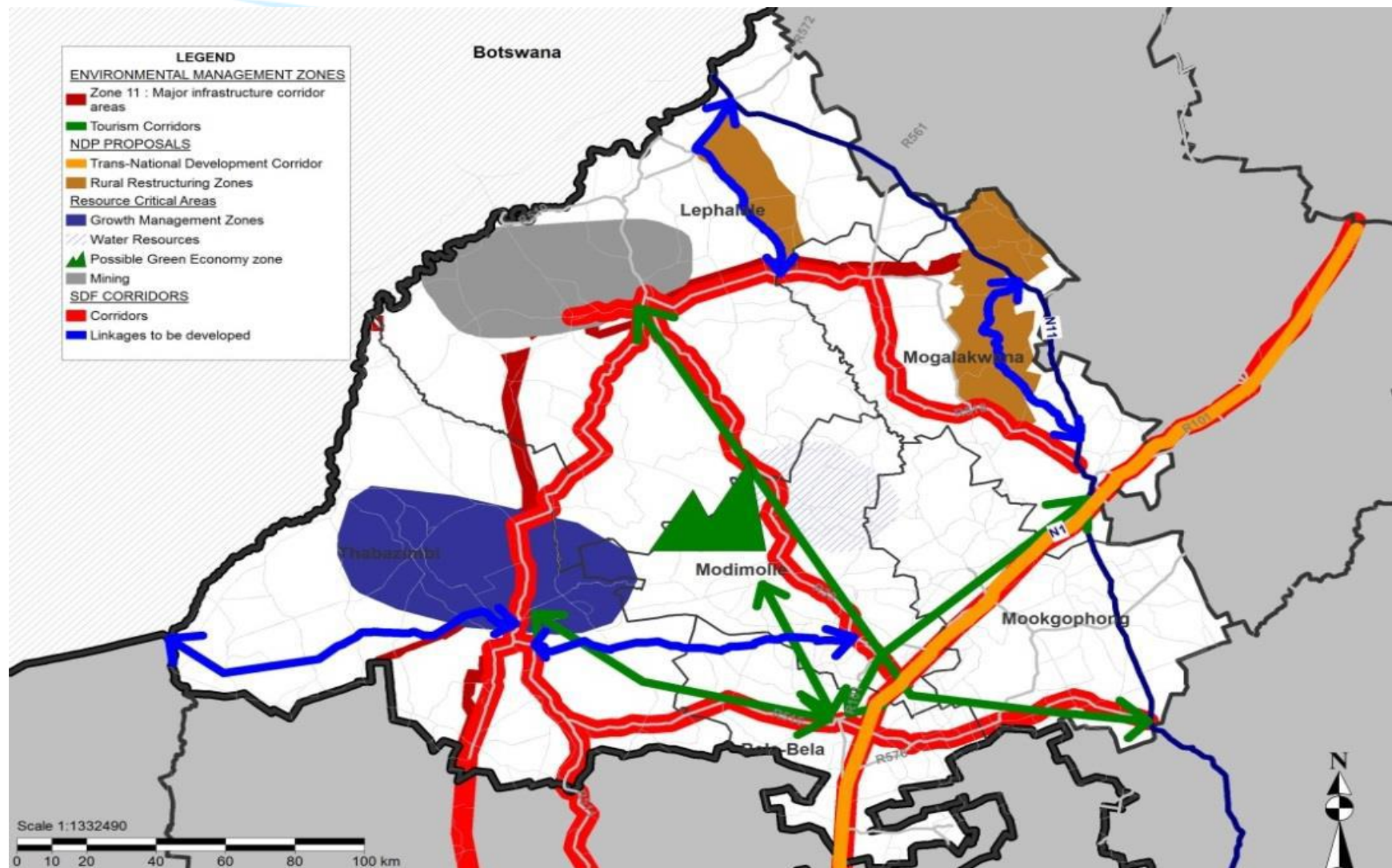
- Recapitalisation of roadworthy taxis;
- Accidents;
- Lack of transport facilities; and
- Conflicts among taxi operators.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

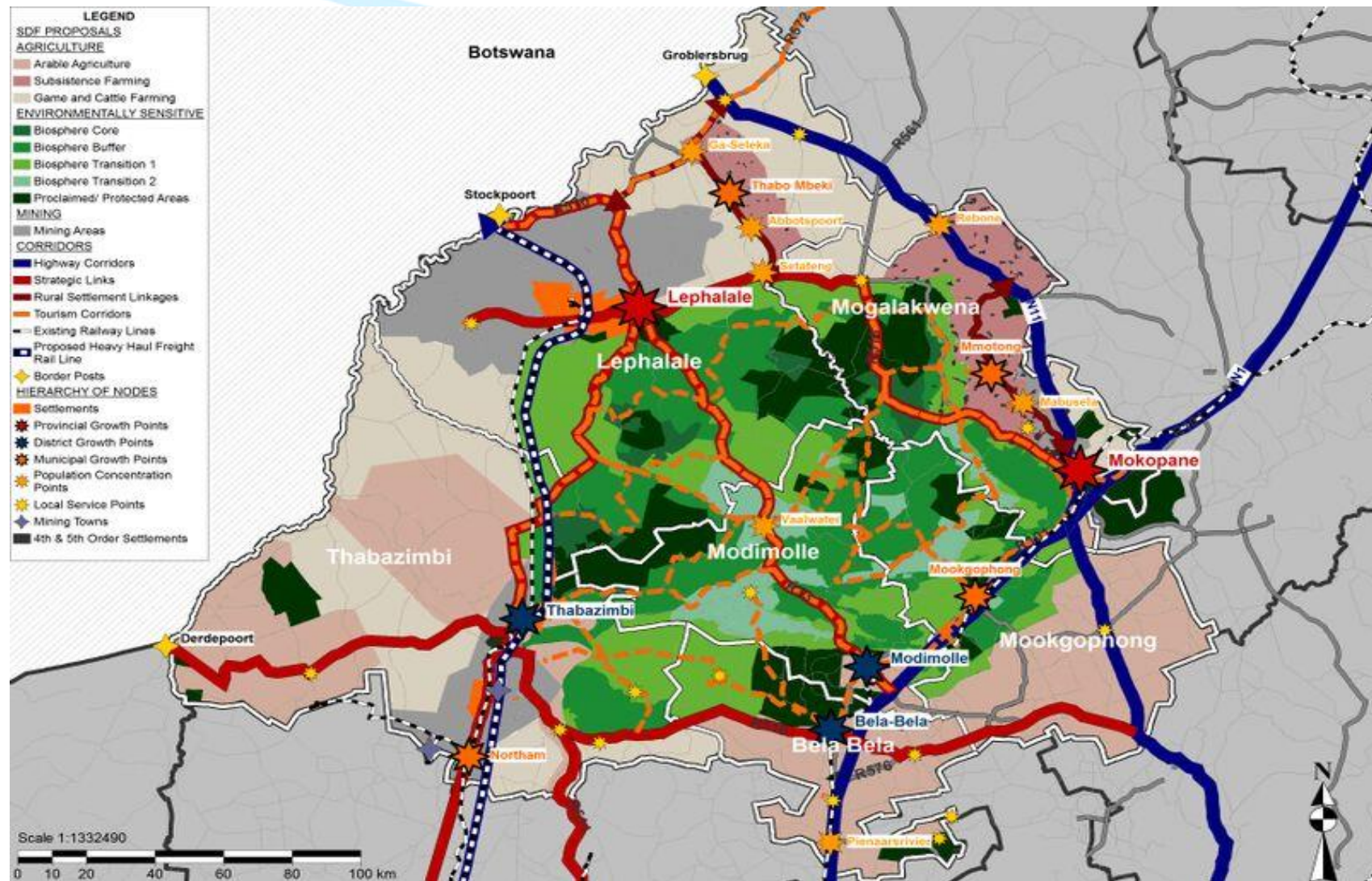
Map 19: Networks & Corridors



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 20: Rail Facilities



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

Internal Factors	STRENGTHS	WEAKNESSES
	Co-ordination of District forums	Unavailability of district Infrastructure, (Lack of project identification)
	Support to the LMs in terms of eradicating service delivery backlogs	Lack of sector plans Lack of Operation and Maintenance plans
External Factors	OPPORTUNITIES	THREATS
	Accessibility to Roads Infrastructure grant	The municipality not being water service authority nor provider
	work opportunities through EPWP programme	Lack of funding
	Implement Rural Household Sanitation at Local Municipalities within the district	

3.3 SOCIAL ANALYSIS

INTEGRATED AND SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENT

WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY - HOUSES COMPLETED SINCE 1994

3.3.1 HOUSING

The right to adequate housing is enshrined in the Constitution (Act 108 of 1996) and it states that everyone has the right to have access to adequate housing and that the state must take reasonable legislative and other measures within its available resources to achieve the progressive realization of this right. Housing is the competency of National government. All housing challenges and programmes are governed by the Housing Act 1997 (Act No.107 of 1997). The Housing Act is the supreme housing law in the country, repealing all other housing legislation that come before it. The National Housing Code is developed in line with the housing act.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Municipality	Units Allocated	Completed Houses	Difference	Housing Demand
Thabazimbi	2,130	1,649	481	10,035
Modimolle-Mookgophong	8,944	8,926	18	856
Lephalale	6,201	5,546	655	6,812
Belabela	1,950	1,941	9	5,046
Mogalakwena	8,733	8,181	552	3,636
Grand Total	27,958	26,243	1,715	26,385

TABLE 69: WDM HOUSING DEMAND/BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY

Municipality	Backyard rental	Rural	Gap market	Social	CRU	Project Linked	BNG/IRDP	Total Backlog
Bela- Bela	N/A	N/A	400	N/A	N/A	1100	250	2750
Lephalale	6300	3801	660	2546	7000	450	N/A	20575
Modimolle -Mookgophong	500	3000	700	N/A	N/A	N/A	1000	5200
Mogalakwena	3080	22101	N/A	N/A	60	1 200	N/A	26441
Thabazimbi	910	5762	970	1970	N/A	4250	N/A	13862
Grand total								68 828

Challenges pertaining to Housing Provision and other relevant information in Relation to Housing

- Poor quality of RDP houses.
- Inadequate land for development.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

3.3.2 EDUCATION

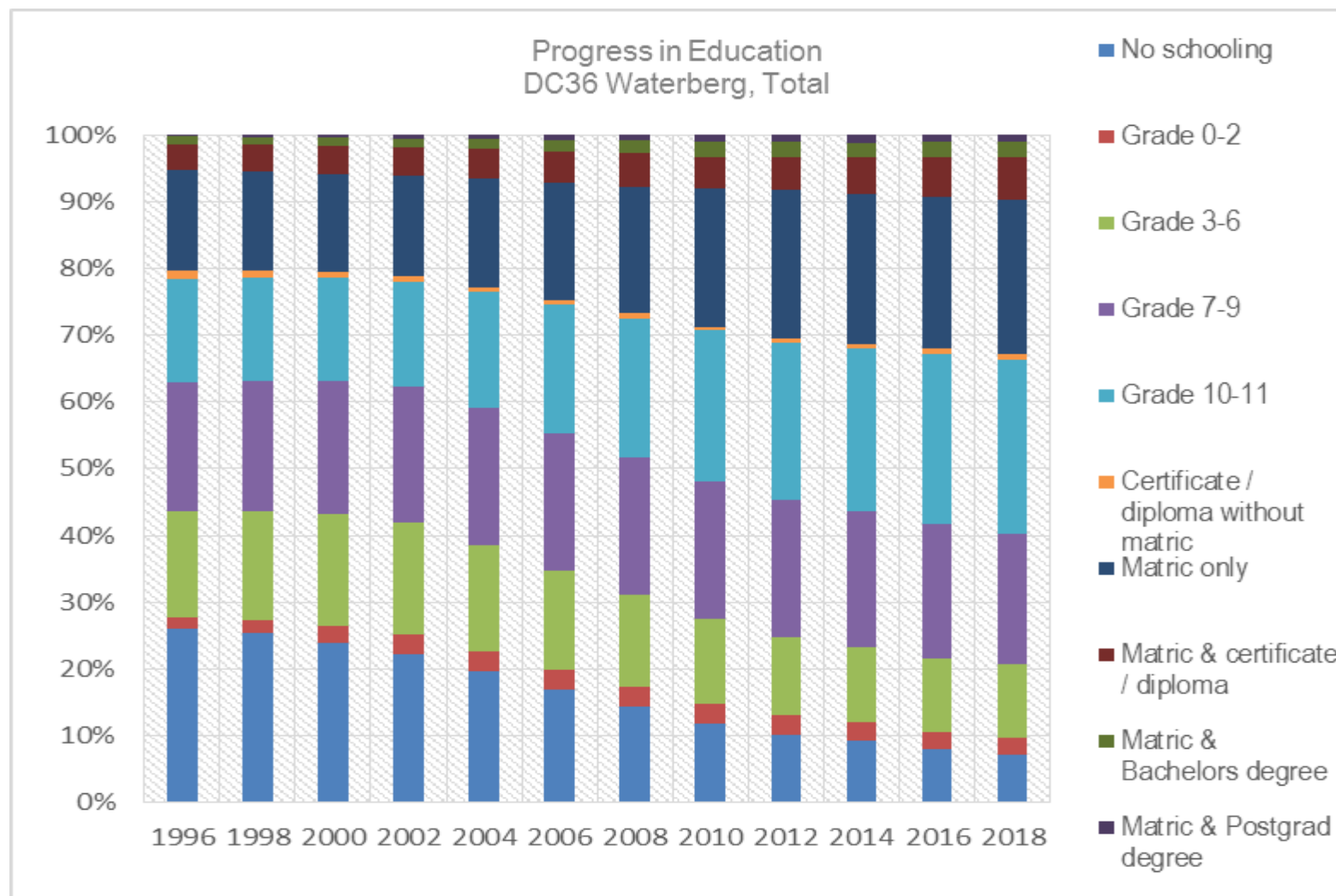
EDUCATION PROFILE

With regards to the level of education in the District, the number of people with 'matric and a certificate/diploma' increased with an average annual rate of 4.48%, while the number of people with a 'matric and a Bachelor's' degree increased with an average annual rate of 3.74%. Overall improvement in the level of education is visible with an increase in the number of people with 'matric' or higher education. The number of people without any schooling in the Waterberg District Municipality decreased between 2008 and 2018 with an average annual rate of -4.90%, while the number of people within the 'matric only' category increased from 73,500 to 111,000.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

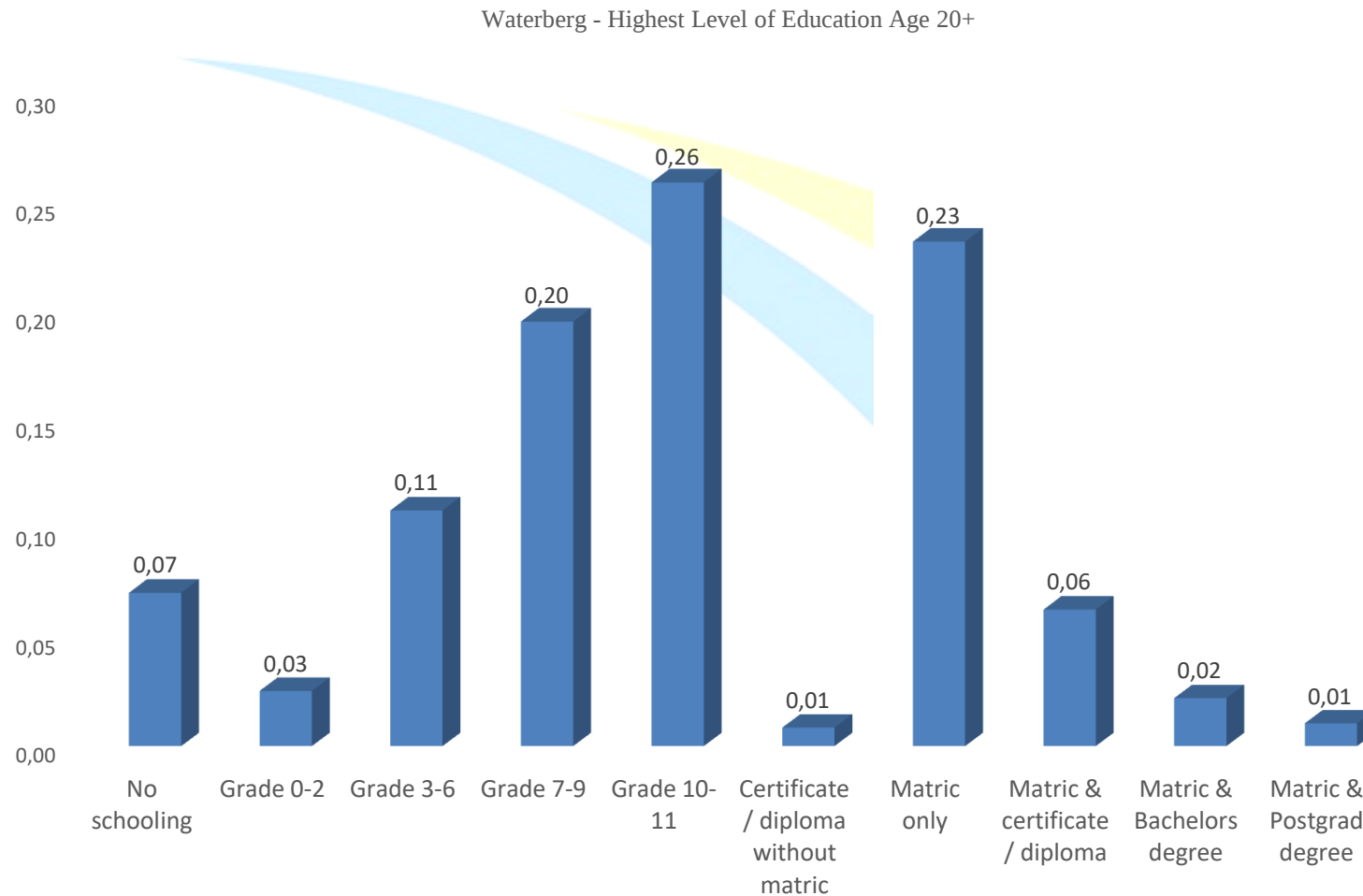


EDUCATION LEVELS-AGE 20+



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth



In 2020, 76 730 learners in the Limpopo Province wrote Grade 12 exams. Of these learners, 53 254 passed, which translates to 69.4%, and depicts a 3.8% improvement on the 2016 Grade 12-pass rate, where the district obtained a figure of 69.4%. The District increased its percentage of learners with a “Bachelors’ pass” from 18.4% in 2016, to 21.4% in 2017 and 23.5% in 2020, with 17 999 learners achieving a “Bachelors’ pass”.

TABLE 70: SCHOOLS AND LEARNER ENROLMENT PER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY (2020)

Local Municipalities	Secondary schools	Primary schools	Combined schools	Special Schools	Independent schools	ECD Centres
Lephalale	32 schools 12588 Learners	55schools 23899 Learners	3 schools 594 Learners	1 school	1 school	59
Mookgopong	3schools 2239 Learners	5schools 4213 Learners	2 schools 412 Learners	0	1 school	5
Mogalakwena	94schools 32344 Learners	136 schools 57198 Learners	3 schools 518 Learners	1 school	12 schools	96
Modimolle	8schools 6400 Learners	21schools 12562 Learners	0	1 school	2 schools	29
Bela-bela	6schools 4572 Learners	13schools 9937 Learners	1 school 538 Learners	1 school	2 schools	10
Thabazimbi	6schools 3086 Learners	20schools 8397 Learners	2schools 760 Learners	0	3 schools	24

Source: Dept of Education 2020



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

Early childhood development is one of the priority areas of the South African government and remains a critical policy issue that the Department of Social Development aims to address. Early years in life are critical for acquisition of perception-motor skills required for reading, writing and numeracy in later years. It is for this reason that resources are geared towards the promotion of access to ECD. Capricorn District Municipality has the highest proportion of 0-4 age group attending an ECD, followed by Waterberg District Municipality. The highest proportion of individuals attending an ECD was found among those aged 4 years, while the lowest attendance figures were found among the 0-year age group. As reflected in table 6 above there are 223 ECD centres in the Waterberg District Municipality.

There are currently no public universities or campuses of public universities in the Waterberg District Municipality. One private Higher Education Institutions (Better Best Educational Projects PTY LTD) was registered with the Department of Higher Education and Training in 2017. There are two registered Further Education and Training (FET) Colleges in the district, namely; Lephalale FET College and Waterberg TVET College.

The Waterberg TVET College spans across two municipalities including Lepelle Nkumbi Local Municipality – Lebokwomo (engineering), Mahwelereng (Business School and IT centre) Mokponane (hotel school), Thabazimbi, Rooywal Sterk Revier (Agriculture). Waterberg TVET has enrolment 4 191 students. There are no community colleges in the Waterberg District, however there were 74 Community Learning Centres (CLCs) with a total of 2 090 students enrolled.

The Lephalale FET College has an enrolment of 2 612 students and is strategically situated in the economic hub of the Limpopo province, where mining opportunities are booming close to Medupi Power Station, Exxaro Coal Mine and Matimba Power Station and has two campuses Thabazimbi and Modimolle. The Lephalale TVET College offers a range of courses that include: business studies; hospitality; engineering studies; nature management; and computer science. Lephalale TVET also offers artisans, plumbing, welding and end-user computing and welding amongst other things.

Encouragingly, Murray & Roberts is training hundreds of artisans at the Tlhahlong training centre in partnership with the college and the Manufacturing, Engineering and Related Services Sector Education and Training Authority. Siemens has supported this centre with significant capital investment. The National Skills Fund (NSF) is currently funding a total of 1 090 beneficiaries in the Waterberg District, at a total cost of R108 228 115 (for the total duration of the programmes), for workplace learning programmes, in the form of learnerships, internships and apprenticeships. The actual expenditure for the 2019/20 financial year is currently R32 921 806. The learners are in workplaces in Mokopane, Dooredraai, Modimolle, Mogalakwena, Lephalale and Belabela local municipalities.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

The internships, learnerships and apprenticeships are currently provided in the Agriculture, Hospitality, Tourism, Building and Civil construction, Information Technology and Engineering sectors. The Artisan project, which is going to be implemented in the Mokopane local municipality has not yet started. SETAs fund skills programmes that are run by cooperatives, CBO's, NGO, small, medium and large employers, and other organisations. SETAs also fund learners for workplace learning programmes (work integrated learning, apprenticeships). The projects/interventions amounted to R7 498 604 for 2019/20, intended to benefit a total of 267 beneficiaries.

In a region rich with mineral resources, potential in agriculture and tourism, the education sector in the Waterberg District should be able to produce the type of skills that would correspond with those required by the regional economy. Therefore, adequate skills in engineering, hospitality and agriculture will be required to support the developing mining, tourism and agricultural economies in the region.

TABLE 71: POPULATION OF WATERBERG BY MUNICIPALITY AND HIGHEST EDUCATION LEVEL

	Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Bela-Bela	Mogalakwena	Total
Gade 0	1 639	3 203	2 612	1 806	12 017	21 277
Grade 1 / Sub A	1 730	3 140	3 340	1 902	9 666	19 778
Grade 2 / Sub B	1 887	3 048	3 258	1 850	9 780	19 823
Grade 3 / Std 1/ABET 1Kha Ri Gude;SANLI	2 202	3 352	3 614	2 034	10 764	21 966
Grade 4 / Std 2	2 493	3 814	4 230	2 238	11 726	24 500
Grade 5 / Std 3/ABET 2	2 826	4 001	4 324	2 438	12 007	25 596
Grade 6 / Std 4	2 975	3 889	4 420	2 649	12 473	26 405
Grade 7 / Std 5/ ABET 3	4 464	5 558	8 276	3 293	14 994	34 546
Grade 8 / Std 6 / Form 1	5 309	6 464	7 492	4 794	20 128	44 188
Grade 9 / Std 7 / Form 2/ ABET 4	4 707	6 502	6 150	3 537	19 553	40 450
Grade 10 / Std 8 / Form 3	7 039	9 137	7 860	4 827	25 045	53 908
Grade 11 / Std 9 / Form 4	6 925	9 843	7 668	5 529	25 628	55 592
Grade 12 / Std 10 / Form 5	15 067	16 706	14 942	11 211	38 044	95 969

NTC I / N1/ NIC/ V Level 2	156	452	135	70	598	1 410
NTC II / N2/ NIC/ V Level 3	212	540	124	60	574	1 510
NTC III /N3/ NIC/ V Level 4	301	718	207	136	579	1 942
N4 / NTC 4	242	643	135	107	354	1 480
N5 /NTC 5	124	518	75	51	283	1 050
N6 / NTC 6	217	766	224	108	700	2 015
Certificate with less than Grade 12 / Std 10	86	185	103	65	254	693
Diploma with less than Grade 12 / Std 10	162	191	175	92	294	914
Certificate with Grade 12 / Std 10	806	918	709	461	1 997	4 890
Diploma with Grade 12 / Std 10	1 033	1 296	999	866	3 311	7 506
Higher Diploma	677	1 230	1 180	935	2 811	6 832
Post Higher Diploma Masters; Doctoral Diploma	104	216	179	114	405	1 019
Bachelors Degree	471	796	750	554	1 576	4 147
Bachelors Degree and Post graduate Diploma	220	327	296	209	651	1 703
Honours degree	247	332	311	222	972	2 083
Higher Degree Masters / PhD	135	227	202	149	411	1 123
Other	156	204	150	165	473	1 149
No schooling	5 919	7 431	8 532	4 604	28 706	55 192
Unspecified	-	-	--	-	-	-
Not applicable	14 701	20 120	13 524	9 425	40 908	98 679
Grand Total	85 234	115 767	104 153	66 500	307 682	679 336

Census 2016



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

POPULATION OF WATERBERG NOT COMPLETING AND COMPLETING PRIMARY EDUCATION

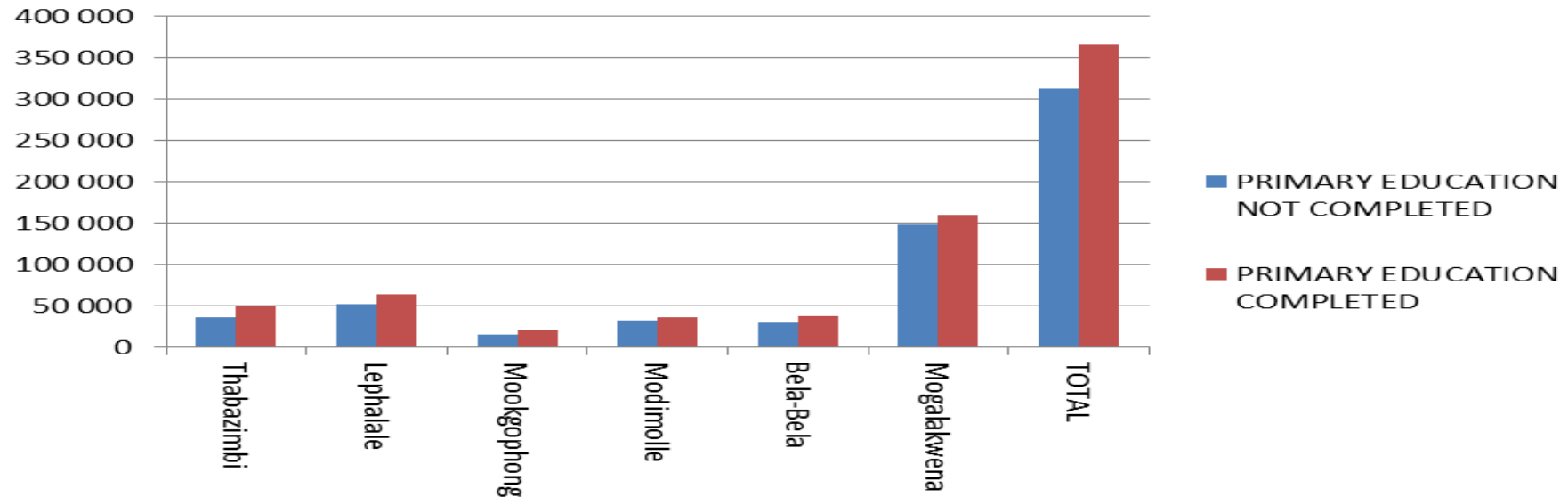


TABLE 72: ENVIRONMENTAL STRUCTURES IN WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

	Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Bela-Bela	Mogalakwena	Total
Primary Education not completed	36 372	51 998	15 269	32 585	28 946	148 047
Primary Education completed	48 860	63 769	20 372	35 931	37 555	159 635
Total	85 232	115 767	35 641	68 516	66 501	307 682

Source: Statistics South Africa, Census 2016

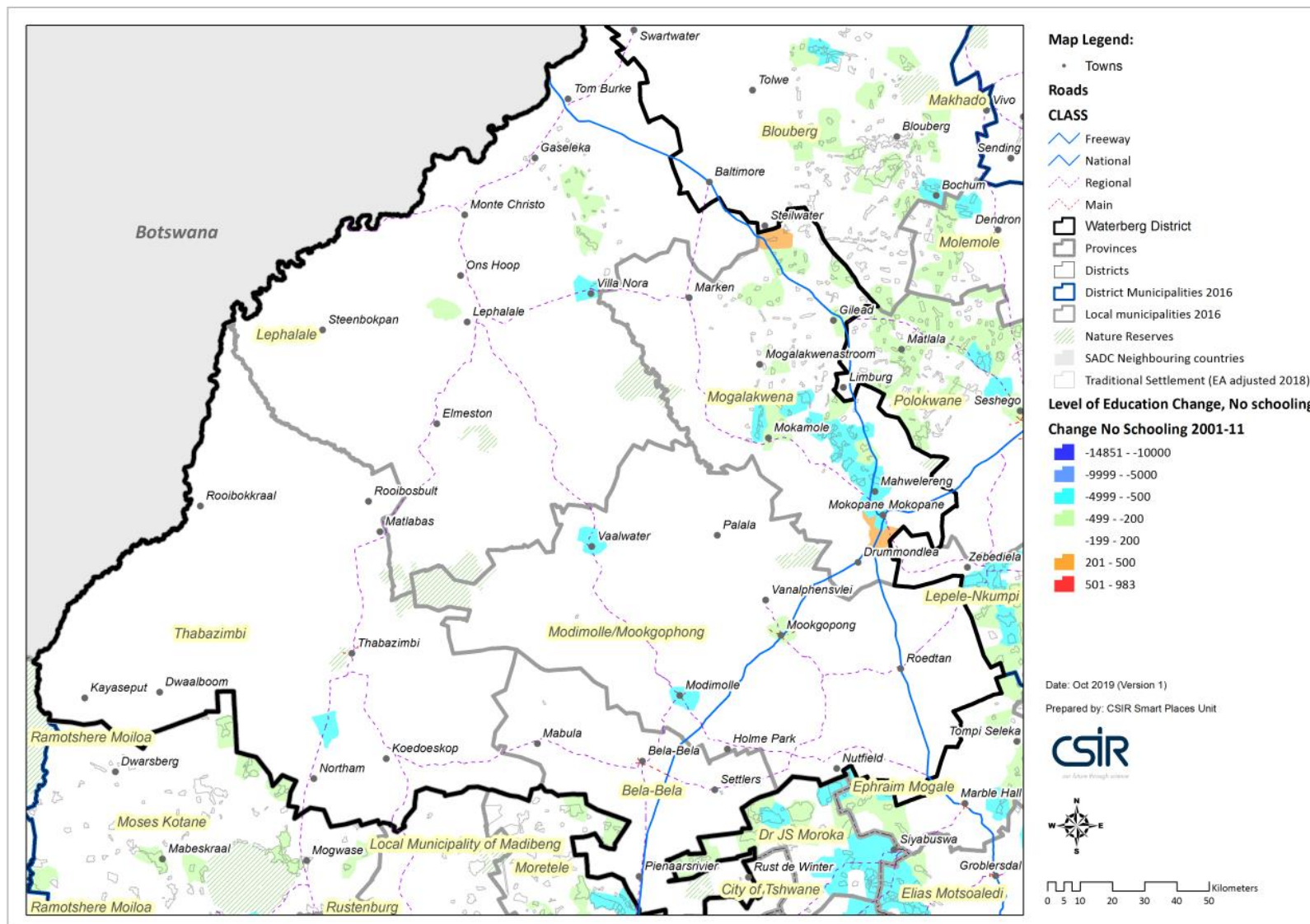
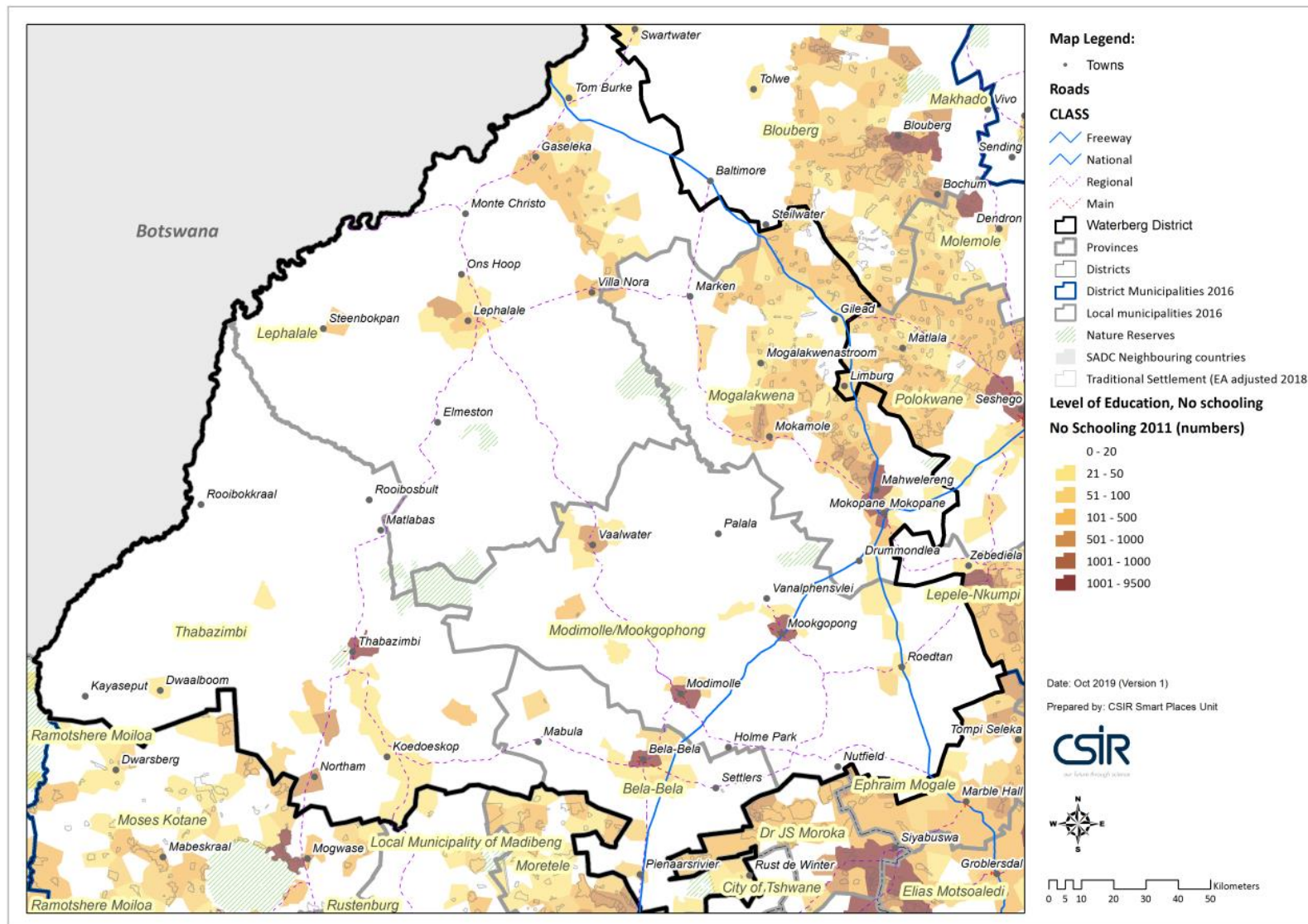


FIGURE 10: 2016 EDUCATION - NO SCHOOLING (A) NUMBERS AND (B) CHANGE FROM 2001-2011

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP



Waterberg
DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 22: Primary and Secondary schools

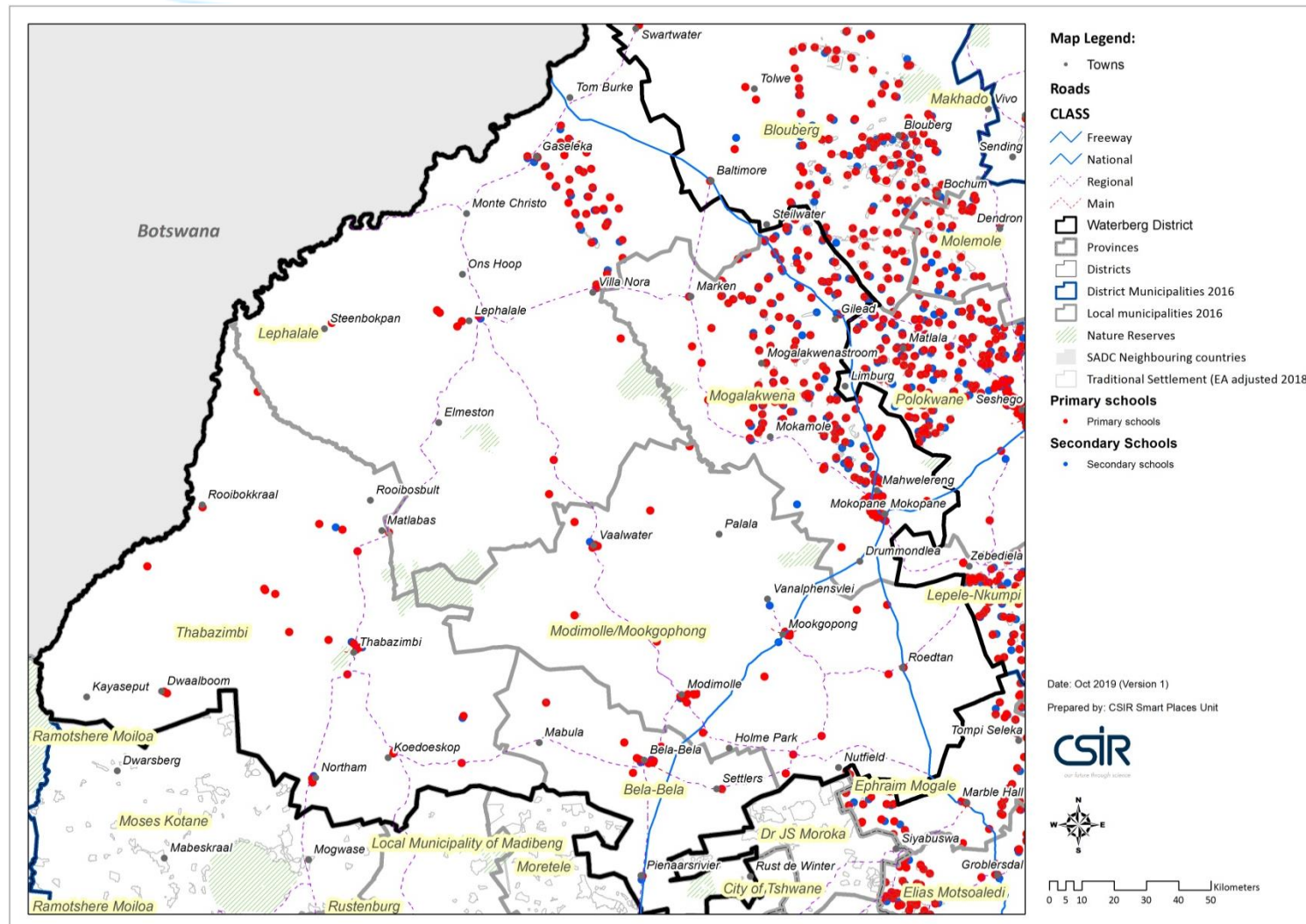


FIGURE 11: PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SCHOOLS (2016).

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

TABLE 73: WATERBERG MUNICIPALITY - NUMBER OF SCHOOLS

Municipality	No of Circuit	No of Secondary	No of Primary	Number of LSEN	No of Combined
Mogalakwena	09	98	148	01	12
Lephalale	03	29	48	01	03
Modimolle-Mookgophong	03	09	28	01	06
Belabela	01	06	13	01	03
Thabazimbi	02	06	12	01	06
total	18	138	249	05	30

TABLE 74: DISTRICTS PERFORMANCE

NAME OF DISTRICT	2021 PERCENTAGE	2021 POSITION	2022 PERCENTAGE	2022 POSITION
Vhembe East	70,8	4	72,3	6
Waterberg 2	71,3	3	77,5	2
Vhembe West	66,9	7	70,8	7
Capricorn South	73,8	1	76,7	3
Mopani East	62,1	8	68,4	8

Capricorn North	67,8	5	75,8	5
Mogalakwena	72,0	2	78,3	1
Sekhukhune South	59,4	9	66,8	9
Mopani West	67,1	6	76,7	3
Sekhukhune East	58,6	10	64,5	10

3.3.3 HEALTH AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT OVERVIEW

The Waterberg District Municipality has a relatively young population with a median age of 23 and a total number of 308 546 children, representing 10% of Limpopo's children. 243 households are headed by children between the ages of 10 to 14. The African population constitutes 91% of Waterberg's population, 61% of them live in poverty. 41% of the households are headed by women.

The district has an unemployment rate of 28.8% as opposed to employment rate of 38.4%, which employment rate is 1.4% higher than Limpopo. A majority of the employed (68%) are employed in the formal sector. 35.9% have completed matric or higher education, with 7% of the population with no formal education. This accounts for the social challenges confronting the district which amongst others relate to unemployment; substance abuse, gender based violence, number of people with no schooling, low average household incomes, crime and disease.

Lephalale has the largest population growth rate at 2.8 % on account of increased economic activity largely driven by Medupi power station and mining activities. Modimolle/Mookgopong municipality has the lowest population growth rate at -0.37% owing to outward migration as result of decline in economic activities. Thabazimbi has the highest proportion of economically active people at 63.7% and Mogalakwena has the lowest proportion of economically active people at 43%. Mogalakwena has the highest unemployment rate (40%) as opposed to Thabazimbi at 20%.

HEALTH

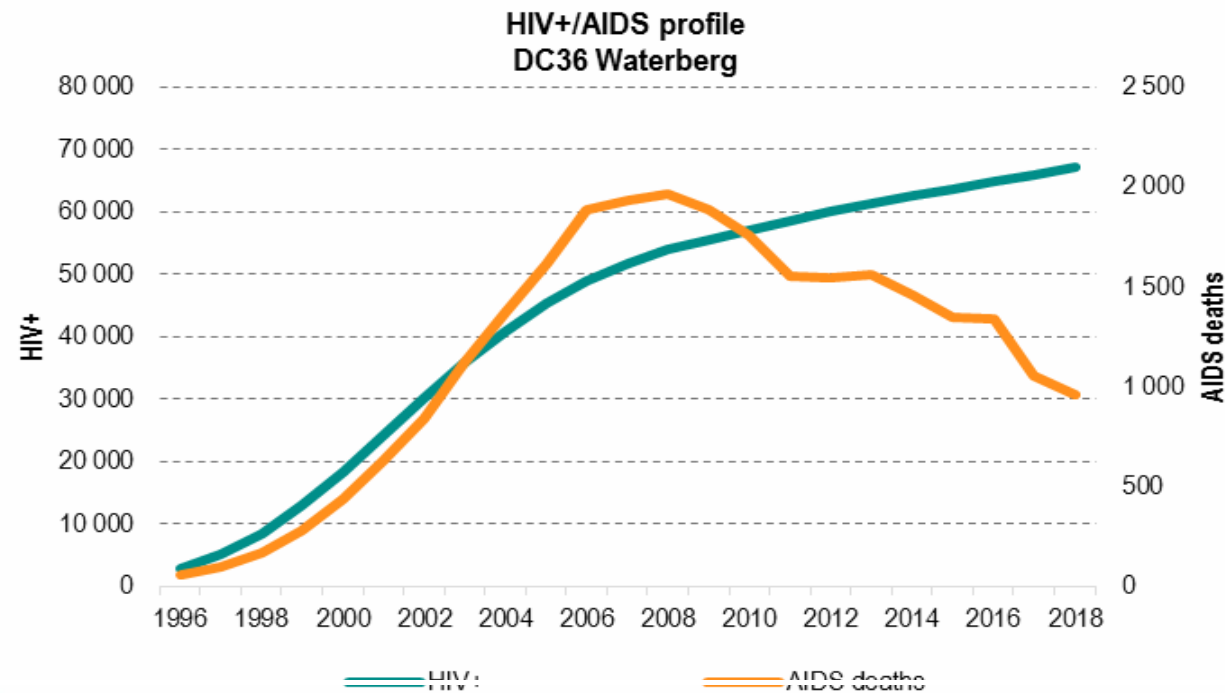
According to the Department of Health the three highest causes of death for children under the age of 5 are: Diarrhoea (22%), lower respiratory infections (20 to 21%) and pre term birth complications (10-12%). The top causes of death for young women between the ages 15-24 are HIV/Aids and TB whereas for young men in the same age group is road accidents and

accidental deaths due to substance abuse. For the 25 to 64 age group the top causes of death for males and females are HIV/AIDS and TB. The top causes of death for the female elderly are: cerebrovascular diseases, hypertensive heart disease and ischaemic heart disease. For elderly males the causes of death are: ischaemic heart disease, cerebrovascular diseases and the lower respiratory infections. 8.5% of the total population is 60 years and above thus requiring, prevention of chronic diseases programs through strategies such as health promotion at community household level, screening and strengthening of PHC re-engineering programme.

In addition, the top 5 causes of death affecting women in the childbearing age group are: indirect maternal (36.2%), other maternal conditions (25.4%), hypertension in pregnancy (17%), abortion (14.1%) and maternal haemorrhage (6.4%).

According to the Department of Health, the leading cause of death is HIV Aids related deaths. There are 65 400 people infected with HIV in Waterberg, this constitutes and 7.1% and 0.9% of people infected with HIV in Limpopo and South Africa respectively. This reflects an increase at an average annual rate of 1.35% since 2008, which is higher than the 1.18% recorded by Limpopo in the same period. However, this is significantly lower than the 2% recorded for South Africa in the same period. The HIV/AIDS infected population represents 8.65% of the district total population in 2018. Amongst the infected people TB is the leading course of death. The challenges experienced in the district regarding TB-infections and fighting the disease include late consultation (with the diseases at an advanced stage) with health care providers and ineffective TB awareness campaigns.

According to the Department of Health, the District has total number of sixty one Primary Health Care (PHC) facilities, three Community Health Centres (CHC), seven District hospitals,



one specialised hospital, one regional hospital and six private hospitals. These facilities render comprehensive health care package to communities the District. In considering the ideal hospital primary health care facilities do not perform well with the lowest possible score recorded in emergency trolleys and resuscitation rooms equipped with factional and basic resuscitation equipment. The facilities in Mookgopong-Modimolle and Mogalakwena require particular attention.

TABLE 75: TOP 5 WORST PERFORMING VITAL IDEAL CLINIC ELEMENTS IN PHC FACILITIES

	Bela-Bela LM	Lephalale LM	Mogalakwena LM	Mookgophong/Modimolle LM	Thabazimbi LM	Overall %
Emergency trolley is restored daily or after each use	50	0	6	0	20	9
Resuscitation room is equipped with functional, basic resuscitation equipment	50	13	51	14	90	48
90% of the medicines on the tracer medicine list are available	100	75	74	43	80	73
Cold chain procedure for vaccines is maintained	100	100	97	71	100	95
The temperature of the medicine room/dispensary is maintained within the safety range	100	100	94	86	100	95

In 2018, the Gini coefficient in Waterberg District Municipality was at 0.61, which reflects a marginal increase in the number over the ten-year period from 2008 to 2018. The Limpopo Province and South Africa had a Gini coefficient of 0.594 and 0.629 respectively.

TABLE 76: SOCIAL SERVICES–HEALTH FACILITIES

MUNICIPALITY	HOSPITALS	CLINICS	MOBILE CLINICS
Bela-Bela	1 (1 Private)	4	2
Lephalale	2 (1 Private)	7	7
Modimolle-Mookgophong	1 (1 Specialised)	7	6

Mogalakwena	3	29	13
Thabazimbi	1	10	4
Waterberg District	11	57	32

Source: Department of Health Waterberg District

TABLE 77: EMS (STATIONS)

Municipality	Station
Bela-Bela	2 (Bela Bela, Pienaarsrivier)
Lephalale	2 (Lephalale , Witpoort)
Modimolle- Mookgophong	3 (Modimolle , Mabatlane Mookgophong)
Mogalakwena	3 (Mokopane, George Masebe, Thabaleshoba)
Thabazimbi	2 (Thabazimbi, Northam)
Waterberg district	12

Source: Department of Health Waterberg District

QUALITY HEALTH CARE FOR ALL

This is one of the targets for the National Development Plan 2030 vision.

A District based approach will assist in making sure that there is quality health care for all the people in the community.

There must be improved management, better trained health professionals, better patient information systems and focus on maternal & infant health care.

DOMINANT TRENDS ON HEALTH ISSUES



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

There is deterioration of population growth due to high level of HIV/AIDS related mortality, which makes population growth rate slowing, birth rate declining and life expectancy increasing.

MORTALITY

SA is affected by 4 epidemics: i.e. HIV/AIDS, Injury (both accidental and non-accident), infectious diseases e.g. TB, diarrhea & pneumonia etc, growing lifestyle diseases e.g diabetes, obesity etc.

Strategic Health Services Challenges

- High rate of teenage pregnancy
- Ineffective HIV/AIDS awareness campaigns
- Ineffective TB awareness campaigns
- Ineffective health inspectors
- Some people in the community are not covered by the km radius to the hospitals and Clinics
- Partners e.g Eskom, PPL mine and Exxaro promising to build clinics + _ 2yrs no progress e.g sekuruwe, Rietfontein, Molekane, Machikiri
- Funds delaying the completion of projects

IMPLICATIONS

- An application of a 5-km radius from each clinic suggests that a number of settlements are not well provided with health facilities.
- Most rural villages are located quite far from the health facilities i.e. beyond the (20) twenty kilometers of reach from hospitals and beyond five kilometers from clinics.
- The need for the provision of either mobile or immovable clinics would need to be determined within these settlements.

TABLE 78: EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT

Municipality	No of ECD centers exist	No of ECD receive funding	How many ECD not funded	Overall backlog for ECD centers	Fully/Conditional registered ECD centres
Bela-Bela	35	7	25	3	32
Modimolle-Mookgophong	65	30	28	7	58
Lephalale	90	43	40	7	83
Mogalakwena	245	148	87	10	235
Thabazimbi	41	11	23	7	34
Waterberg	476	239	203	34	442

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

TABLE 79: DROP IN CENTRES

Municipality	No of Drop in centers exist	No of Drop in receive funding	How many Drop in Centers not funded	Overall backlog for Drop in centers
Bela-Bela	1	1	0	0
Modimolle- Mookgophong	4	4	0	0
Lephalale	8	7	1	0
Mogalakwena	21	18	2	0
Thabazimbi	2	1	1	0
Waterberg	36	31	4	0

TABLE 80: COMMUNITY NUTRITION CENTRES

Municipality	No of CNDC centers exist	No of CNDCi receive funding	Type of NPO operate as CNDC
Bela-Bela	2	2	DIC
Modimolle- Mookgophong	0	0	0
Lephalale	1	0	CNDC
Mogalakwena	1	1	CNDC
Thabazimbi	0	0	0
Waterberg	4	3	0

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT CHALLENGES

- Lack of submission of death certificates to SASSA for system updates.
- Need to educate the youth about teenage pregnancy, STI's and HIV/AIDS.
- Child support is high and of great concern.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

3.3.4 SAFETY AND SECURITY

TABLE 81: POLICE STATIONS

Cluster	Police Station
Bela Bela Cluster	7
Lephalale Cluster	8
Modimolle Cluster	6
Mahwelereng Cluster	6
Waterberg District	27

Source: Department Safety and Security

TABLE 82: WATERBERG DISTRICT POLICE STATIONS

Modimolle Cluster	Mahwelereng Cluster	Lephalale Cluster	Belabela Cluster
Rankin's Pass Naboomspruit Vaalwater Tuinplaas Roedtan Modimolle Dorset Police Station	Mahwelereng Mokopane Saambouberg Tolwe Gilead Tinmyne	Lephalale Villa Nora Hoopdal Witpoort Cumberland Dorset Bulgerivier Tom Burke	Belabela Thabazimbi Northam Pienaarsriver Dwaalboom Rust de winter Rooiberg

Source: Department Safety and Security

TABLE 83: WATERBERG CRIME STATS SIMPLIFIED



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Type of Crime	Crime reported	Top 10 worse Police station precincts	Rating
Contact Crime 2018 - 2019			
Murder	21 – 32 increased	Mahwelereng	4
Sexual Offenses	158 – 147 decreased	Mahwelereng	4
Attempted Murder	21 – 20 decreased	Mahwelereng	3
Assault GBH	546 – 527 decreased	Mahwelereng	4
Common Assault	264 – 335 increased	Mahwelereng	4
Common Robbery	147 – 155 increased	Mahwelereng	4
Robbery with aggravating circumstances	158 – 164 increased	Mahwelereng	10

Source: Department Safety and Security

TABLE 84: WATERBERG CRIME STATS SIMPLIFIED

Type of Crime	Crime reported	Top 10 worse Police station precincts	Rating
Property related crimes 2021 - 2022			
Burglary at residential premises	616 – 583 Decreased	Bela-Bela	7
	487 – 513 Increased	Mahwelereng	4
Theft of motor vehicle and motorcycle	42 – 54 Increased	Bela-Bela	3
	25 – 53 Increased	Northam	4

	32 – 32 Remain same	Modimolle	9
Theft out of or from motor vehicle	127 – 162 Increased	Bela-Bela	9
Stock-theft	44 – 58 Increased	Mahwelereng	6
	4 – 14 Increased	Tinmyne	9

Source: Department Safety and Security

CRIME

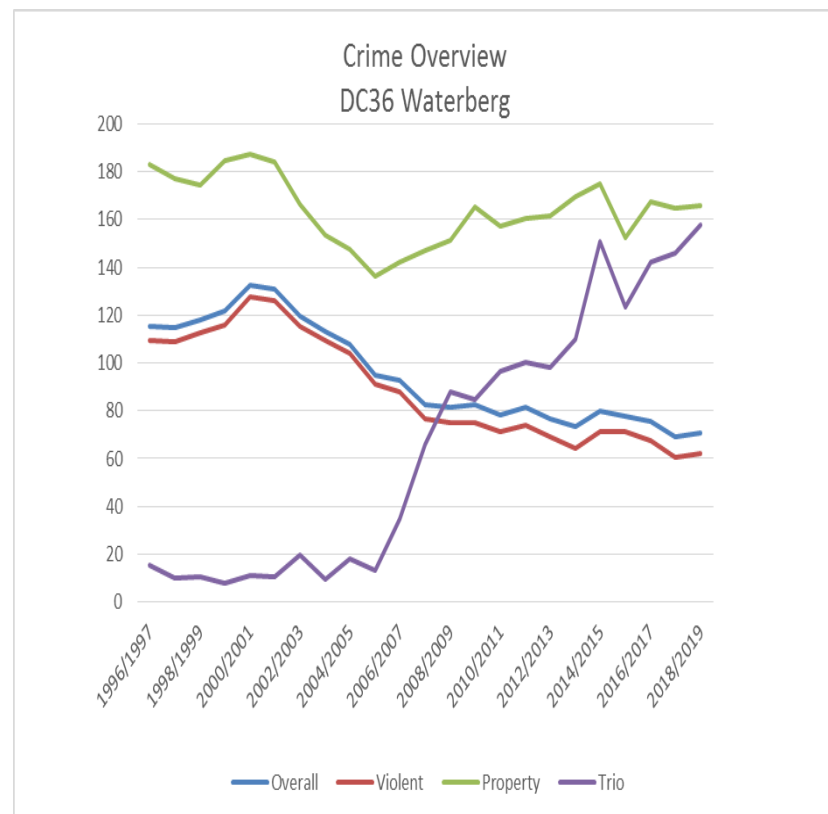
The low levels of skills and limited opportunities in the Waterberg District Municipality resulted in the municipality having the highest overall crime rate of the sub-regions within the overall Limpopo Province in 2022.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 85: CRIME OVERVIEW



Category	2019/20	2020/21	2021/22	Case Difference	% Change
Contact crime	6 363	5 751	6 080	329	5.7
Contact related crime	1 260	1 328	1 438	110	8.3
Property related crime	5	5 546	5 768	222	4.0
Other serious crime	6 083	5 366	5 589	223	4.2
Community Reported Serious Crime	19 530	17 991	18 875	884	4.9

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1800 and Limpopo Province

Backlogs of Safety and Security Facilities

- Not identified by the department
- The DSSL prepared to assist municipalities in safety and security sector planning

Safety and Security Challenges



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

- Monitoring of proper utilization of licenses and permits issued to liquor sellers.
- Illegal operation of unlicensed sheebens and taverns.
- Access to certain crime scenes due to bad conditions of roads and lights.
- Domestic violence (women and child abuse).
- Crime awareness and substance abuse.
- Urgent municipal by-laws.

3.3.5 SPORT, ART AND CULTURE

TABLE 86: SPORTS FACILITIES PER MUNICIPALITY

Municipality	Name of facility	Name of Location	Activities
Modimolle -Mookgophong	1 Ephraim Mogale Stadium Phagameng Sports facilities	Phagameng Location	Netball, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis
	Mookgophong Stadium Mookgophong Multipurpose	Mookgophong	Netball, Volleyball, Basket and outdoor gym facilities
Mogalakwena Municipality	Mahwelereng stadium Bakenberg Stadium Bavaria Stadium Rebone Stadium	Mahwelereng Bakenberg Matlala North Steilloop	Netbank, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis
	Mapela Ga-pila Bakenberg	Netbank, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis	Mapela Sport Centre Ga-pila outdoor courts Bakenburg Stadium
	Mapela Sport Centre Ga-pila outdoor courts	Mapela Ga-pila	Netbank, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis
Lephalale Municipality	Shongoane stadium Thabo Mbeki Stadium Marapong Stadium Mogol Stadium(Private	Shongoane 3 Thabo Mbeki Marapong Location Lephalale Town	Netbank, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis
Thabazimbi Municipality	Thaba- Park Stadium Regorogile Sports Fields	Thabazimbi Town Regorogile Location	It includes a multipurpose Netbank, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis

Belabela	Moloto Sports Fields Sanfa Stadium Belabela Stadium Belabela sports Centre	Bela-bela Location	It includes a multipurpose Netball, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis
----------	---	--------------------	--

LEPHALALE - SPORTS FACILITIES

Sports facilities in both Onverwacht and Marapong are privately owned. Mogol sport centre and Marapong stadium are the two facilities which are available to the community in the urban area. There are public parks with children playing equipment in the urban areas. Some of these parks are maintained although the standard in Marapong is lower as compared to the one in Onverwacht and town. There are only two parks and the third is nearing completion in the entire rural villages although the majority of the population resides in those settlements. There are two enclosed sports field at Ga-Monyeki village and Thabo-Mbeki Township which cater for sporting activities for the community in rural areas. These facilities have been erected some years ago but their standard is not satisfactory.

The third facility was erected at Ga-Seleka village but has since collapsed before it could even be opened to the public. The enclosed sports field in Thabo-Mbeki has been closed to the community as the ablution has been vandalized but nevertheless it is been utilized without permission.

TABLE 87: MUNICIPALITY HALLS AND PARKS

MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG

Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality	Number
Community Halls	5
Sports Facilities	25
Municipal Parks	18

Source: MMLM

MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

PARKs	FACILITIES AT THE PARK	MOOKGOPHONG TOWN	THUSANG	MOOKGOPHONG TOWNSHIP
Park at Modimolle entrance	Open park			
Mokopane entrance	Open park	1 Golf course	1 Stadiums	1 Stadiums
Golfpark entrance	Open park		1 Tennis court facility	Net ball court
Lapa Municipal park	Swimming pool		1 Volleyball court	1 Volleyball court
Main Municipal building	Open park			
Vodacom park in ext3	Children playing equipment			
Roedtan Municipal building	Open park			
Thusang next to community hall	Open park			

Source: Mookgophong social and community services,

BELA BELA

Location	Facilities	Constraints and Challenges
Bela Bela Township	Bela Bela Community Hall i.e. Performing Arts and Culture. Sporting amenities i.e. Netball, Volleyball, Basket Ball and Tennis Court. SUNFA “stadium” Moloto Str “stadium” Bela Bela High Stadium Three Community Park 1 Cemetery facilities 1 library	The Hall is multi – functional because it is also booked for special events and it is not always readily available for sports, arts, culture and recreational activities. The sporting amenities indicated on the column for facilities are the only sporting code facilities available at the municipal level and they is a lot of pressure they encounter due to overuse as a result the facilities are deteriorating very quickly. The long distance travelled by individuals who stay in the remote parts of the township. The condition on the football grounds (stadium) is not satisfactory. The parks do not have the ablution facilities and lights.
Bela Bela Town	Jinnah Community Hall Spa Park Community Hall 1 library	Lack of sports Facilities
Pienaarsriver	Community Hall/Park	Lack of Facilities
Masakhane	1 Cemetery facilities	Lack of facilities

Rus de Winter and Rapotokwane	Community Hall Sport Ground 1 library	These facilities are only located within Rapotokwane.
-------------------------------	---	---

TABLE 88: DISTRICT WIDE LIBRARY INFRASTRUCTURES

NAME OF DISTRICT & LMs	BASELINE/STATUS QUO
Bela-Bela LM	1 library
Lephalale LM	3 libraries
Modimolle -Mookgophong LM	4 libraries
Mogalakwena LM	4 libraries
Thabazimbi LM	2 libraries

Source: Local Municipalities

CHALLENGES

- Provision of Libraries as per norms and standards

IMPLICATIONS

- Training to be intensified on oversight structures
- Proceed with Districtwide shared services approach
- Provision of one Library per 10 000 Household

3.4.6 TELECOMMUNICATION SERVICES

POST OFFICE AND TELECOMMUNICATION SERVICES

- The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality has three post offices and four retail postal agencies. The current postal services are strategically well located and sufficient for the existing demand within the municipality. These facilities must receive regular maintenance to ensure that the facility stays in usable condition.
- **Bela Bela: 3 post office in town, Township, Radium and in Pienaarsrivier.**
- **Mogalakwena: 7 post office: Bakenburg, Mahwelereng, Mapela, Rebone, Sterkrivier and Taueatswala**

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

CHALLENGES

- A need for more post offices in the other areas
- Adherence to the norms and standards
- Delivery in the rural areas

TABLE 89: CEMETRY

MUNICIPALITY	NUMBER OF CEMETRY
Modimolle	11
Bela-Bela	03
Thabazimbi	04
Mogalakwena	21

CEMETRY CHALLENGE

- Poor quality of road
- No ablution facilities
- Limited space for burial



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

CHAPTER 4: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT ANALYSIS

Local Economic Development is an approach to sustainable economic development that encourages local communities, public and private sector to work together to stimulate local economic activities that will result in an improvement in the quality of life for all.

LED aims to increase the standard of living, create more and better jobs, advance skills and build sustained development for the future. It is a practical understanding of what the local area does well and what it has to offer, where its weaknesses and gaps lie as well as where threats and opportunities exist considering the needs of the local area. The main focus is enhancing competitiveness, increasing sustainable growth and ensures that growth is inclusive.

Waterberg District Municipality's economy is characterised mainly by Mining, Tourism and Agriculture. The District is one of the major mining regions within South Africa of which platinum, iron ore, coal and diamonds are mined. The District is also home to internationally renowned icons such as the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve. The fertile soil leading to a competitive advantage in the agricultural sector, and opportunities within this sector still needs to be taken advantage of to their full potential, agro-processing, agri-tourism are such potential opportunities. The area has variety of natural resources, and has the potential to create countless opportunities for the local population to encourage entrepreneurship and economic development.

The District Development Model

Waterberg District Municipality was one of the three pilot municipalities selected to pilot the District Development Model (DDM). On 26 November, the President launched the District Development Model in Lephalale, Waterberg District. This was followed by the launch of the DDM Hub by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (GoGTA) on 05th September 2020. Government is using DDM as a practical model to improve cooperative governance and promote integrated planning, budgeting and implementation on the basis of stakeholder and community involvement, and thereby build a capable and ethical developmental state with strong local government that can respond to current and future needs and effectively implement national priorities.

The Waterberg One Plan has been developed on the following vision: “A tourism and energy hub that enables a participative, investment friendly and diversified economy” with six DDM themes which are Demographics & People Development, Economic Positioning, Spatial Restructuring/Environmental, Infrastructure Engineering, Service Provisioning, and Governance.

The one plan aims to ignite the self-reinforcing sustainability cycle of the district by establishing Waterberg as a well-managed district that enables a participative, investment-friendly and diversified economy. This will result in the Waterberg being a desired investment destination that leverage from its locational advantage with respect to the Gauteng global city region and various international border posts, its global resource competitiveness relating to mineral resources and the unique world heritage site and finally the social potential rooted within the district.

To achieve the economic potential and participative investment from both the private and public sector, governance practices will aim to create an environment in which economic participation can be unlocked by on the one hand creating more opportunities in the form of primary, secondary and tertiary economic sector development - focused on establishing mining, tourism and agriculture value chains and accelerating growth through optimized functional linkages between activities – and on the other hand stimulating potential participants in the form of a skilled Labour force, SMME incentivization and international investors.

ECONOMIC PERFORMANCE

The Gross Domestic Product (GDP)

The economic state of the Waterberg District Municipality is put in perspective by comparing it on a spatial level with its neighbouring district municipalities, the Limpopo Province and South Africa as a whole.

With a GDP of R 83 billion in 2021 (up from R 42.8 billion in 2011), the Waterberg District Municipality contributed 17.57% to the Limpopo Province GDP of R 472 billion in 2021 increasing in the share of the Limpopo from 18.66% in 2011. The Waterberg District Municipality contributes 1.34% to the GDP of South Africa which had a total GDP of R 6.21 trillion in 2021 (as measured in nominal or current prices). Its contribution to the national economy stayed similar in importance from 2011 when it contributed 1.29% to South Africa.

In 2021, the Waterberg District Municipality achieved an annual growth rate of 6.16% which is a significant lower GDP growth than the Limpopo Province's 7.00%, and is higher than that of South Africa, where the 2021 GDP growth rate was 4.91%. Contrary to the short-term growth rate of 2021, the longer-term average growth rate for Waterberg (-0.72%) is significant lower than that of South Africa (0.91%).

GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE, CONSTANT 2010 PRICES]

	Waterberg	Limpopo	National Total
2011	-1.4%	2.5%	3.2%
2012	0.4%	1.3%	2.4%
2013	1.8%	2.5%	2.5%
2014	-0.3%	1.0%	1.4%
2015	2.3%	1.9%	1.3%
2016	-4.3%	0.1%	0.7%
2017	0.9%	1.4%	1.2%
2018	0.2%	1.2%	1.5%
2019	-1.4%	-0.1%	0.1%
2020	-11.9%	-7.3%	-6.4%
2021	6.2%	7.0%	4.9%
Average Annual growth 2011-2021	-0.72%	0.84%	0.91%

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2236

Local municipalities contribution into the district's GDP

The greatest contributor to the Waterberg District Municipality economy is the Thabazimbi Local Municipality with a share of 33.96% or R 28.2 billion, increasing from R 15.6 billion in 2011. The economy with the lowest contribution is the Bela-Bela Local Municipality with R 6.2 billion growing from R 3.07 billion in 2011. Mogalakwena had the highest average annual economic growth, averaging 0.66%

between 2011 and 2021, when compared to the rest of the regions within the Waterberg District Municipality. The Mookgopong/Modimolle Local Municipality had the second highest average annual growth rate of 0.19%. Thabazimbi Local Municipality had the lowest average annual growth rate of -2.69% between 2011 and 2021.

GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2011 TO 2021, SHARE AND GROWTH

	2021 (Current prices)	Share of district municipality	2011 (Constant prices)	2021 (Constant prices)	Average Annual growth
Thabazimbi	28.18	33.96%	14.96	11.40	-2.69%
Lephalale	17.54	21.14%	9.75	9.01	-0.79%
Bela-Bela	6.20	7.47%	3.80	3.74	-0.16%
Mogalakwena	20.89	25.18%	12.84	13.71	0.66%
Mookgopong/Modimolle	10.16	12.25%	6.78	6.91	0.19%
Waterberg	82.96		48.13	44.77	

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2236

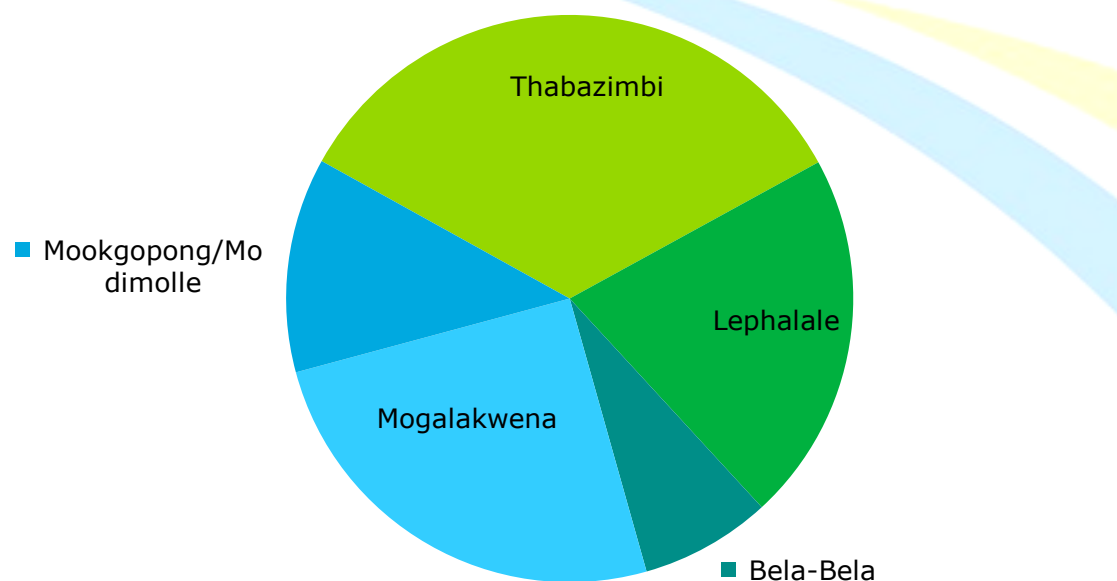


© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Gross Domestic Product (GDP)

Waterberg District Municipality, 2021

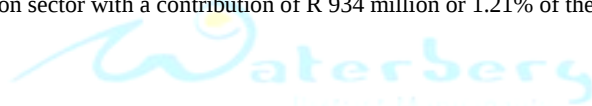


Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2236

Gross Value Added (GVA)

The Waterberg District Municipality's economy is made up of various industries. The GVA-R variable provides a sector breakdown, where each sector is measured in terms of its *value added* produced in the local economy.

In 2021, the mining sector is the largest within Waterberg District Municipality accounting for R 49.3 billion or 63.9% of the total GVA in the district municipality's economy. The sector that contributes the second most to the GVA of the Waterberg District Municipality is the community services sector at 11.2%, followed by the finance sector with 8.6%. The sector that contributes the least to the economy of Waterberg District Municipality is the construction sector with a contribution of R 934 million or 1.21% of the total GVA.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [R BILLIONS, CURRENT PRICES]

	Waterberg	Limpopo	National Total	Waterberg as % of province	Waterberg as % of national
Agriculture	2.1	13.5	150.9	15.8%	1.41%
Mining	49.3	134.2	481.0	36.7%	10.25%
Manufacturing	1.3	10.3	726.4	12.2%	0.17%
Electricity	1.2	14.8	171.9	8.2%	0.70%
Construction	0.9	7.7	139.0	12.2%	0.67%
Trade	5.4	57.0	759.8	9.4%	0.71%
Transport	1.7	14.9	392.3	11.1%	0.42%
Finance	6.7	71.0	1,319.9	9.4%	0.51%
Community services	8.6	102.6	1,422.3	8.4%	0.61%
Total Industries	77.2	426.0	5,563.5	18.1%	1.39%

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2236

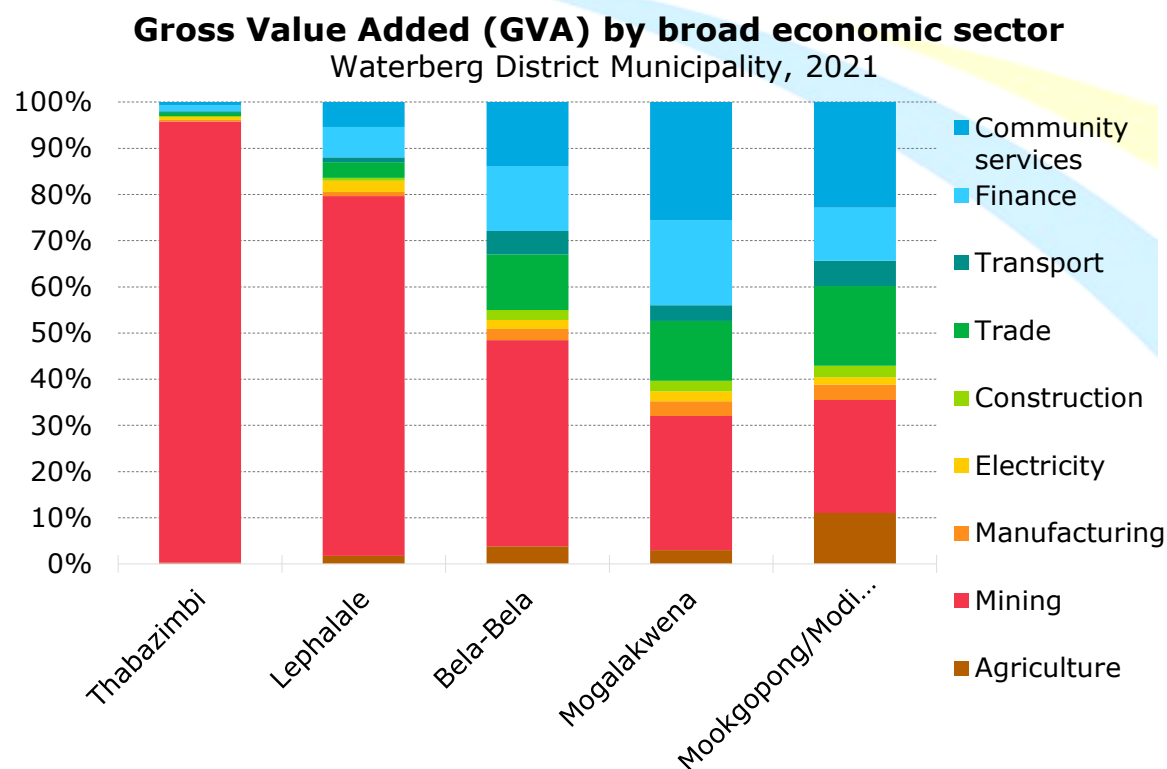
The community sector, which includes the government services, is generally a large contributor towards GVA in smaller and more rural local municipalities. When looking at the regions within the district municipality, the Mogalakwena Local Municipality made the largest contribution to the community services sector at 54.71% of the district municipality. As a whole, the Mogalakwena Local Municipality contributed R 18.5 billion or 23.98% to the GVA of the Waterberg District Municipality. The region within Waterberg District Municipality that contributes the most to the GVA of the district municipality was the Mookgopong/Modimolle Local Municipality with a total of R 8.96 billion or 11.61%.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION]



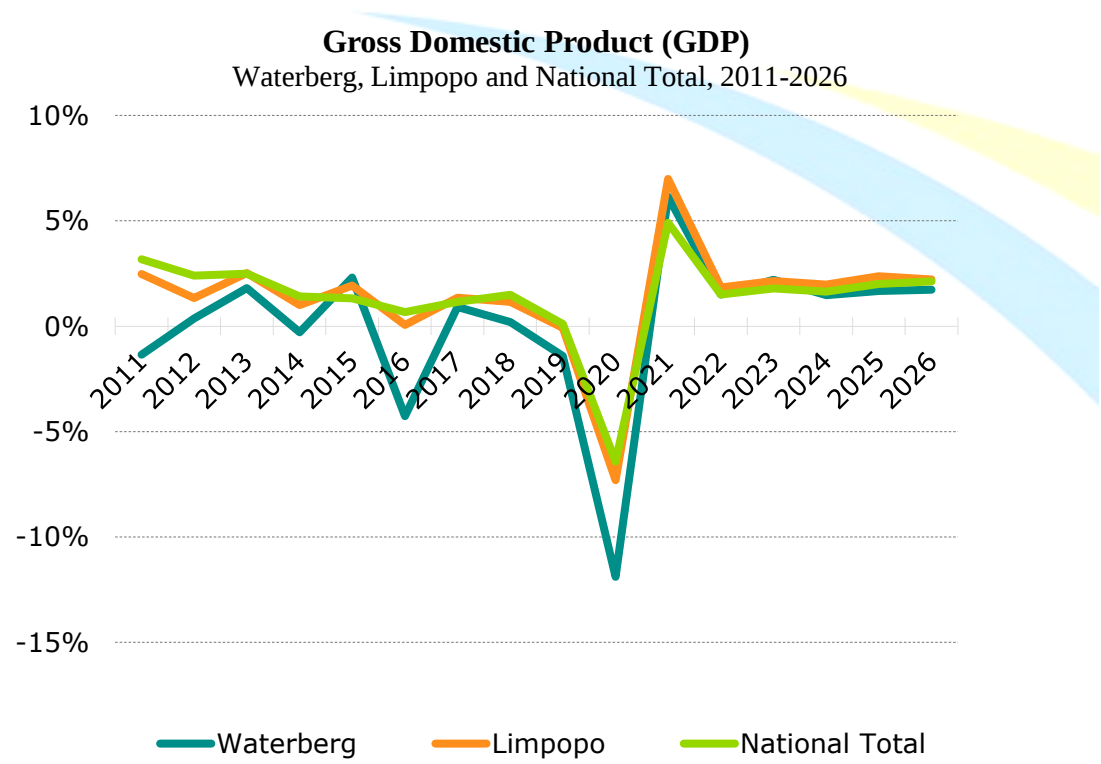
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2236

Economic Growth Forecast

It is expected that Waterberg District Municipality will grow at an average annual rate of 1.72% from 2021 to 2026. The average annual growth rate of Limpopo Province and South Africa is expected to grow at 2.11% and 1.81% respectively. In 2026, Waterberg's forecasted GDP will be an estimated R 48.8 billion (constant 2010 prices) or 14.4% of the total GDP of Limpopo Province. The ranking in terms of size of the Waterberg District Municipality will remain the same between 2021 and 2026, with a contribution to the Limpopo Province GDP of 14.4% in 2026 compared to the 14.7% in 2021. At a 1.72% average annual GDP growth rate between 2021 and 2026, Waterberg ranked the lowest compared to the other regional economies.

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

Gross Domestic Product (GDP) - Waterberg, Limpopo and National Total, 2011-2026 [Average annual growth rate, constant 2010 prices]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2236



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

ECONOMIC SECTORS

MINING

The district is one of the major mining regions in South Africa with platinum, iron ore, coal and diamonds as the main resources. Importantly, the district, houses 40% of the national coal reserves. Other minerals in the district include chrome, platinum, nickel, tin, tungsten, palladium, iron and minerals of the future. The district also houses the fourth largest power station (Medupi) in the world and the largest remaining known coal reserves in South Africa.

According to the Department of Mineral Resources, there is a total of forty-seven (47) mining licenses issued by the Department of Minerals and Energy. Of the 47 issued licences twenty (20) operational mines, twenty-seven (27) mines non-operational due to, companies that are under care and maintenance, lack of funding, appeals, and water use licences.

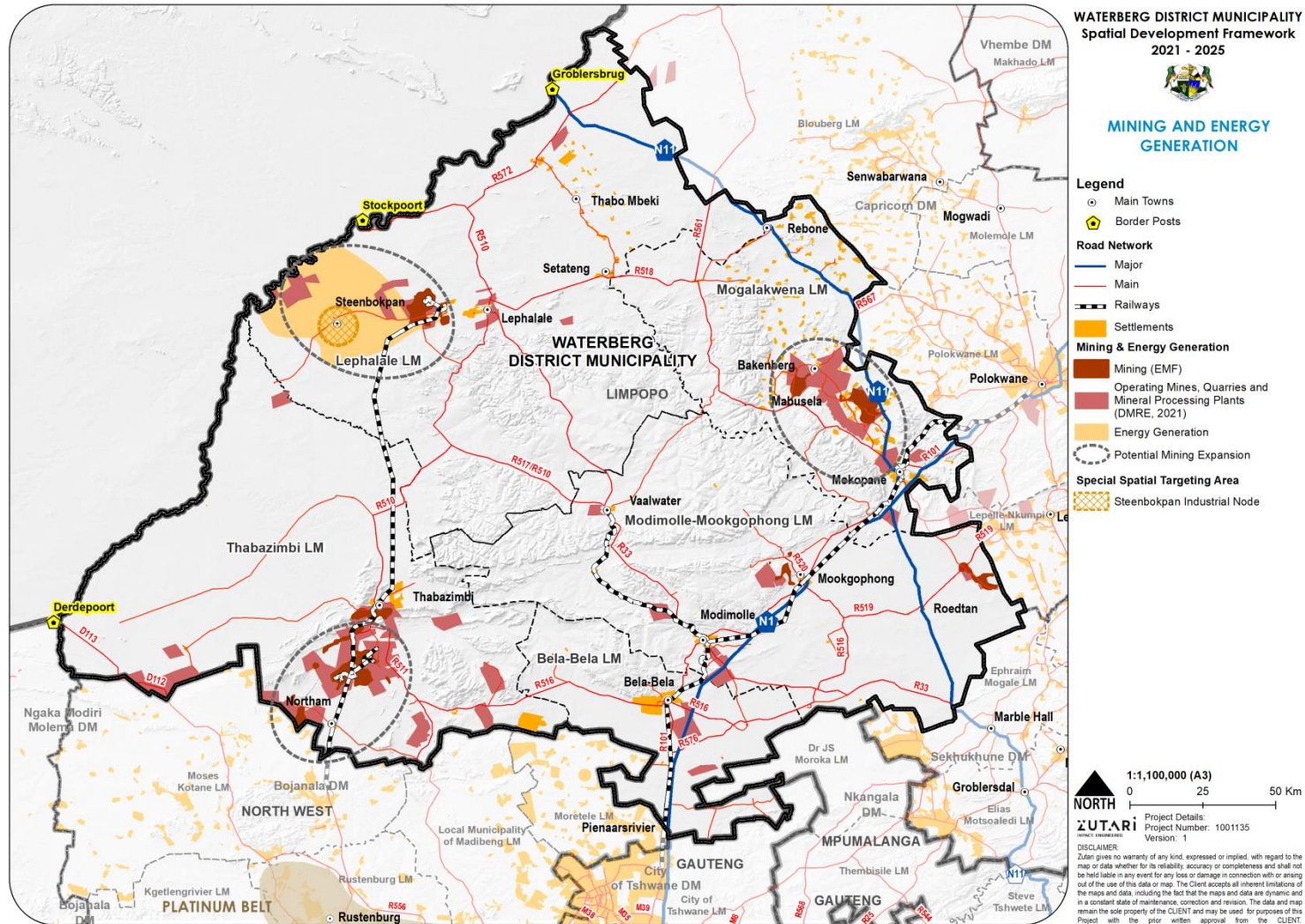
Right holders are obliged to commence with operations within 120 days for prospecting and 1 year for mining from the date of issuing of the right. In addition to the non-operational mines listed above, there is total of nineteen (19) applications are pending.

Municipality	Status of the mine		Commodity
	Operational	Non-operational	
Lephalale	1	9	Coal, Quartzite, clay and platinum
Thabazimbi	9	7	Iron ore, chrome, limestone
Mogalakwena	5	7	Granite, vanadium and platinum
Modimolle/Mookgopong	4	2	Clay, andalusite, quartz and sandstone, aggregate
Belabela	1	1	Diamonds and Calcite
Total	20	27	

In addition, the Department of Mineral Resources (DMR) has issued about 125 prospecting rights. There is a potential of these prospective rights to graduate and become mining rights in future. The Department has also issued 59 mining permits within the district. Mining permits in its nature have a potential to create jobs of maximum period of five year on a small scale.



Map 22: Mining Sector Map



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Areas of comparative advantage in the mining sector

The mining industry in the municipal area contributes largest to the economic development of the district. The Waterberg area is the largest production area of platinum in the province of Limpopo and the mining of coal and petroleum development in Lephalale has increased demand for the commodity for electricity generation. The raw minerals are a direct input into manufacturing/ processing presenting an opportunity for Waterberg to diversify,

Minerals found in the district include chrome, platinum, nickel, tin, tungsten, coal, iron and many other metals that have contributed to the flourishing of the mining industry in the district. The sector's output in the district is mainly characterized by extraction with limited value addition and diversification.

Lephalale local municipality has been identified by the Limpopo economic growth and development plan as an energy cluster and has attained the status of national development node. The coalfields, which boast more than 40% of the total coal reserve of South Africa, are located in Lephalale. The coal resource in the Waterberg field is estimated at 76 billion tons, which is more than 40% of the national coal reserve. Minerals found in the district include chrome, platinum, nickel, tin, tungsten, coal, iron and many other metals that have contributed to the flourishing of the mining industry in the district.

The Waterberg One Plan's strategy on the mining sector is to focus on mining as the most important economic sector of Waterberg District Municipality. The Waterberg District mining sector has been operational for many years. Aside from the Thabazimbi iron ore mines, the region produces vast quantities of platinum at Mokopane and Northam areas. It's coalfield at Lephalale, fuels a major Eskom power station, but its remaining reserves of the black gold are largely untapped." And the beneficiation strategy which is linked to the mining sector seeks to unlock potential and ability to encourage growth and create jobs via strong backward linkages with the primary sector and input suppliers but also forward linkages related to income generated from mining and agriculture, forestry that may enhance domestic and local demand for manufactured goods."

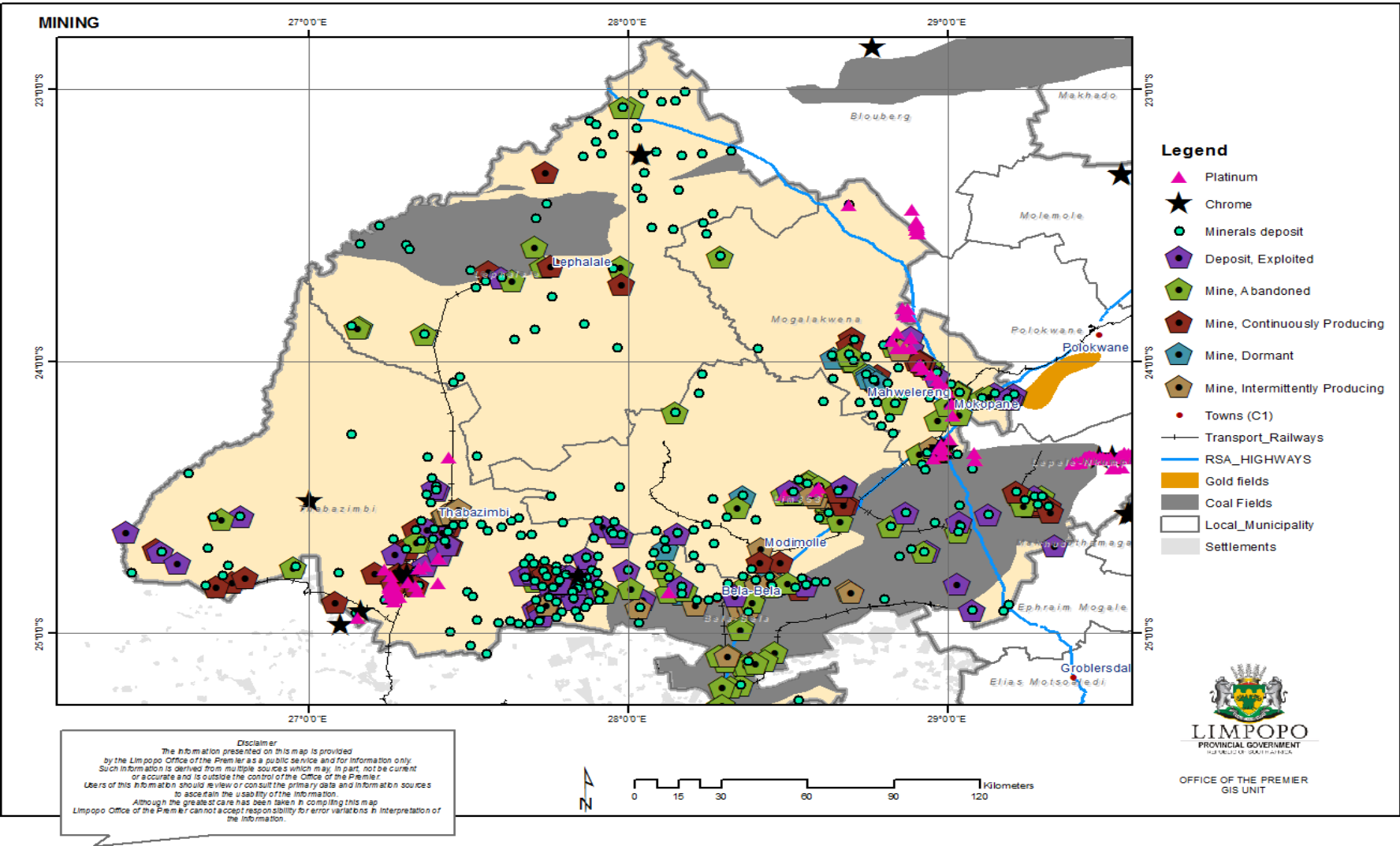
The figures below demonstrate the geographic spread mines in Waterberg District.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 23: Geographic spread of minerals in Waterberg



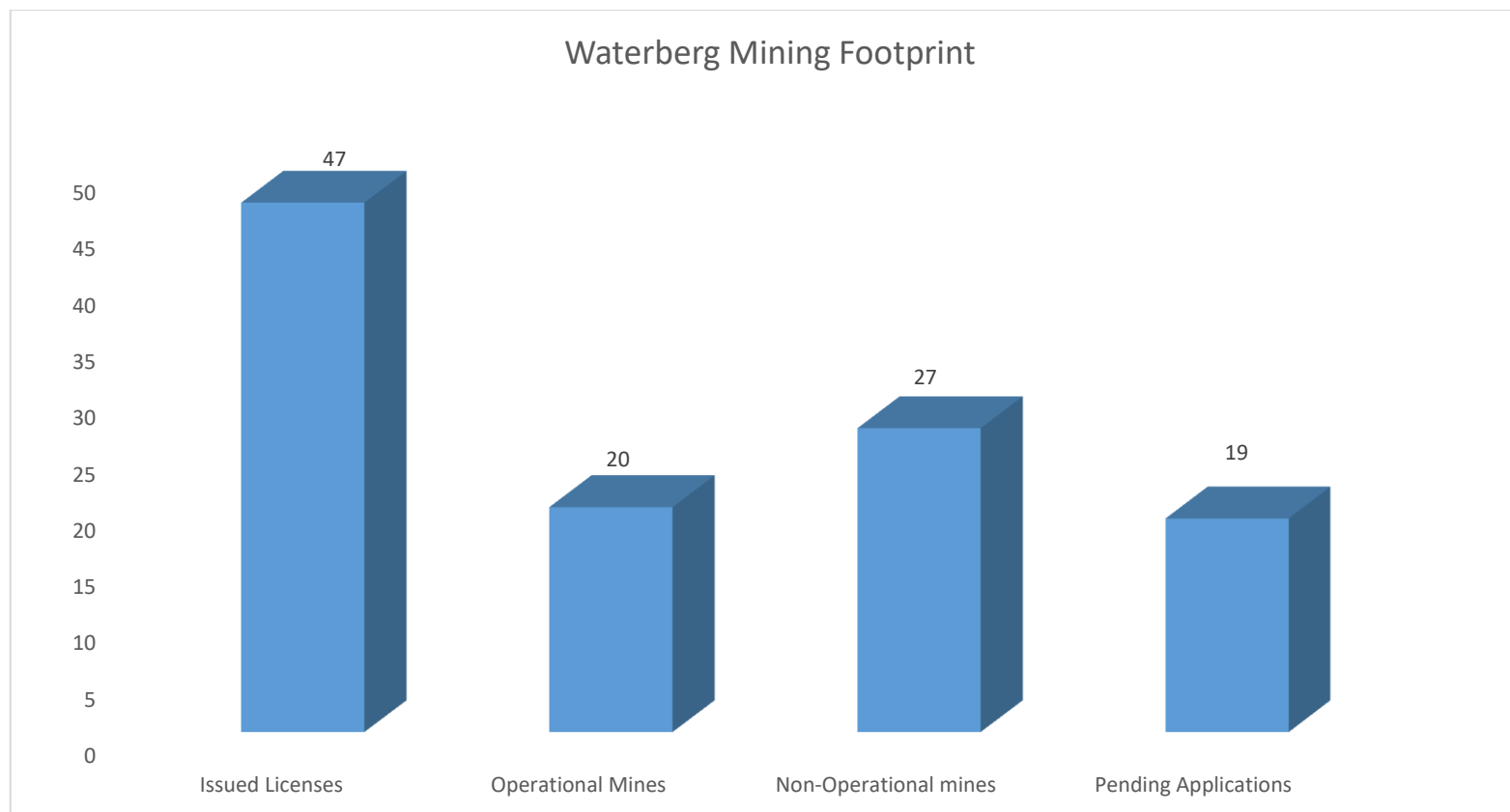
The table shows that minerals are concentrated mainly in the Mogalakwena, Lephalale, Thabazimbi and Modimolle/ Mookgophong.

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

TABLE 90: MINERAL GEOGRAPHIC SPREAD

Lephalale	Mogalakwena	Modimolle	Thabazimbi	BelaBela
Coal	PGM's Granite Vanadium	Clay Andalusite Quartz and sandstone Aggregate	PGM's Iron Ore Andalusite Chrome Limestone	Calcite

Water Mining Footprint

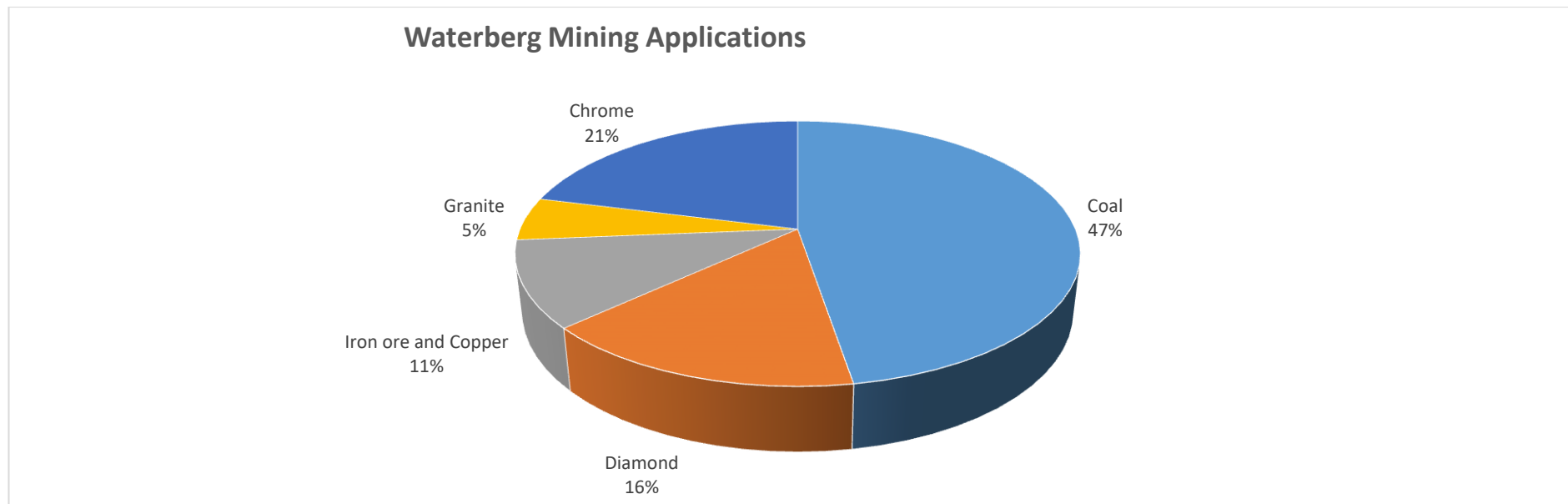


Current mining footprint in the district focuses mainly on the following minerals: PGM's, coal, chrome, Iron ore, copper and granite. The district's mining footprint per municipality is as follows:

Future developments

Waterberg mineral resources present a variety of future economic developments opportunities with broad potential contribution to industrialization, broader economic participation by Historically Disadvantaged Individuals and integrated community development. A summary of mining license applications to-date indicates nineteen (19) pending applications which demonstrates the investment appetite facing this district. New mining license applications focus on the following minerals: coal (9); diamond (3); iron ore and copper (2); granite (1) and chrome (4).

Waterberg Mining Applications



Constraints

Lack of supportive rail infrastructure between Lephalale and Thabazimbi.

Infrastructure development projects (roads) often fail to take off due to PPP partners' inability to meet their commitment.

The major constraint is water use license.

The risk created by future mechanization in mining may drastically limit the effective participation of locals if skills development is not in line with mining modernization and the impacts of the Fourth Industrial Revolution. An integrated district-based skills development approach had been initiated with mines but needs to be broadened to include other sectors.

Strategic actions

The recent history of mining development in Limpopo has been marred by continuous conflicts mainly between the mining companies and communities especially in the Waterberg and Sekhukhune Districts. In 2011 the provincial government mandated the Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism to develop and facilitate the Integrated Mining Development and Sustainability Framework that aimed at creating an inclusive economic growth amongst key stakeholders through creation of a mutually beneficial relationship by working together towards a common and shared vision. The implementation of this framework had since enhanced collaborative relationships between the government, mining companies and communities.

The government continues, through the Limpopo Mining Forum to facilitate collaboration with mines and communities with mines committing to implement developmental projects in three work streams: Business and Industrialization; Skills Development and Employment Creation; and Community Development.

Business Development and Industrialization

The province's mineral and mining value chains provide opportunities for local manufacturing, to deepen industrialization and enhance an inclusive economic development. Through the government and mines collaboration, a few projects had been identified and were implemented by mines in Waterberg. A pipe manufacturing plant was established by Anglo Platinum in Mkgalakwena municipality with an investment of R100m, a dust mask manufacturing plant was constructed by Ivanplats also in Mkgalakwena at investment of R 11m.

Skills Development and Employment Creation

Through the Limpopo Mining Forum engagements, mines agreed on a 'District-based' skills development approach wherein they will collaborate to implement integrated skills development projects. Other sectors of the economy are been drawn into this approach in order to share facility development costs and have an integrated impact. Mines have further committed to support technical schools in order to improve the legibility of local learners to enter technical vocations. Success stories of improved technical schools are emerging with support of mines such as: Thekganang Technical Secondary in Northam, Mabalane Seleka Technical school in Lephalale, and Phaladingwe Technical High in Mapela village, Mkgalakwena municipality.

Community Development

To resolve the conflicts arising from the past exclusion of communities in mining development planning and its value chains, the Limpopo Mining Forum facilitates mine/communities' engagement protocols assisting municipalities in the development and implementation of local Mine Community Engagement Forums. Platforms are now in existence offering mine host communities a voice in their development. There is an opportunity in developing and implementing sustainable and impactful Social Labour Plans towards economic infrastructure and socio-economic development.

AGRICULTURE

Waterberg is predominantly rural with fertile soil and a good climate, presenting a comparative advantage in the agricultural sector and opportunities, which still needs to be realized to their full potential. The district is covered by large commercial agricultural land. The agricultural production area for the Waterberg District is 4.3 million hectares which is 38.51% of the provincial agricultural area. Waterberg has the biggest extent of agricultural area in Limpopo. Although named Waterberg, the district is actually classified as a semi-arid area with poor water resources.

For crop farmers, there have been dramatic changes in many commodity prices leading to changes in cropping patterns. Crops such as cotton, tobacco, maize and sorghum have been badly affected by low international prices and over production and plantings have been reduced significantly, often with negative financial and employment implications. Alternative crops like sunflower, wheat, soya beans, groundnuts and paprika are all internationally traded commodities that are produced within the district and thus sensitive to the rand/dollar exchange rate.

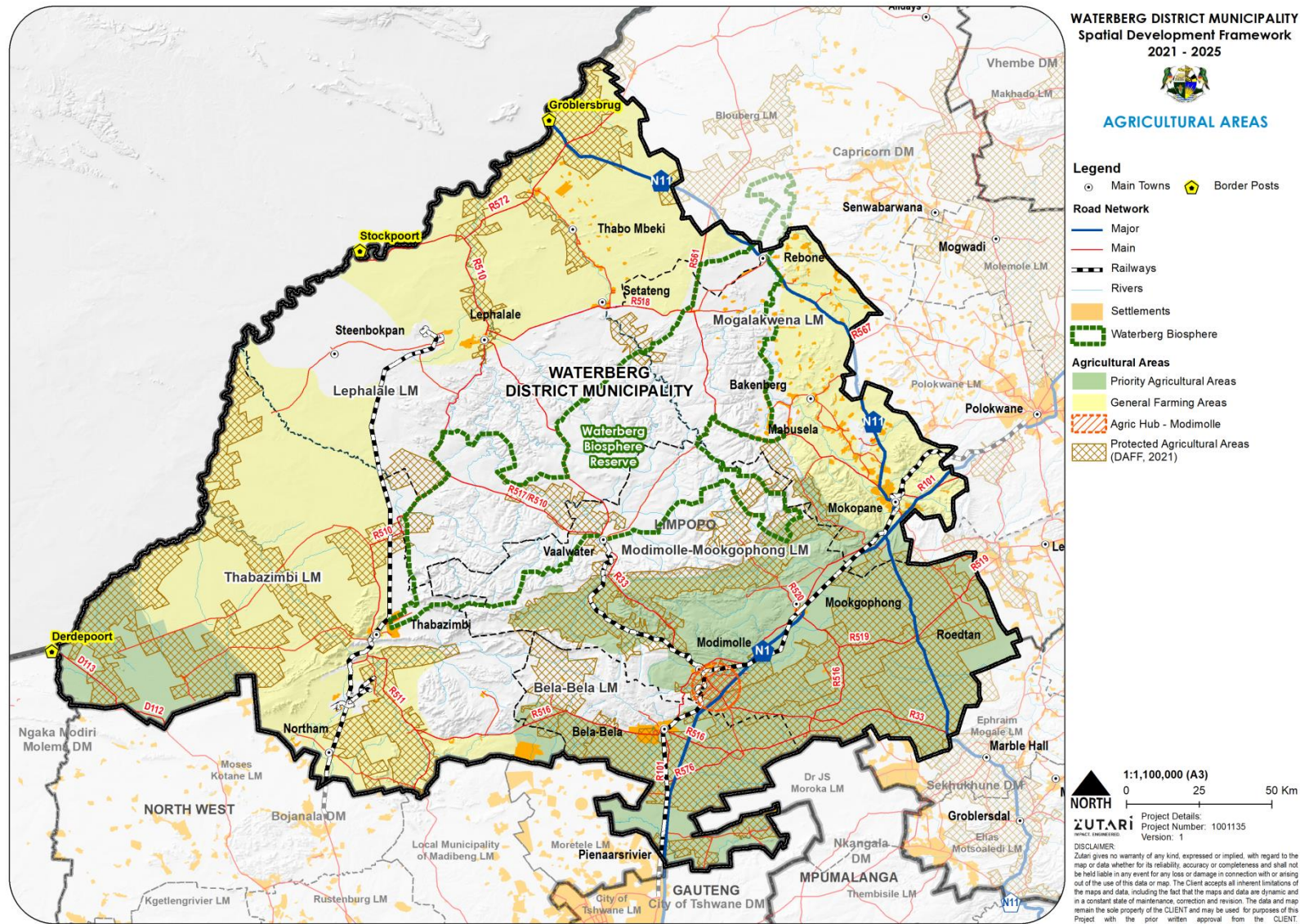
The mountainous northern extents of the municipal area and areas around Rust der Winter to the south in Bela Bela are predominantly used for game farming, while cattle farming is concentrated in the southern areas around Pienaarsrivier. Crop farming is dominant in the central parts especially towards the eastern parts of the Springbok Flats. The priority agricultural commodities in the district are cattle farming, maize crop farming and poultry farming. The spin-off commodities include meat production, production of feeds, eggs, animal hides processing,



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 24: Agriculture Production Area



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 25: Protected Areas

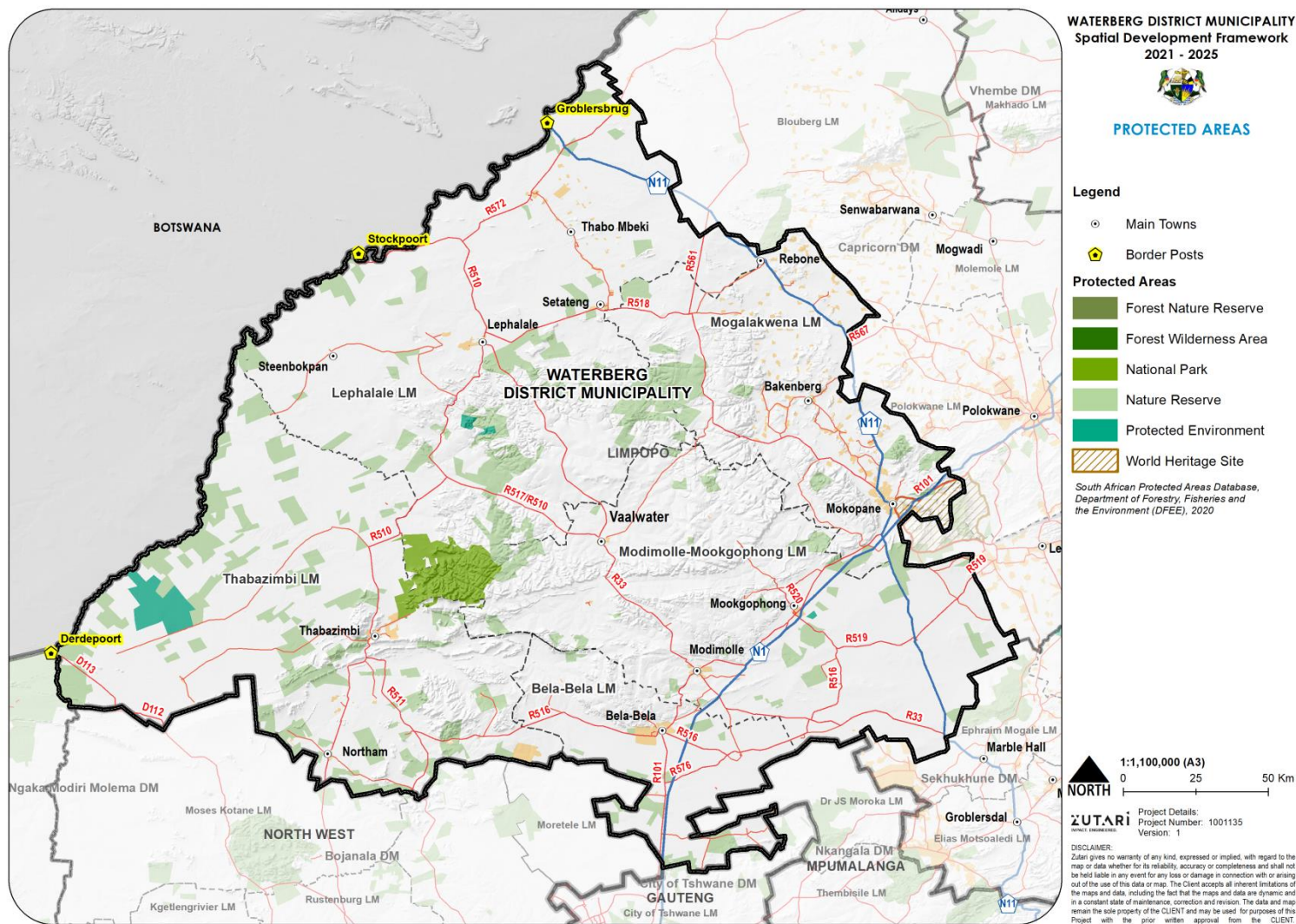


TABLE 91: AGRICULTURE PRODUCTION AREA

District	Total Agricultural Area
Capricorn	2 146 094.47
Sekhukhune	1 335 352.04
Mopani	1 402 999.14
Vhembe	2 076 390.38
Waterberg	4 360 262.11
Total	11 321 098.14

The total current agricultural production area for the Waterberg District is 4.3 million hectares. This translate to 38.51% of the provincial agricultural area. The figures below demonstrate the commodities that are currently being produced in Waterberg District. These commodities provide a base for growth of the sector in the district as well as an opportunity for value chain development and job creation. The land is mainly used for game ranching, grazing land for livestock, horticulture (vegetables) and field crops (Sunflower, Wheat, Maize and Sorghum).

Vegetable industry could be one of the largest contributors to job creation and improvement of livelihood if the potential demand in South Africa and SADC is considered. Waterberg has a fair share of vegetable production footprint though insignificant compared to other districts. From the map below, it is evident that there is scattered distribution of vegetable production in the district.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Vegetables that are mainly produced in the area of Waterberg includes tomatoes, potatoes, cabbages and butternut. The district has a potential to increase the area under production in areas with suitable agro-climatic conditions.

In the recent years, a growth in the adoption of climate smart agriculture systems where vegetables are produced under controlled environment such as tunnels. As part of farmer settlement support and recapitalization of land reform farms benefited from the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform with production infrastructure. Through intensive production system, there is potential to produce high value vegetable crops such as cucumbers, green peppers, herbs and baby vegetables for niche markets.

INTENSIVE FARMING PRODUCTION SYSTEM



GRAINS AND OILSEEDS PRODUCTION AREAS

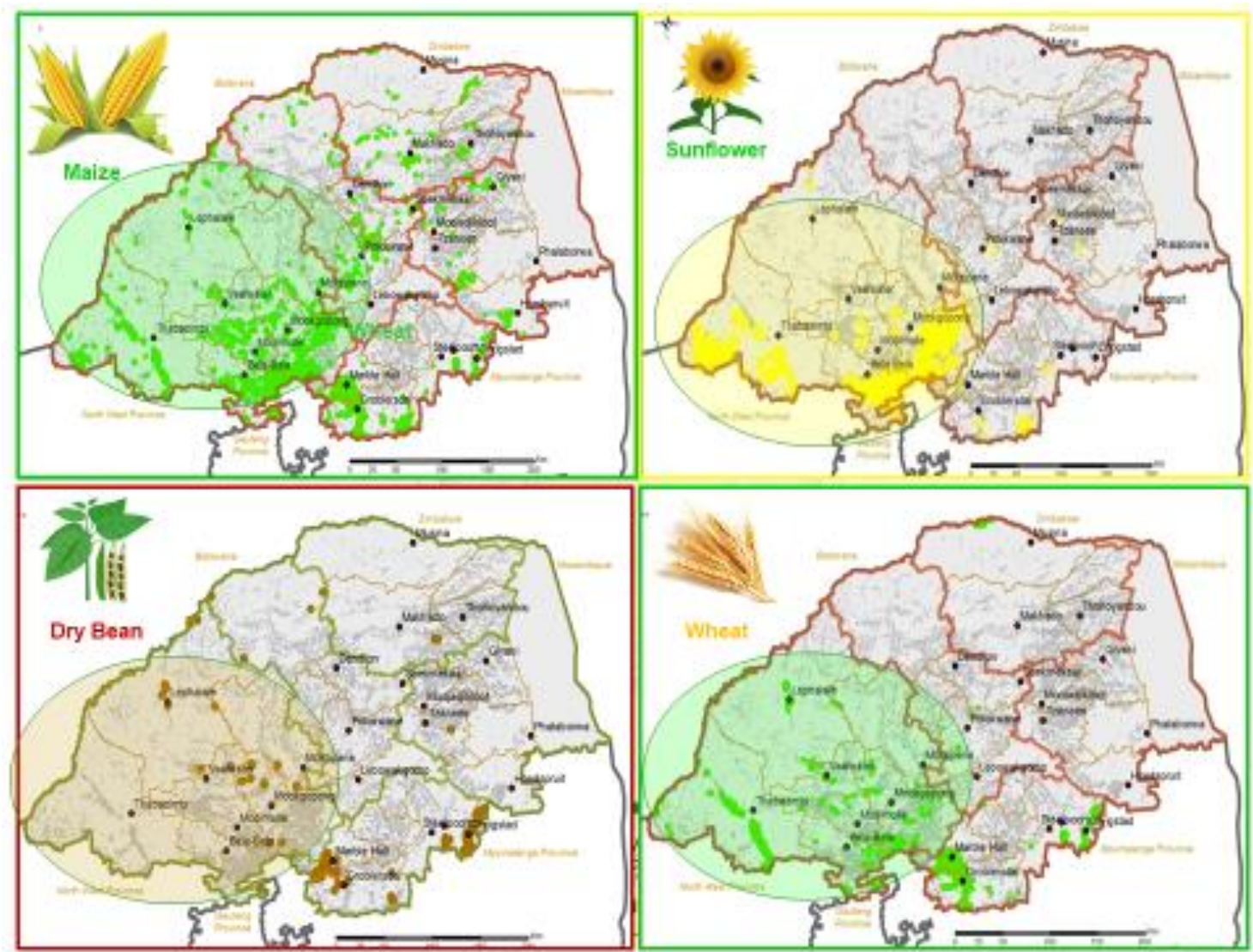
Whilst Limpopo is highly competitive in fruits and vegetables, the province is an insignificant producer of grains and oilseeds however it has potential to its production given the existing agro-climatic limitations. Limpopo demand for grains and oilseeds products far outstrip the supply and the province mitigates its production shortfall through import from other provinces such as Free State and North-west. Generally, Limpopo climatic conditions are not conducive to produce enough grains under rain fed conditions. Most of the production of major crops such as Maize, Sunflower, Wheat and Grain sorghum are concentrated in Waterberg and Sekhukhune District with relatively higher rainfall than other districts. The production maps below illustrate production areas for grain and oilseeds.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 27: Grain and Oilseeds Production areas



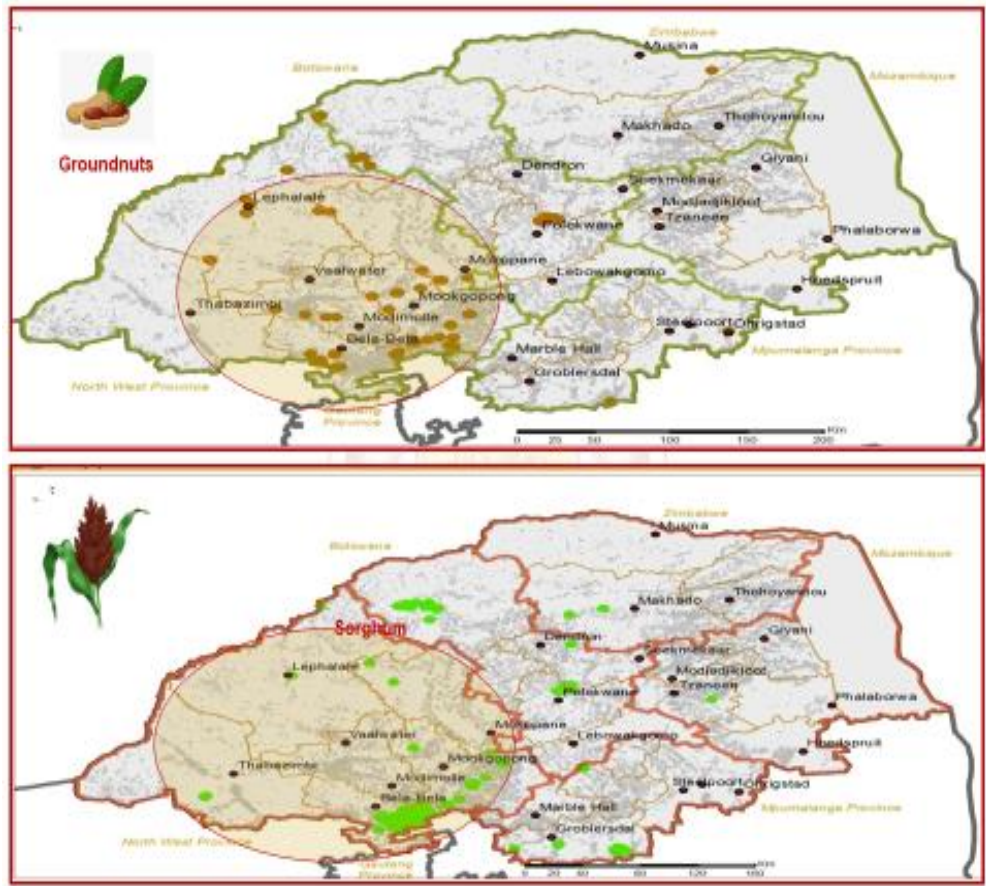
LDA Production Mapping Survey: 2012



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 28: Groundnuts and Sorghum Production Areas



LDA Production Mapping Survey: 2012



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 92: SUMMARY OF GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF CROP PRODUCTION

Crop	Area
Maize	Bela Bela, Modimolle and Mookgopong
Dry Bean	Bela Bela, Lephalale and Vaalwater
Sunflower	Bela Bela, Modimolle, Thabazimbi and Mookgopong
Wheat	Bela Bela, Vaalwater, Thabazimbi and Mookgopong
Sorghum	Bela Bela and Mookgopong
Groundnuts	Bela Bela, Modimolle, Thabazimbi and Mookgopong

CITRUS

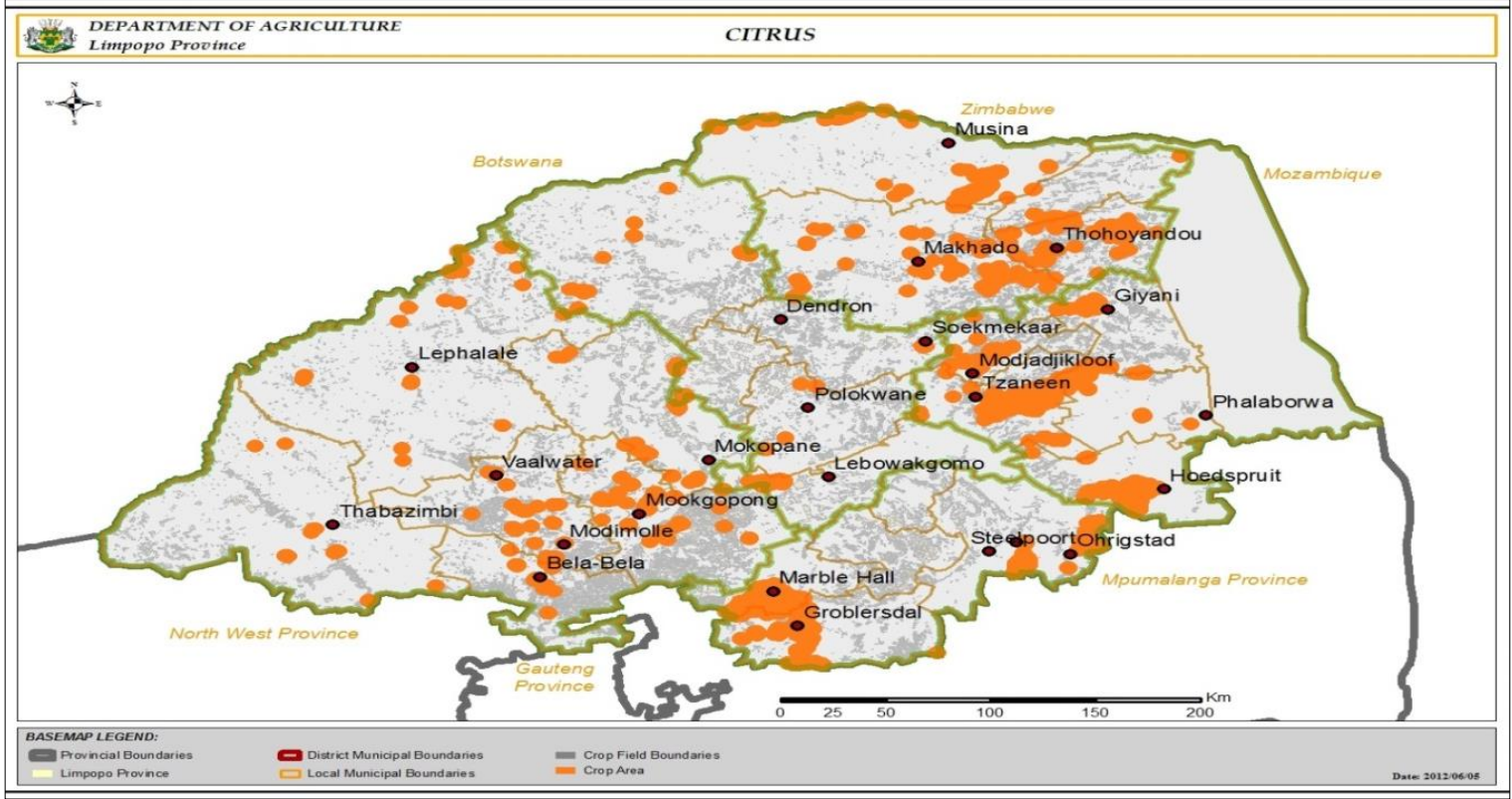
Waterberg few citrus production enterprises in the Bela Bela, Mookgopong and Mogalakwena. Through revitalisation of Agriculture in land reform farms, there is potential to expand citrus production in existing citrus enterprises and in surrounding areas with suitable climatic conditions.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 29: Citrus Production Areas



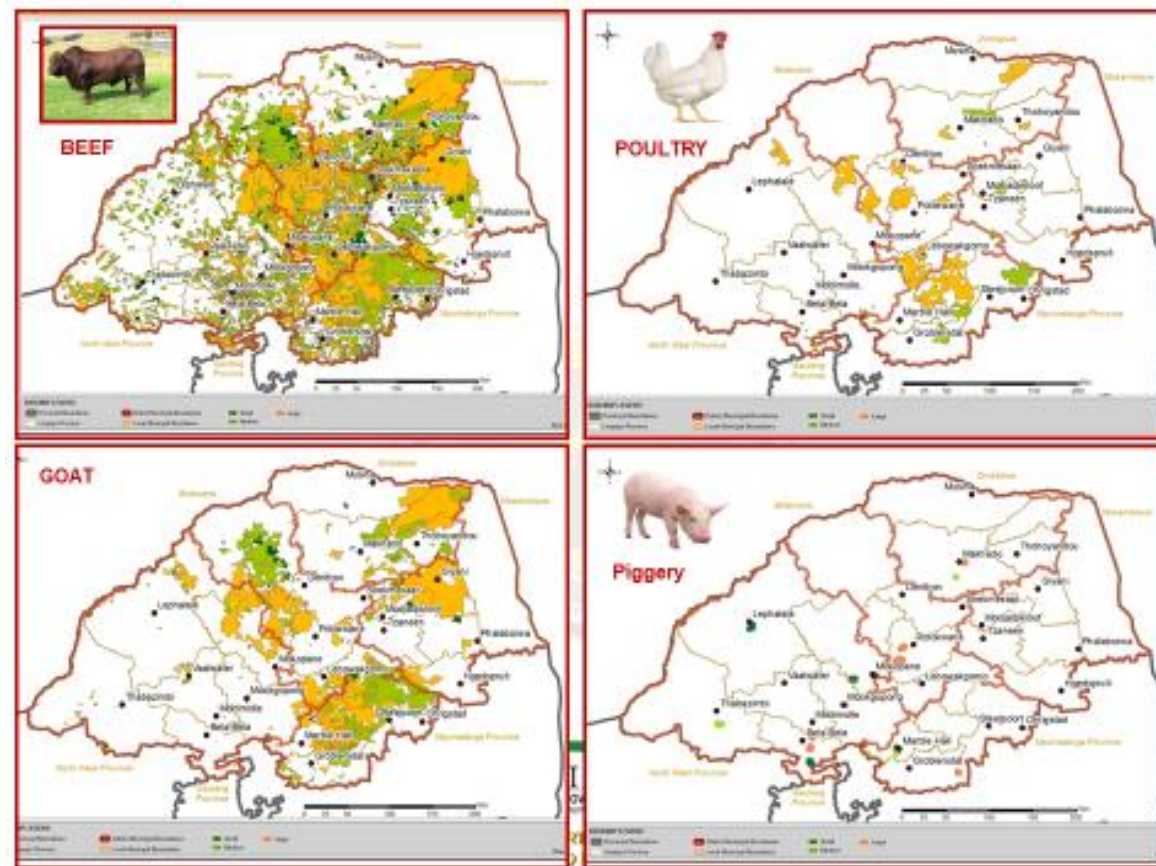
© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

RED MEAT

Beef production is one of the thriving industries in the areas of Waterberg owing to its grazing capacity and being outside the foot and mouth disease area. The district has medium to large scale livestock production enterprises in the area of Bela Bela, Modimolle-Mookgopong and Mogalakwena. There is also potential for production of white meat such as poultry, piggery and goat.

Map 30: Red and White Meat Production Areas



Waterberg
DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Key Programmes/Strategic Intervention

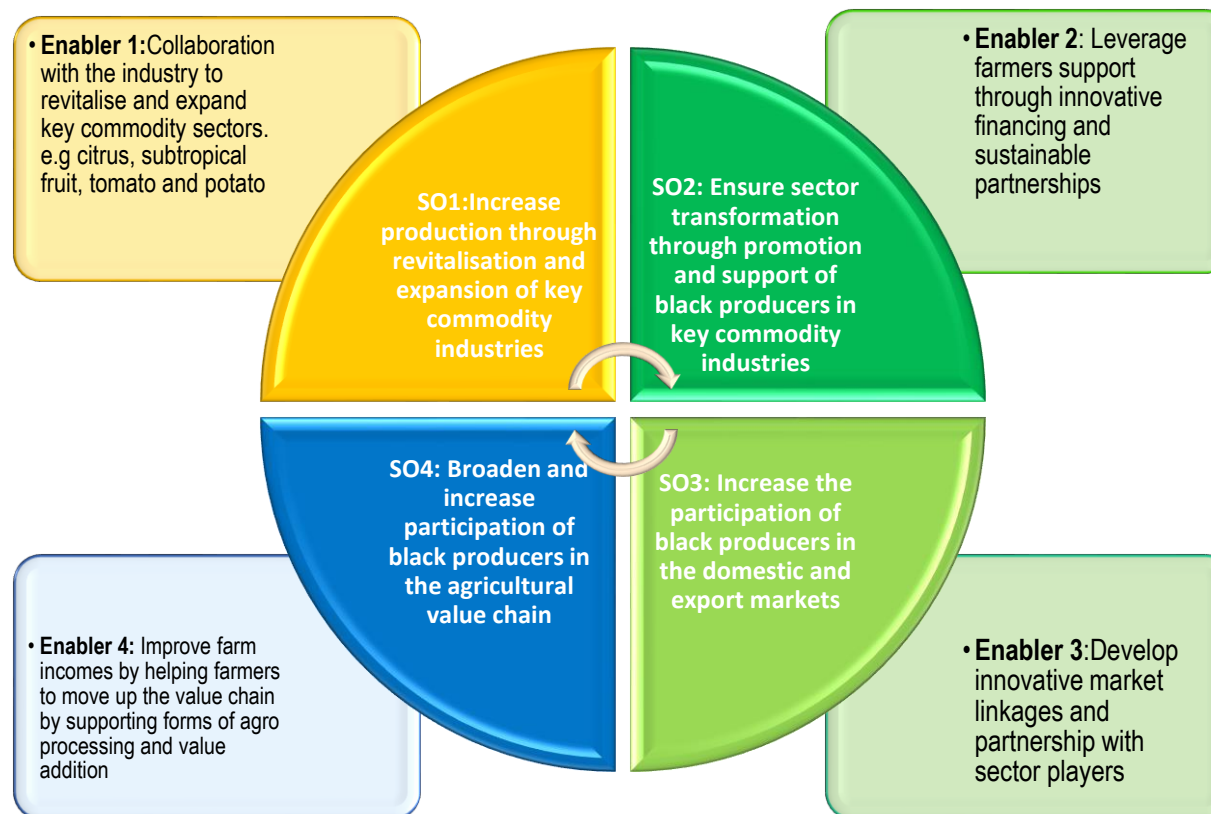
Agriculture continues to take centre stage as one of the key strategic economic sectors that can promote economic transformation, propel labour intensive growth and create a globally competitive economy. The sector focus is no longer about food security and rural livelihood to address social policy question but to position it as a major contributor to the provincial economy. The National Development Plan as a development blueprint of the country identified agriculture as a key economic stimulant. The NDP postulates certain agricultural commodities and subsectors as key winning areas where expansion in production and further value addition are sustainable in the long term. Government has conceptualised Revitalisation of Agriculture and Agro-processing Value Chains (RAAVC) plan as an intervention towards the realisation of NDP goals. Contained in the RAAVC plan are key strategic areas of intervention:



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Figure 15: Key agricultural enablers



Development of Grains and Oilseed Value Chain

There is an opportunity to commercialise oil seeds production linked with processing. In order to realise this, there is a need to increase:

Participation of black producers in grain sorghum production

Support to subsistence maize production for rural HH food security

Development of Rural Grain Milling Cooperatives linked with rural maize production

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Development of Red Meat Value Chain

South Africa does not produce enough beef for the domestic market. The number of cattle slaughtered has increased over the years due to development and accessibility to abattoirs but even with the increase in production, local demand is still not met. Red meat abattoirs are scattered throughout the province, with high concentration of red meat in the Vhembe and Mopani district.

Waterberg District has an opportunity to develop the red meat cluster through increased production, abattoir linkages with feedlots increasing vertically integrated business in the beef industry. In feedlot industry large feedlots own their own abattoirs and sell directly to consumers through their retail outlets or wholesale level. The department of Agriculture therefore should therefore expand red meat value chain aligned to the following existing projects:

Immerpan Red Meat Development

Modimolle Red Meat Development

Mogalakwena Red Meat Development

The Department of Agriculture, Land Reform & Rural Development is investing in the sector to grow and sustain the Red Meat Cluster in the Waterberg District, the department is constructing Farmer Production Support Units (FPSUs) in the district as part the Agri-Park programme to support the red meat value chain. The department is working towards completion of the Witpoort FPSU and has commenced with Mapela (Ga-sekuruwe village) FPSU. The FPSUs are meant to provide technical support for the local farmers in the identified areas. The long term plan is to have FPSUs in all the five local municipalities.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TOURISM

Waterberg's tourism competitive advantage is based on its unique rich biodiversity, cultural and heritage resource base. With an abundance of game reserves and more than ten provincial nature reserves, wildlife and eco-tourism can be flagged as the strength products of Waterberg. The district holds a critical position in the wildlife industry, with expanded value chain opportunities. We need to leverage on the industry's spin-offs. An area to note is the continuous growth in hunting. It is estimated that about 51% of the Limpopo wildlife ranching industry takes part in eco-tourism activities. Hunting industry contribution to the GDP – (LEDET 2018): 1.5 B. from Trophy hunting, 1.1 B. from Biltong hunting and 17 806 employed in hunting (Provincially). The strategic location and abundance of game farms in the Waterberg contributes to the competitive advantage of the Waterberg in the Safari and Hunting sector.

Waterberg hosts some of internationally significant attractions such as the Makapan's Valley World Heritage Site, Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, Marakele National Park, Hot Springs, Nylsvley Wetland (Ramsar Site), Limpopo Golf & Safari Route, this are some of the draw cards which presents more tourism opportunities: Tour operations , Business Tourism , Theme parks/recreational facilities , Dam Tourism, Heritage Sites profiling , Wildlife Industry , Linking tourism with agriculture, mining and supply

These opportunities have the potential to boost the current tourism product supply, if enhanced and marketed well they can provide a mix of attractions and activities attracting the maximum number of tourists to the area resulting in strong economic base and increased job opportunities. There is also an opportunity in event tourism to attract a new market segment, (Revive the Bela Bela Carnival, get Thabazimbi Adrenalin Festival off the ground, and other potential draw cards events.

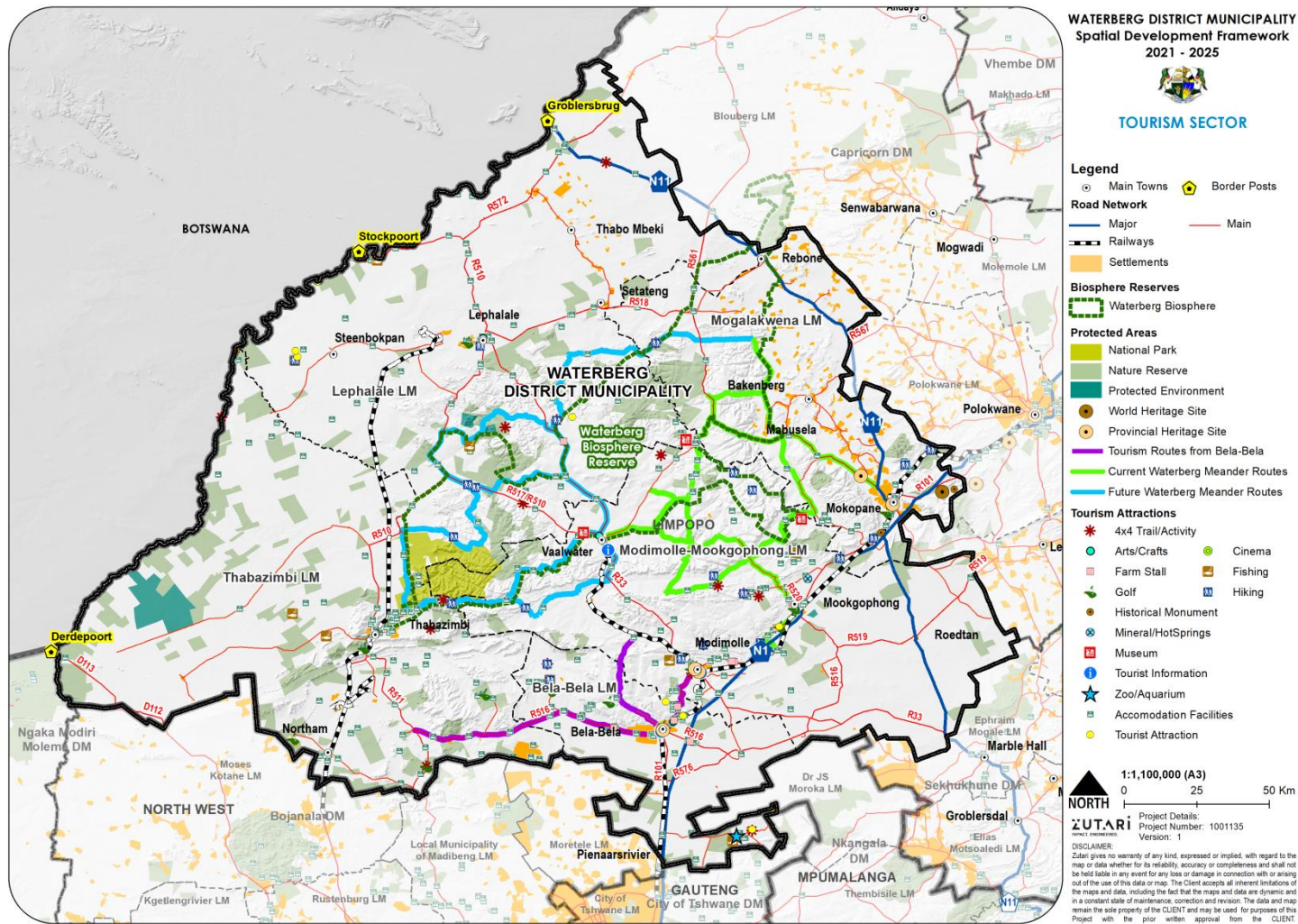
The One Plan's tourism development strategy's purpose is to expand and intensify the district tourism sector by leveraging of a number of key competitive advantages of the District. These competitive advantages include Unique eco-tourism attractions including bushveld landscapes, rich biodiversity, culture and heritage attributes; Waterberg Biosphere as a recognised UNESCO world heritage site which is part of the Biosphere Reserve programme; Proximity to major conurbations with high population numbers and spending power; Accessibility via a comprehensive National and Provincial road network; Proximity enabling short-stay tourism for domestic tourism; High concentration of game farming and wildlife management facilities; Established wildlife hunting industry, and; Agriand mining-tourism opportunities.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Map 31: Tourism Sector Map



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

CHAPTER 5 – FINANCIAL ANALYSIS

Financial management and viability of a municipality is core to the development of communities in a sustainable manner by providing municipal services. Within the Waterberg District financial management and viability of municipalities is fair with some challenges that must be addressed to accelerate service delivery.

5.1 REVENUE MANAGEMENT & BILLING

With powers and functions allocated to local municipalities for providing basic services such as water and sanitation, electricity and refuse removal, there are sources of revenue for local municipalities. All municipalities are generating revenue from water, electricity and property rates. It is important to note that revenue is mostly generated from towns and townships with limitations in the rural areas.

The implementation of property rates is still an inadequately tapped revenue source. The implementing MPRA is coupled by the following challenges:

Limited collection in rural areas where the custodianship of land is in the ownership of traditional leaders.

Limited collection in farming areas which are representative of more than 60% of the District area.

A large amount of debtors of municipalities is other spheres of government especially the Provincial Sphere of government.

The district municipality has limited possibilities for revenue due to reduced powers and functions and therefore we are fully dependent on national grants. Currently the District municipality relies on the following grants – Equitable Share, Finance Management Grant, Municipal Systems Improvement Grant, EPWP Incentive Grant and Rural Road Asset Management Grant - to execute its powers and functions. A very small portion of our revenue is attributable to interest received on investments, abattoir income and other income. The district municipality developed a donor funding strategy and appointed a donor funder for the whole district area but this was unsuccessful in prior years.

The district municipality does not have a billing system as we are not a service authority and therefore only have minor billings on abattoir slaughtering accounts. Munsoft Integrated Financial System implemented at Waterberg District Municipality, Modimolle Local Municipality, Bela Bela Local Municipality and Thabazimbi Local Municipality does however have a functional billing system.

5.2 EXPENDITURE & CASHFLOW MANAGEMENT

The equitable share formula has been reviewed, but has not been beneficial to WDM for the coming medium term. Our cash flows are increasing by less than our fixed operating expenditure is increasing, mostly due to personnel related expenditure increasing by more than inflation. This has necessitated restrained expenditure to ensure that cash outflows remain within the affordability parameters of the municipality's finances. Waterberg District Municipality thus has to implement increased austerity measures in the 14/15 IDP and Budget due to the current revenue resources becoming insufficient to fully fund the operational requirements of the municipality. The equitable share is no longer sufficient to fund the operating expenditure of the municipality.

The shortfalls in every year on the operating budget are funded from the opening balance accumulated surplus but these funds are also being rapidly depleted. This is a major cause for concern as the indication is that we will continuously be short on the budget in future as our revenue is fixed per grants and majority of our operating expenditure is salary related which often increases by more than the CPI or relevant equitable share percentage increase. The accumulated surpluses from previous years would, as per the state of affairs currently, only be able to fund the annual operating shortfalls for this new MTREF, after which surpluses will also be depleted. This will also have a detrimental effect on the IDP as surpluses which were previously allocated to the IDP will now have to be used to fund operating shortfalls, thereby decreasing the IDP amount for projects significantly.

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

Property, plant and equipment is utilised to render services and for administrative support. WDM does not have infrastructure assets as we do not provide basic services other than Environmental Health and Disaster Management. The only revenue-generating asset of WDM is the Abattoir, but which is currently running at an operating loss. Surplus funds are invested in banking institutions for periods ranging from call accounts up to 6 months with the majority being invested in 60 or 90 day investments.

5.3 FINANCIAL REPORT

TABLE 98: STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE

Figures in Rand	Note(s)	2022	2021
Revenue			
Revenue from exchange transactions			
Actuarial gain / (loss)	19	899 796	9 732 795
Interest earned - External investments	20	2 717 989	3 516 924
Interest earned - Receivables	20	11 507	742
Service charges		1 184 655	1 177 404
Other income	21	227 745	227 308
Total revenue from exchange transactions		5 041 692	14 655 173
Revenue from non-exchange transactions			
Transfer revenue			
Government grants & subsidies	22	143 765 505	146 353 094
		5 041 692	14 655 173
		143 765 505	146 353 094
Total revenue	23	148 807 197	161 008 267
Expenditure			
Depreciation and amortisation	24	(7 613 348)	(7 894 079)
Employee related costs	25	(115 979 982)	(114 667 019)
General Expenses	26	(38 977 155)	(39 435 522)
Loss on disposal of assets and liabilities		(343 663)	(92 192)
Project expenditure	27	(5 342 761)	(5 913 198)
Provision for doubtful debt		(126 060)	(111 484)
Remuneration of councillors	28	(8 304 961)	(8 420 742)
Total expenditure		(176 687 930)	(176 534 236)
Operating surplus/deficit		-	-

Deficit before taxation	(27 880 733)	(15 525 969)
Taxation	-	-
Deficit for the year	(27 880 733)	(15 525 969)

5.4 FINANCIAL POLICIES, STRATEGIES & SYSTEMS

SYSTEM/POLICY/STRATEGY	AVAILABILITY (YES/NO)
Asset management policy	YES
Credit control & debt collection policy	YES
Supply chain management policy	YES
Banking & Investment policy	YES
Petty cash policy	YES
Virement policy	YES
Catering policy	YES
Tariff policy	N/A
Indigent policy	N/A
Rates policy	N/A

Waterberg District Municipality does not have a Tariff Policy or Indigent Policy or Rates Policy as we are not a basic service authority and therefore have no billings. The immaterial tariffs we do have related to the Abattoir and Fire Fighting Services. All other policies listed above are reviewed annually, complies with relevant legislation and are implemented effectively.

5.5 MTREF ALLOCATION

Project Name	Department	Final Budget 22/23	Final Budget 22/24	Final Budget 24/25
Economic Development & Tourism				
Informal Settlement Study		-	-	-
		-	-	-
Road & Storm Water				
Road Asset Management System	ID	2 281 000	2 290 000	2 373 000
		2 281 000	2 290 000	2 373 000
Municipal Support & Institutional Development				
Local Government Financial Management Grant	BTO	1 000 000	1 000 000	1 000 000
ICT Equipment	CSSS	-	-	-
Procurement	CSSS	-	-	-
		1 000 000	1 000 000	1 000 000
		3 281 000	3 281 000	3 373 000



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

5.6 AUDIT

AUDIT, ANTI-CORRUPTION AND RISK MANAGEMENT COMMITTEES

Risk management units and committees have been established in all local municipalities.

INTERNAL AUDIT

It is a requirement by the Municipal Finance Management Act of 2003 that municipalities establish internal audit units and audit and performance Audit committees. Both the Audit and Performance Audit Committee are established in terms of the MFMA and Performance Regulation of 2001. In the main the members are 3 external people and senior management. The external members provide independent specialist advice on financial performance, efficiency, effectiveness and compliance with legislation, and performance management. All local municipalities including the District have Audit Committees which consist of at least three persons with appropriate experience of whom the majority are not in the employ of the municipality and meet at least four times a year as is required by section 166(4). There are all necessary approved internal audit and audit committee charter in place. Risk assessments are being conducted every year with the assistance of Treasury and COGHSTA. There are mechanisms in place to respond or deal with issues raised by the Auditor General in the audit report as required by section 166(2) (c).

Internal Audit Key Issues and Challenges

- Inadequate capacity of municipalities to deal with internal audit issues
- Lack of internal and external assessments to assess internal audit activities
- Inadequate synergy between Council and both the Audit and Performance Audit Committee
- Limited achievement on compliance with key issues of legislation, the MFMA, MSA and other regulations and policies
- Limited link between the municipality's performance and performance of employees

The following are available: Internal Audit & Audit Committee

Internal Audit units and audit committees established district wide

Anti-fraud and corruption

All municipalities have developed the anti-fraud and corruption strategies and risk management strategies.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

5.7 AUDIT OPINION

TABLE 97: AUDIT OUTCOME TREND AND MATTERS AFFECTING THE AUDIT REPORT FOR THE PAST 5 YEARS [2017/18-2021/22]

2017/18	2018/19	2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
Qualified	Unqualified	Unqualified	Clean Audit	Clean Audit
Matters affecting opinion: Irregular Expenditure Supply Chain Management Strategic Planning and Performance Management Local Economic Development	Matters affecting opinion: Irregular Expenditure Expenditure Management Strategic Planning and Performance Management Human Resource Management	Matters affecting opinion: 1. Supply Chain Management	Matters affecting opinion: None.	Matters affecting opinion: None.

5.8 AUDIT OUTCOME TRENDS FOR WATERBERG DISTRICT-WIDE FOR THE PAST 5 YEARS [2017/18-2021/22]

MUNICIPALITY	AUDIT OPINION				
	2017/18	2018/19	2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
Waterberg DM	Qualified	Unqualified	Unqualified	Clean Audit	Clean Audit
Bela-Bela LM	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Adverse	Qualified
Lephalale LM	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified	Unqualified	Unqualified
Mogalakwena LM	Adverse	Adverse	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified
Modimolle- Mookgophong LM	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified
Thabazimbi LM	Disclaimer	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified

5.9 AUDITED STATEMENTS

The performance of municipalities is measured in financial and non-financial terms. The performance of municipalities to achieve good audit reports is dependent on number of factors that include internal control systems namely; Budget, IDP, SDBIP, PMS and compliance to GRAP Standards.

The Auditor General's audit function was mostly focused on financial information with additional focus on non-financial information that also determines the extent that municipalities are delivering services in an efficient, effective and economic manner, but an audit opinion is not yet issued on non-financial information. Past outcomes on the audit reports was thus based on the fair presentation information disclosed in the municipality's financial statements and not on the performance of the municipality.

The current status quo of audit reports in the district has been shadowed by disclaimer, qualified and unqualified audit reports. Factors that have led to negative audit outcomes relate to capacity of Budget and Treasury Offices, poor record management and lack of a proper audit trail, outstanding reconciliations, inadequate financial management systems, difficulty in ensuring asset registers are GRAP compliant.

MEASURES TAKEN IN ADDRESSING THE AUDIT REPORT.

To address issues raised by the Auditor General

The systems are in place and the policies implemented. The Risk register also assist the municipality address issues of risk. Office of the municipal manager, audit unit, has a plan in place to assist the municipality in dealing with issues raised. The CFO forum needs to be effective in assisting the local municipalities to improve their financial status.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

5.10 2021/22 AUDIT ACTION PLAN REPORT

ANNEXURE A: Waterberg District Municipality AG Audit Action Plan 21/22 Reporting Period

Municipality	Waterberg District Municipality		No	%
Financial Year	2022/23	Resolved	0	0
Audit Opinion	Unqualified (Clean Audit)	Outstanding	10	100
Reporting Period	21/22	Total	10	100

No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Completed; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative to Progress
	Annexure B: Other Important Matters								
	Predetermined Objectives								



No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Completed; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative to Progress
1 Pg 28	The actual achievement of ambient air quality was overstated in the APR. The Ambient Air Quality report for dust monitoring was inspected and processed on 13 July 2022, which the date does not form part of reporting cycle.	New	Management did not adequately review the APR to ensure that the actual achievement in the APR reconciles with the achievement reported on in the quarterly reports.	The Annual Performance Report (APR) indicator will be updated in the Adjustment SDBIP to give room for consolidation and Submission of Report. Management will report on the reports that were processed within the financial period.	25/11/2022	28/02/2023	COO: Monitoring and Evaluation	completed	

No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Completed; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative to Progress
2 Pg 30	Differences between the target reported in the Annual Performance Report (APR) and The Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) During the audit of AOPO a difference was noted between the target reported in the SDBIP and APR	New	Management did not adequately review the targets in the SDBIP to ensure that they reconciles with the target in APR.	Management will adjust the annual performance report to ensure that targets in the SDBIP reconcile with targets in the APR. Management will ensure alignment of quarterly performance reports and annual performance report to SDBIP.	25/11/2022	30/06/2023	COO: Monitoring and Evaluation	completed	
	Receivables from exchange transactions								

No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Completed; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative to Progress
3 Pg 31	Receivables from Non-Exchange transaction: Prepayments incorrectly disclosed During the audit of Receivables from Non-Exchange transactions, it was noted that prepayments relating to membership fees amounting to R1 371 516 are disclosed as financial instruments as they are disclosed under receivables from non-exchange transactions.	New	Management did not adequately review the annual financial statements to ensure that the AFS are fairly presented.	The AFS will be adjusted to correct the errors identified by the Auditors. Management will perform more rigorous reviews of the Annual Financial Statement going forward.	25/11/2022	30/06/2023	Reporting Specialist	In Progress	
	Property, Plant and Equipment								

No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Completed; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative to Progress
Pg 34	Property, plant and equipment – Incorrect deduction of input tax on cost of vehicle During the audit of additions to property, plant and equipment the financial year ended 30 June 2022, a Mayoral Vehicle with asset number 60102 was acquired at a total cost per the respective invoice of R 761 824,04. In accounting for the acquisition, the cost of R 642 581,26 was recognized as the cost of the asset and the respective VAT input was recognized separately (excluded from the cost) in the General Ledger at acquisition date of 30 June 2022. The effect of the VAT treatment was the set-off/deducted against VAT output in the VAT payable/receivable account. The VAT treatment led to an understatement to the value of R97 494,16 (99 368,35 – (14 330,43*15/115)) (excluding VAT on maintenance plan) on the cost of property, plant and equipment. Furthermore the carbon emission tax of R5 544 is not refundable and therefore should be capitalised to the cost of the vehicle.	New	There is inadequate review of accounting records in order to detect or correct non-compliance with the applicable accounting framework and legislature.	The AFS will be adjusted to correct the errors identified by the Auditors. Management will perform more rigorous reviews of the Annual Financial Statement going forward	25/11/2022	30/06/2023	Corporate Support and Shared services / Reporting Specialist	In Progress	

No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Completed; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative to Progress
5 Pg36	Property, Plant and Equipment – Understatement of depreciation. During the audit of depreciation, it was noted that some of the assets selected as part of the sample had residual values that impact the amount of depreciation calculated. In testing the accuracy of the depreciation amount, it was noted that these assets had residual values that exceeded their carrying values indicating that the assets were depreciated in excess of the depreciable amount. The depreciable amount of an asset is equal to the carrying value less the residual value. When the carrying value of an equals the residual value, depreciation on the asset should cease.	New	Management did not ensure adequate review of accounting records in order to detect or correct non-compliance with the applicable accounting framework and legislature.	The AFS will be adjusted to correct the errors identified by the Auditors. Management will perform more rigorous reviews of the Annual Financial Statement going forward.	25/11/2022	30/06/2023	Reporting Specialist	In Progress	
	Trade payables								



No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Completed; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative to Progress
6 Pg40	Trade Payables: Amount in AFS differs from amount recorded in Trade Payables Schedule. During the audit of the Trade payables (GL account 51.20.01) under Payables from exchange transactions a difference of R81 146 between the amount recorded in the AFS and Amount recorded in the Trade payables schedule was noted. The difference has resulted to the amount disclosed in the AFS overstated by R81 146 which is above the amount considered in the audit as immaterial. The annual financial statements may be not fairly presented	New	Management did not ensure adequate review the AFS and its related schedule to ensure that the AFS are fairly presented and as such is an indication of insufficient oversight of financial reporting.	The AFS will be adjusted to correct the errors identified by the Auditors. Management will perform more rigorous reviews of the Annual Financial Statement going forward.	25/11/2022	30/06/2023	Reporting Specialist	In Progress	
7 Pg 42	Operating leases– Expense and liability overstatement								

No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Completed; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative to Progress
	Operating Lease expense During the audit of operating lease payments, it was noted that the current year operating lease payments of R 2 350 615 recognized as an expense in the statement of financial performance as per 30 June 2022 AFS is overstated due to incorrect straight-line amount of buildings calculated. - The correct contract amount of the building lease agreement is R1 626 000 (excluding VAT) as per the lease contract not R2 341 000 as disclosed in the client's prepared schedule. - Straight line amount was calculated using (R2 341 000/24) which resulted in 97 541,67 instead of (R1 626 000/24) which is R67 750,00. -The current year lease payment for buildings was recognised as R1 170 500 which is due to (97541,67 *12). The correct lease payment was supposed to be (67 750*12) R813 000.	New	The management made an error when calculating the straight-line amount of the building as per their prepared schedule which resulted in an overstatement of expenses recognised.	The AFS will be adjusted to correct the errors identified by the Auditors. Management will perform more rigorous reviews of the Annual Financial Statement going forward.	25/11/2022	30/06/2023	Reporting Specialist	In Progress	
	Lease liability								

No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Completed; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative to Progress
	<u>Operating lease liability</u> During the audit of lease liability amounting to R476 834 disclosed of in the 30 June 2022 AFS, it was noted that it is overstated due to retrospective error on calculation of building straight line amount. Buildings Lease liability was calculated based on the difference between the incorrect straight-line amount of R97 541,17 and the buildings rental amounts as per the lease agreement (being R64 000 in the first year and R71 500 in the second year) instead of R67 750. This has resulted in a factual misstatement of R417 084 on the lease liability balance disclosed	New	The management made an error when calculating the straight-line amount of the building as per their prepared schedule which resulted in an overstatement of expenses recognised.	The AFS will be adjusted to correct the errors identified by the Auditors. Management will perform more rigorous reviews of the Annual Financial Statement going forward.	25/11/2022	30/06/2023	Reporting Specialist	In Progress	
	Remuneration for Councillors								
8 Pg 44	During the audit of Remuneration for councillors, we identified that Councillor MS Meteleni is not disclosed as part of note 27 of the annual financial statements.	New	Management ensure that adequate reviews are performed to enhance the quality of the financial statements submitted for audit.	The AFS will be adjusted to correct the errors identified by the Auditors. Management will perform more rigorous reviews of the Annual Financial Statement going forward.	25/11/2022	30/06/2023	Reporting Specialist	In Progress	
	Statement of comparison of budget and actual amounts								

No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Completed; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative to Progress
9 Pg 45	Disclosure: Linking issue, Statement of Comparison of Budget and Actual Amounts During the audit of Statement of Comparison of Budget and Actual Amounts, we identified a linking issue, the totals of the current assets and non-current assets are swapped around.	New	Management did not, in some instances, prepare regular, accurate and complete financial and performance reports that are supported and evidenced by reliable information and review and monitor compliance with applicable legislation. The following financial and performance management root cause was identified: Management ensure that adequate reviews are performed to enhance the quality of the financial statements submitted for audit.	Management will adjust the description on totals on statement of comparison of actuals against budget to correct this errors identified by the Auditors. Management will perform more rigorous reviews of the Annual Financial Statement going forward.	25/11/2022	30/06/2023	Reporting Specialist	In progress	
	Risk management								



No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Completed; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative to Progress
10 Pg 48	Risk management: New risks identified for 2021/22 financial year not supported by evidence During the audit we obtained “Final WDM risk management for 2021/22 financial year” paragraph 8.1 2020/21 FY vs. 2021/2022 FY Changes in risks where the following new risks were identified in the 2021/2022 financial year: Unauthorized, Irregular expenditure and Wasteful expenditure. Non adherence to approved Supply Chain Management Procurement Plans Time lines. Asset not verified. Inadequate loss control/ Theft of Assets. Inadequate cash management controls. Outdated Integrated Waste Management Plan. Understaff Fire and Rescue Services. Understaff Municipal Health Services. The above risks were not supported by evidence of weaknesses in controls or external and internal audit findings. The above indicates a deficiency in the	New	Governance - Appropriate risk management activities were not implemented to ensure that regular risk assessments.	Management will review the 2022/2023 FY risk assessment report.	25/11/2022	31/03/2023	Risk and Internal Control Officer	In Progress	

COMMITTEES IN THE SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT

BSC – Bid Specification Committee

BAC- Bid adjudication Committee

BEC- Bid Evaluation Committee

5.11 RISK AND INTERNAL CONTROL

As part of our approach to the identification and ongoing management of risks across WDM, the risk assessment process was facilitated with members of management aim at updating the previously identified business risks and also to develop a risk profile for WDM. The risk assessment was facilitated by Risk Officer in a form of departmental heads one on one with Section 57 Managers and Acting Manager and Divisional Managers.

Legal Framework and Best Practice Guidelines

Municipal Finance Management Act No 56 of 2003 (MFMA) Section 62. (1) (c). The accounting officer of a municipality is responsible for managing the financial administration of the municipality and must for this purpose take steps to ensure that the municipality has and maintains effective, efficient and transparent system of financial and risk management and internal control.

- **Section 3.2.1 of the Treasury Regulations published in term of the PFMA:** The accounting officer must ensure that a risk assessment is conducted regularly to identify emerging risks for the institution
- **King IV report – Corporate Governance-** Report on Corporate Governance for South Africa, 2016 Principle 11 – “ The Governing Body should govern risk in a way that supports the organization in setting and achieving its strategic objectives”
- **ISO 31000:2018:** Risk Management – Guidelines, provides principles, framework and a process for managing risk. It can be used by any organization regardless of its size, activity or sector.
- **COSO (Committee of Sponsoring Organizations)** is a joint initiative of five private sector organizations and is dedicated to providing thought leadership through the development of frameworks and guidance on enterprise risk management internal control and fraud deterrence.

Approach

The following process was followed:

Identification of risks

The attendees assisted to identify the risks that may impact the business in achieving its objectives. Business risks were defined as: “the threat that an event or action will adversely affect an organisation’s ability to achieve its business objectives and to execute its strategies successfully”.

Rating of risks

Each risk was evaluated in terms of potential loss, likelihood of occurrence and the effectiveness of controls in place to manage the risks according to the criteria set out below:

2022/23 STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES AND STRATEGIC RISKS

No	Key Performance Area	Strategic Objectives	2022/2023 Strategic Risk	Responsible Department
1	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development.	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to service.	Air Quality – Waterberg has been identified as a hot spot	SDCS
2	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development.	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to service.	Fire Fighter - Effective Management	SDCS
3	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development.	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to service.	High floods risk – Projected rain levels	SDCS
4	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development.	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to service.	Abattoir – competitive, efficient and effective services	PED
5	Good Governance and Public Participation.	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems.	-	-
6	Spatial Rationale	To coordinating spatial transformation.	Tribunal – Land re-zoning	PED
7	Local Economic Development	To create a conducive environment for radical economic development.	-	-
8	Municipal Transformation and organizational development.	To attract develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Business continuity plan	OMM
9	Municipal Transformation and organizational development.	To attract develop and retain ethical and best human capital	High level of litigations	CSSS



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

10	Financial Management & viability	To effectively manage finances in an accountable way and improve financial efficiency and sustainability.	Financial sustainability	BTO
----	----------------------------------	---	--------------------------	-----

5.12 FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT & VIABILITY: KEY ISSUES & CHALLENGES

- Ageing infrastructure in towns
- The District Municipality is almost 100% dependent on Government grants
- Insufficient financial resources to provide water, electricity, sanitation, solid waste, sports & community facilities
- Inadequate indigent registers
- Limited capacity to repay loans at normal interests' rates by some municipalities
- Inadequate staffing of budget and treasury offices and high turnover of CFO's
- Inadequate project management and supply chain management systems
- Inadequate costing and specifications of budgeted projects
- Many municipalities are under financial distress
- Challenges with knowledge and information management.
- Inaccurate data on billing systems resulting in incomplete or inaccurate billing and bad debts.
- None implementation of revenue enhancement strategies
- Lack of funds for capital expenditure to support the economic growth of the area
- Large indigents base
- Municipalities have high levels of debt: None payment of services by government, private business and the community
- Debt collection in previously black townships is a challenge.
- Inadequate skills base in the budget and treasury unit.
- Ineffective Internal Audit unit and audit committee
- Non-implementation of risk and anti-corruption strategies
- Although there is improvement, there are still negative audit opinions
- Increase in debt
- Difficulty in identifying related parties in SCM procurement transactions
- Implementation of residual values and lifespans of assets while complying with MFMA & related legislations as well as GRAP standards and resolution of inconsistencies between the two.
- Classification of roads between district and local municipalities and RAL in terms of the lack of implementation of the 2004 gazette assigning responsibilities to municipalities.
- Calculation of possible contingent liability on the future implementation of the SALGA Wage Curve Agreement in the absence of Final Outcome Reports for municipalities.
- Implementation of MSCOA(READINESS)

CHAPTER 6 – GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION ANALYSIS

6.1 FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPAL COUNCIL AND COMMITTEES

Municipality	No of wards	Council stability and functionality	Traditional Leaders	Audit, Performance Audit Committee and Risk Management	MPAC	Anti-Fraud & Corruption policies and committee	Supply Chain Committee	CDW's
Bela-Bela	09	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Modimolle-Mookgopong	14	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Policy available No Committee	Yes	Yes
Mogalakwena	32	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Not approved	Yes	Yes
Lephalale	13	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Thabazimbi	10 (02 not established)	Yes	No	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes
Waterberg	78	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

RELATIONSHIP WITH TRADITIONAL LEADERSHIP

There are 12 traditional authorities in the District Municipality. Recognition and involvement of the traditional leaders in matters of local government yield cooperative governance between the three recognized institutions. Traditional authorities both in Mogalakwena, Lephalale and Bela-Bela municipalities play a role in development of communities. They have a representative who has occupied an office in the District Municipality. There is a good communication within the District Municipality and the Traditional leaders. The role of the authorities' in development is mostly profound in mobilizing communities and allocation of land for residents and development. However there are challenges as consultative and involvement processes of allocating land in accordance to the LUMS have not yet yielded planned settlements with basic infrastructure in the rural areas. The District Municipality has managed to establish the District Traditional Health Practitioners Committee in line with the Traditional Health Practitioners Act No 22 of 2007. Their role is to coordinate activities of the Health Practitioners and ensure that they practice according to the four recognized practices, thus Diviner, Herbalist, Traditional Birth attendant and Traditional Surgeon. They will also be working closely with the departments to promote public health and ensure the quality of health services within the traditional health practice.

6.2. FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPAL PUBLIC ACCOUNTS COMMITTEE, WARD COMMITTEES AND CDWs

	District	BelaBela	Modimolle-Mookkgophong	Mogalakwena	Lephalale	Thabazimbi
Political Management Team functionality	PMT forum functional. MPAC ESTABLISHED and functional however continuous capacitation still required.					
Number of established ward committees.	79	9	14	32	12	12
Number of functional wards committees.	79	0	13	32	12	12
Staff in speakers office (supporting public participation)	111 incl 4 for district	0	3	3	1	0 Ward & Public Participation Co-ordinator advertised)

6.3 INTERGOVERNMENTAL RELATIONS (IGR)

Local government does not have the powers and functions over a range of services that communities expect. These sit with the other spheres of government. While planning for such services should be integrated into the IDP, The process is highly dependent on the cooperation, commitment and involvement of provinces and national government in municipal processes.

District Municipalities are the core of promoting intergovernmental relations for better provision of service delivery. The establishment of municipal IGR forums within the district has positive yields but still with some challenges to accelerate service delivery.

The following forums take place in the District:

Mayor's Forum, Municipal Managers' Forum, CFO's Forum, Technical Forum, District Economic Planning Development Forum, IDP Managers Forum, ICT Forum, IDP REP Forum, M & E Forum, Communications Forum, District Tourism Forum, Occupational Health & Safety, Internal Auditors Forum, Internal Audit, Risk Management Forum, Traditional House, Skills Development Forum.

Active Environmental Forums in the Waterberg District:

WATERBERG ENVIRONMENT AND BIODIVERSITY CONSERVATION FORUM: WEBC FORUM

WATERBERG AIR QUALITY FORUM: WAQF

WATERBERG IMPLEMENTATION TASK TEAM: WITT (LINKED TO AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT PLAN)

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

WATERBERG WASTE WORKING GROUP: WWWG
WATERBERG SOCIAL SERVICES FORUM: WSSF

NB: All these FORUMs / Structures sit Quarterly (4 x per annum)

The following are also district wide council /committees:

Disability, youth, older persons, aids council early childhood development (jointly with Department of Education), sports and arts council, Moral regeneration, and domestic workers.

Inter-Governmental Relations issues and challenges include:

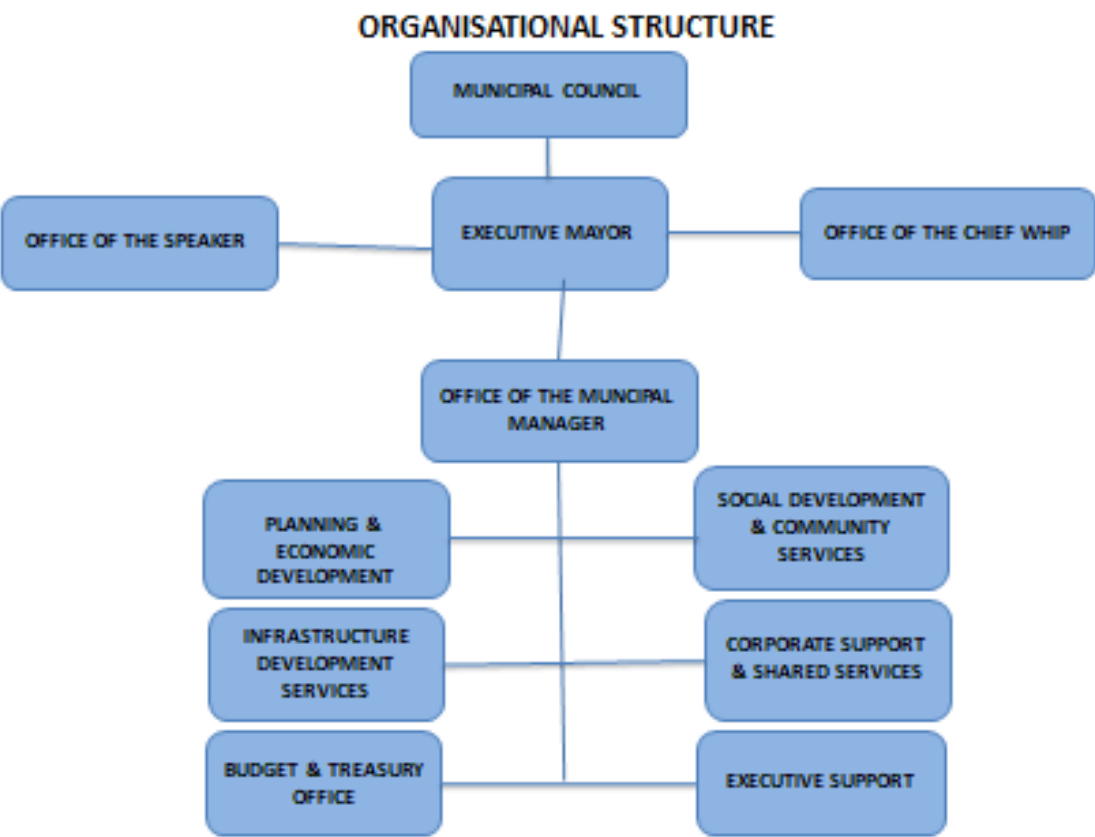
- Limited participation of other spheres of government in municipal planning processes
- Inadequate linkage of different priorities of other spheres of government by municipalities and vice versa
- Inadequate participation of District municipality in sector department strategic planning session to influence priorities to address service delivery challenges.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

7.1. INSTITUTIONAL STRUCTURE

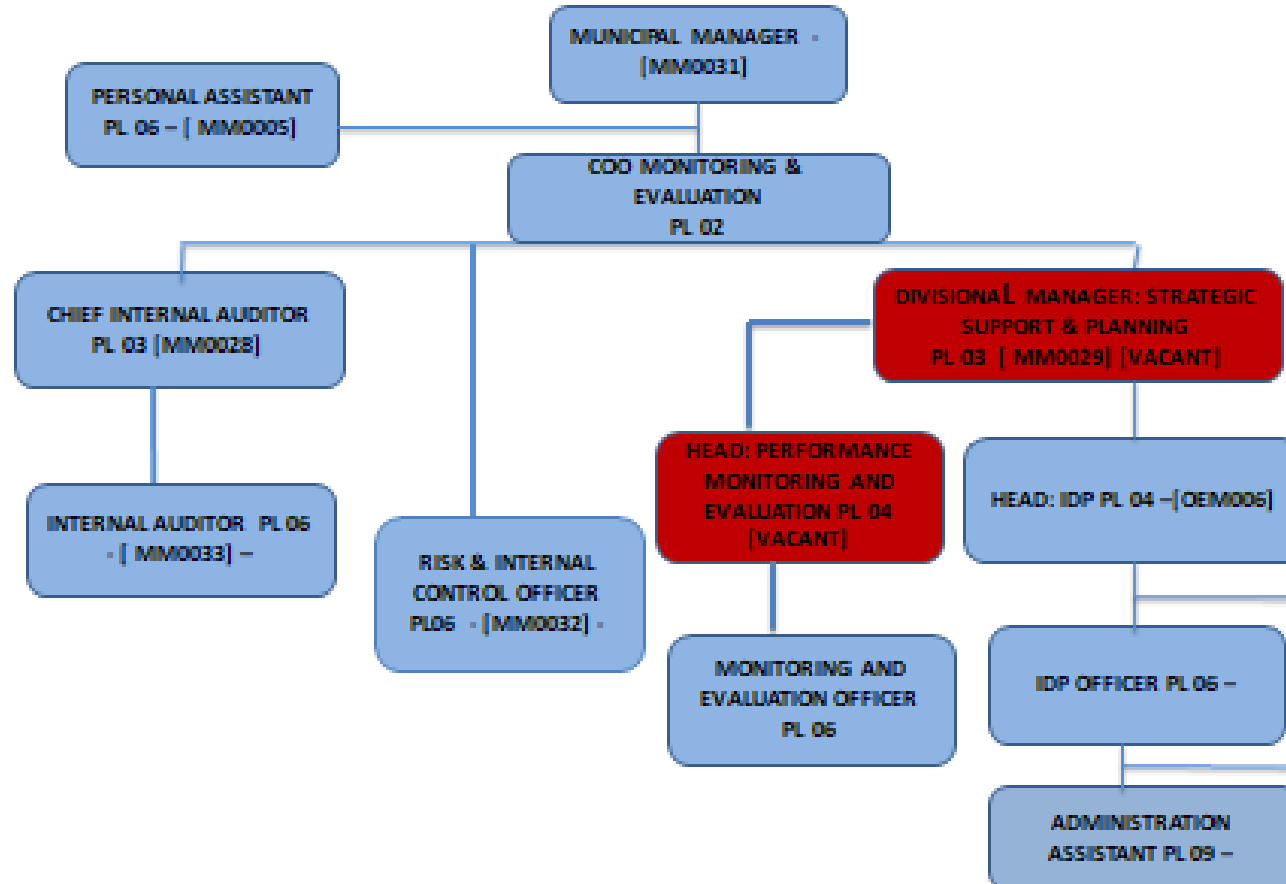


APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

OFFICE OF THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER



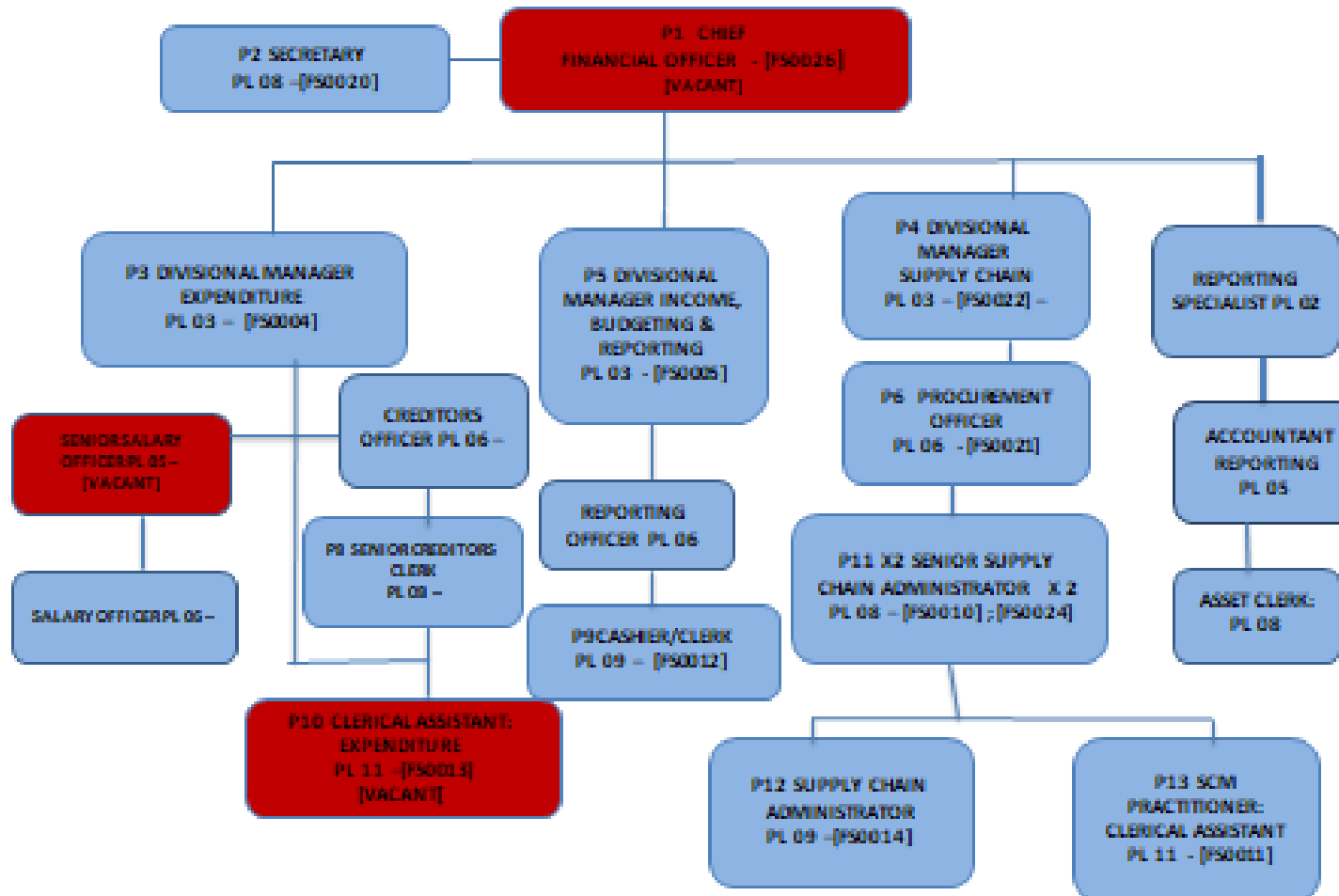
APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

BUDGET AND TREASURY OFFICE



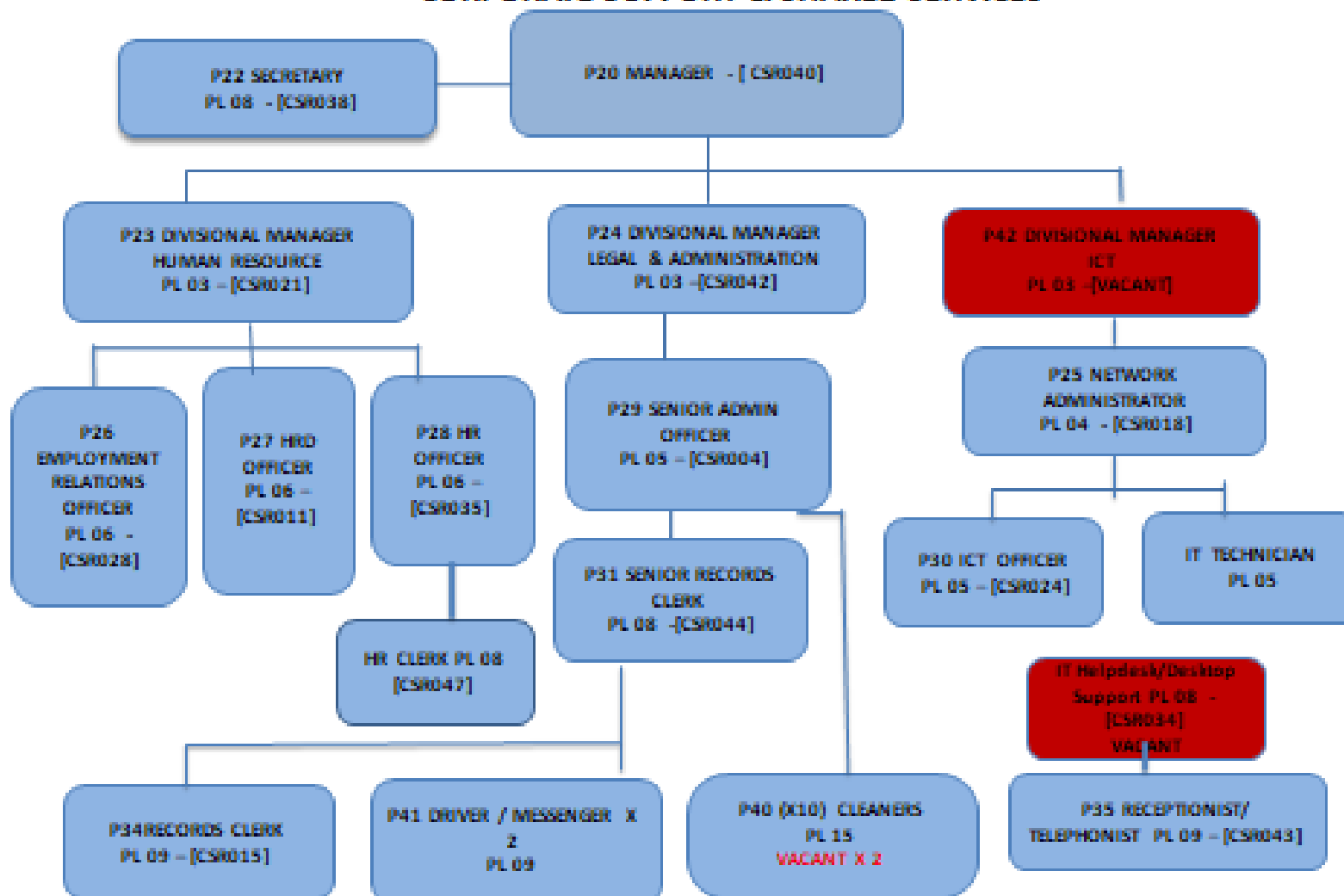
APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

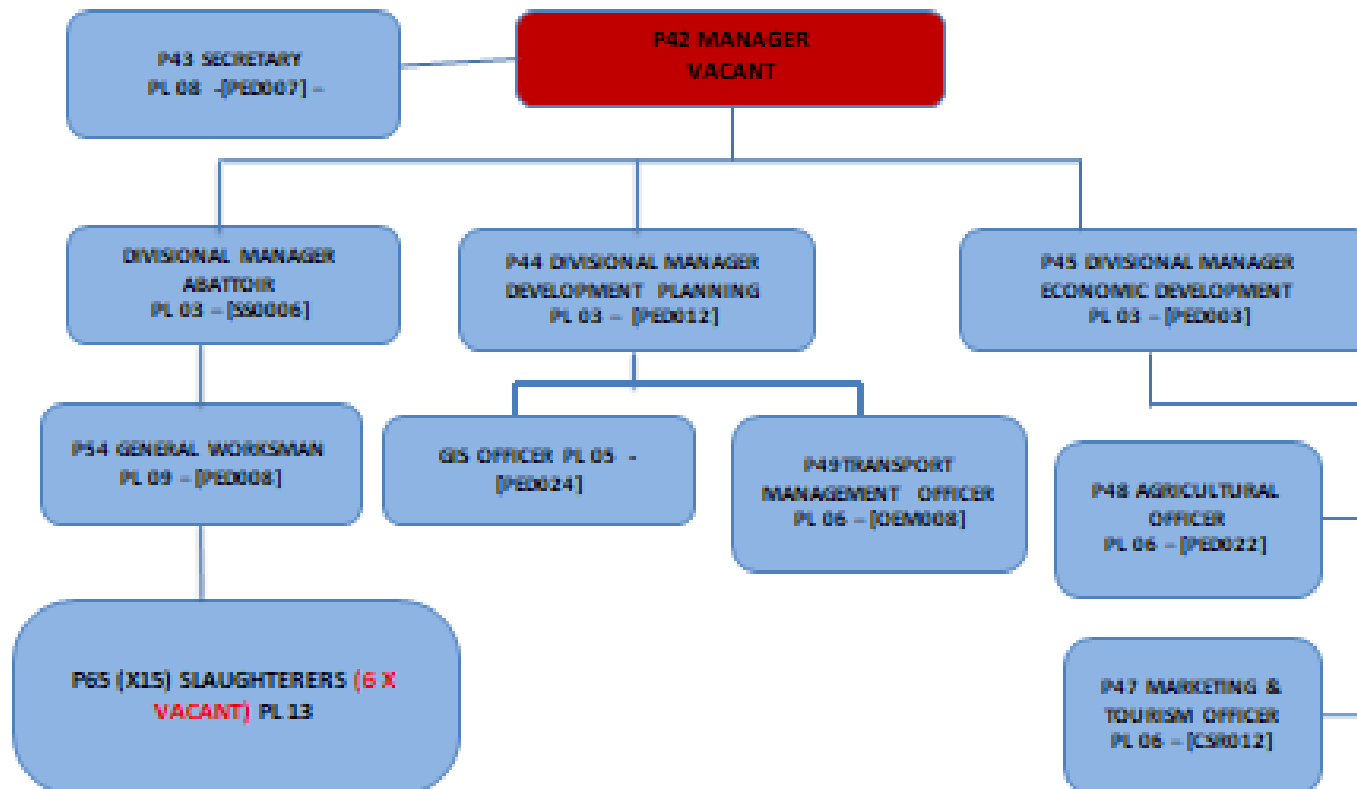
on the Go for Growth

CORPORATE SUPPORT & SHARED SERVICES



APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023

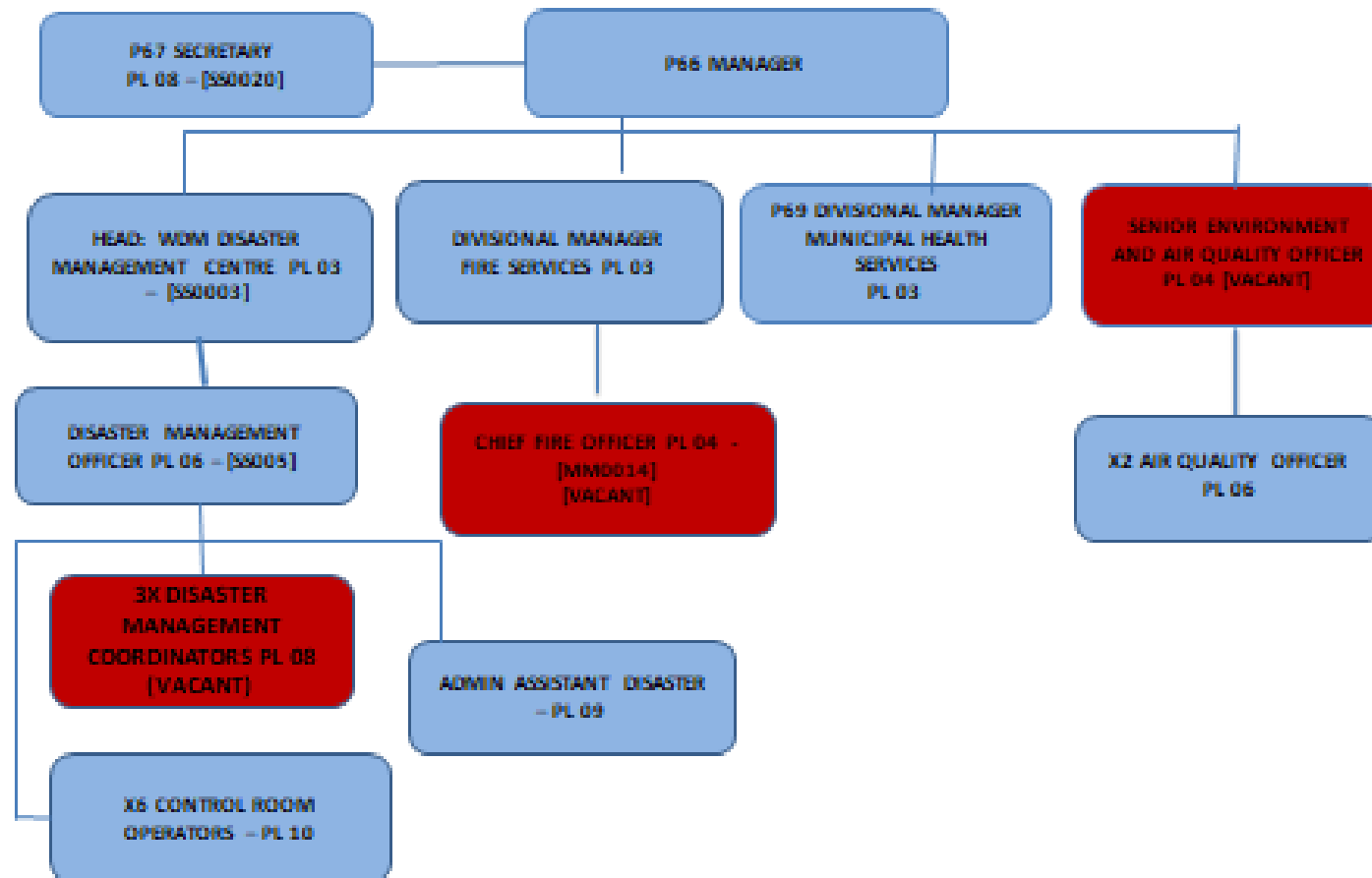
PLANNING & ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT



APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT AND COMMUNITY SERVICES – CONTINUED NEXT PAGE



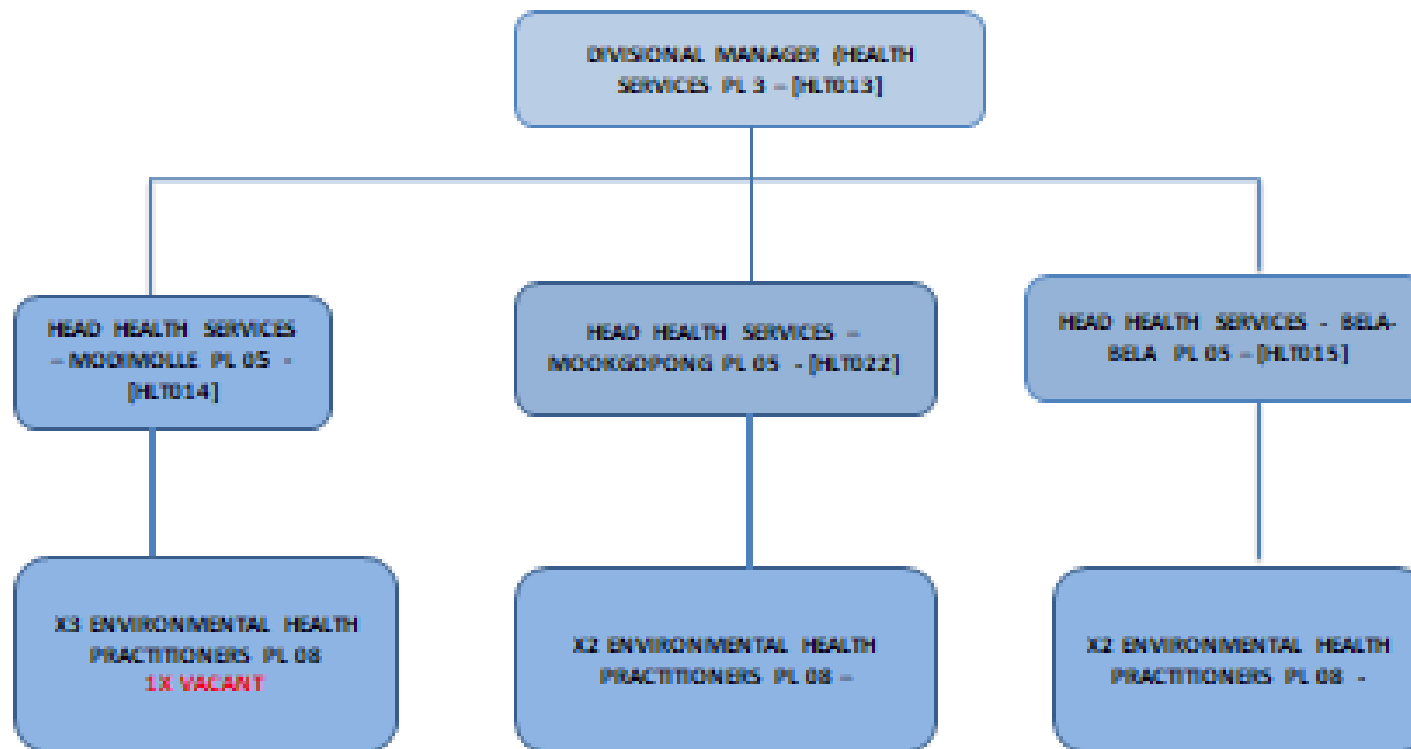
APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

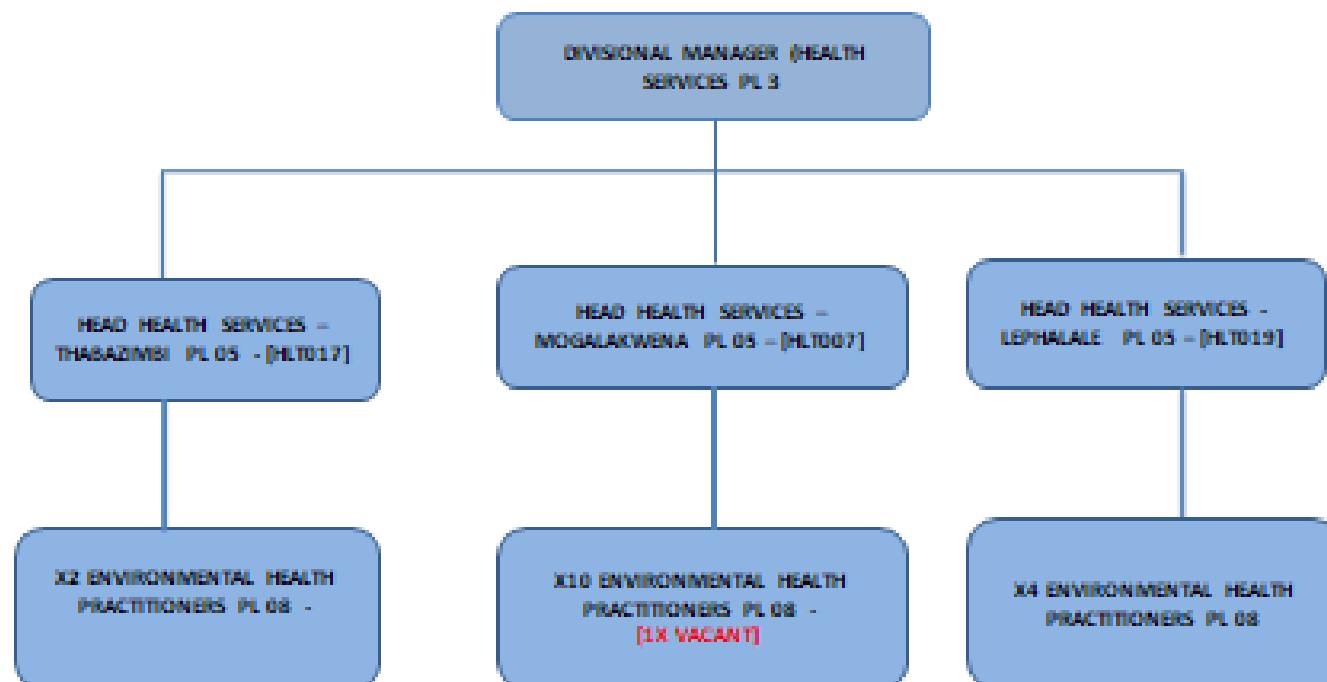
on the Go for Growth

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT AND COMMUNITY SERVICES – CONTINUED NEXT PAGE



APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT AND COMMUNITY SERVICES – CONTINUED NEXT PAGE



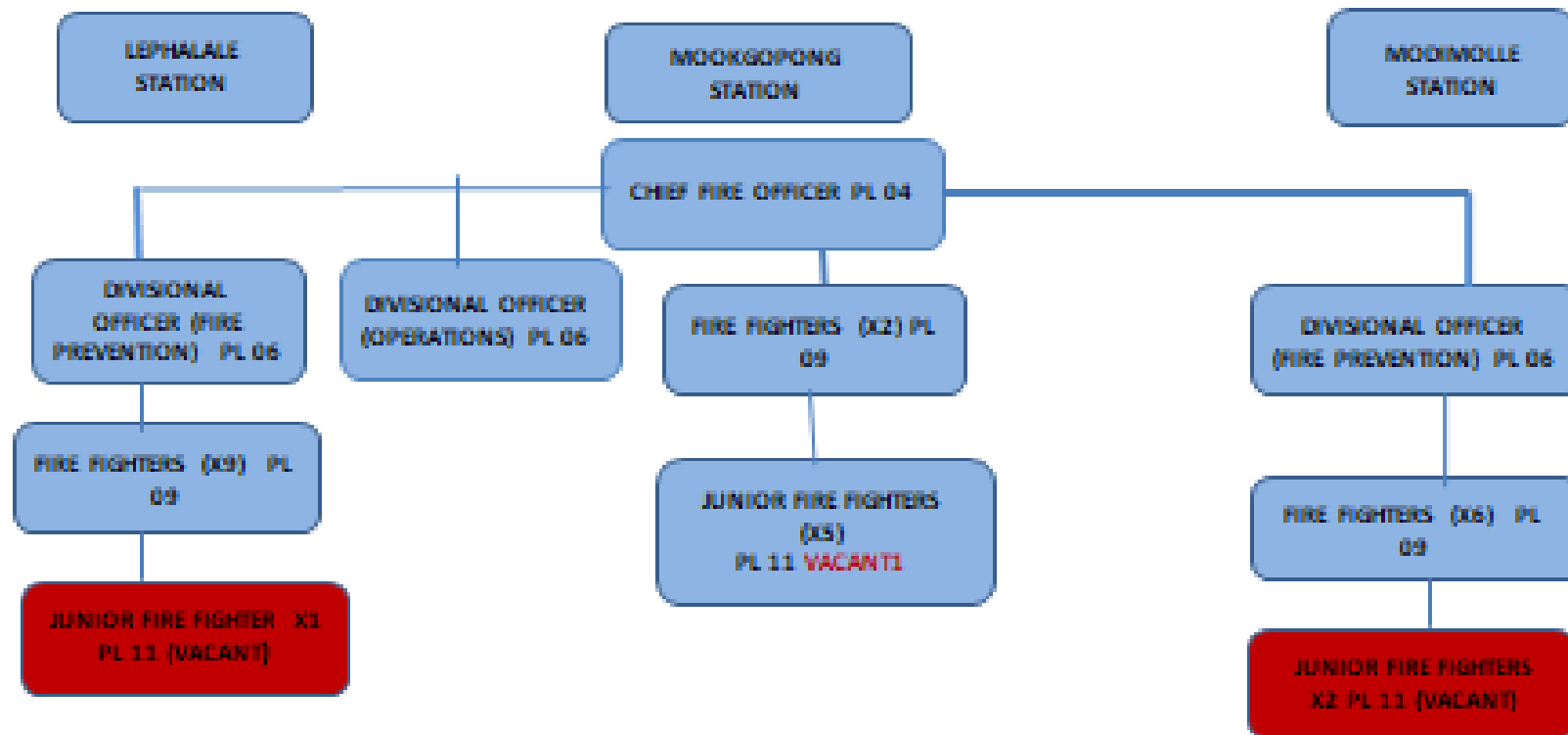
APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023



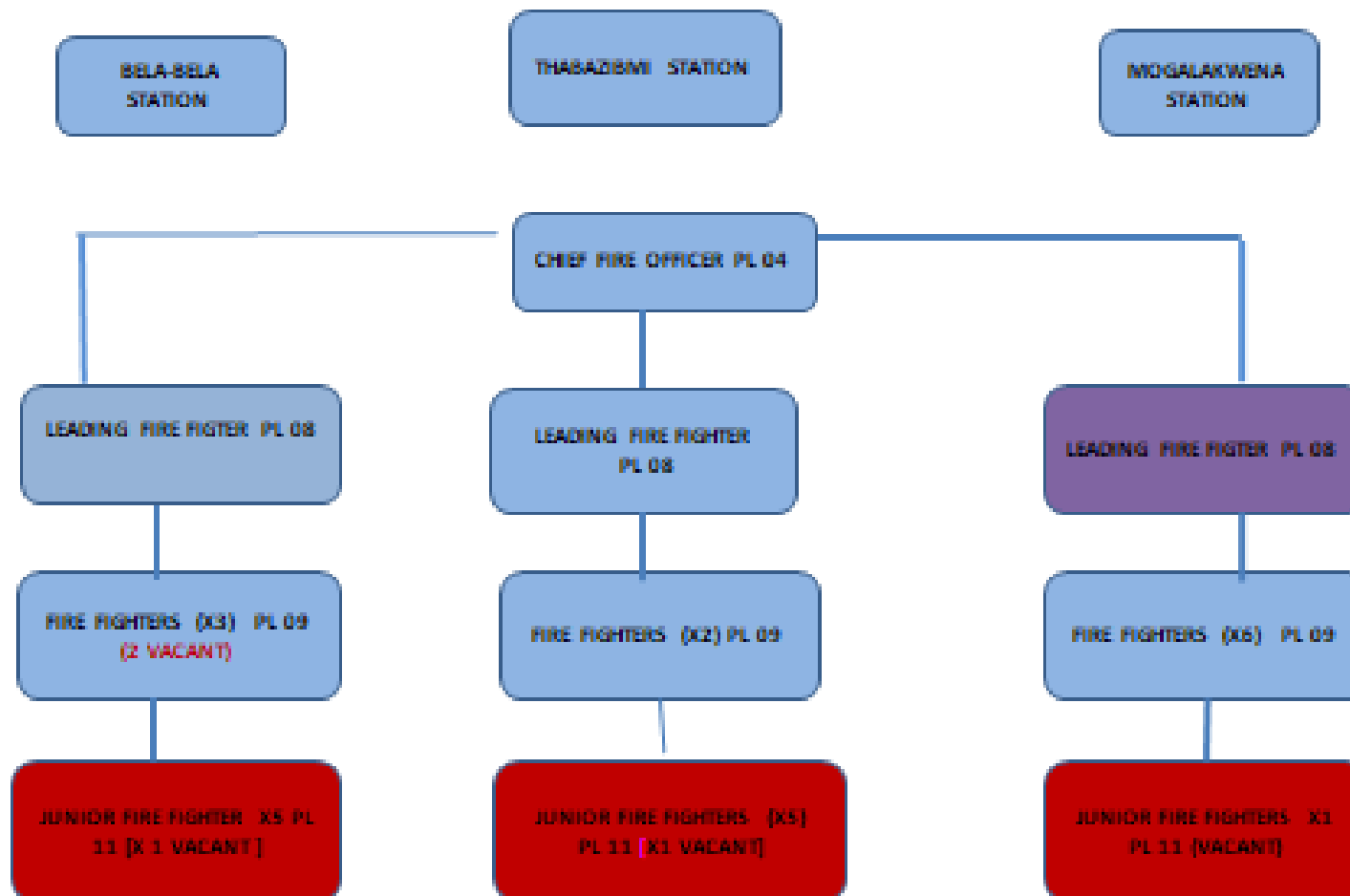
© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT & COMMUNITY SERVICES



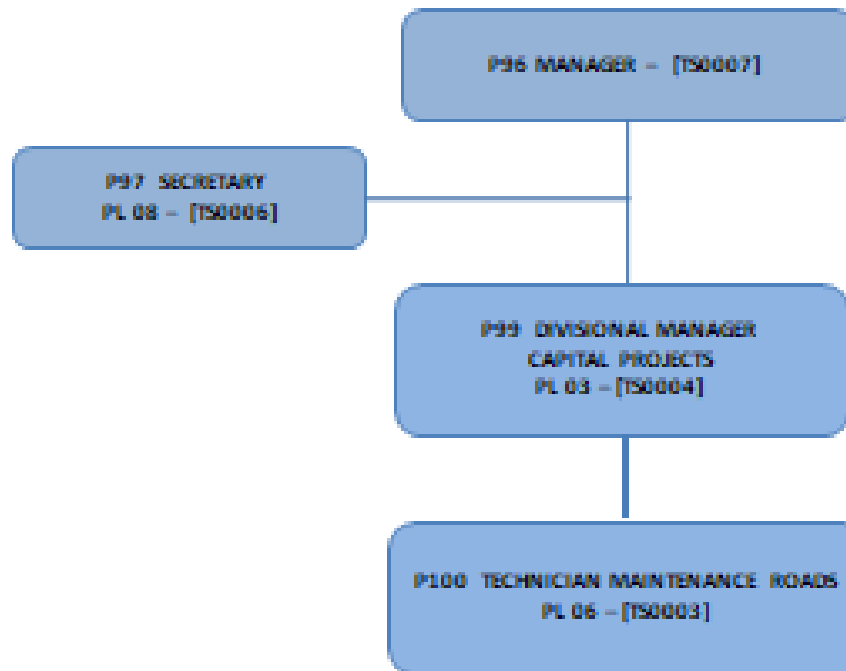
SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT & COMMUNITY SERVICES



APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

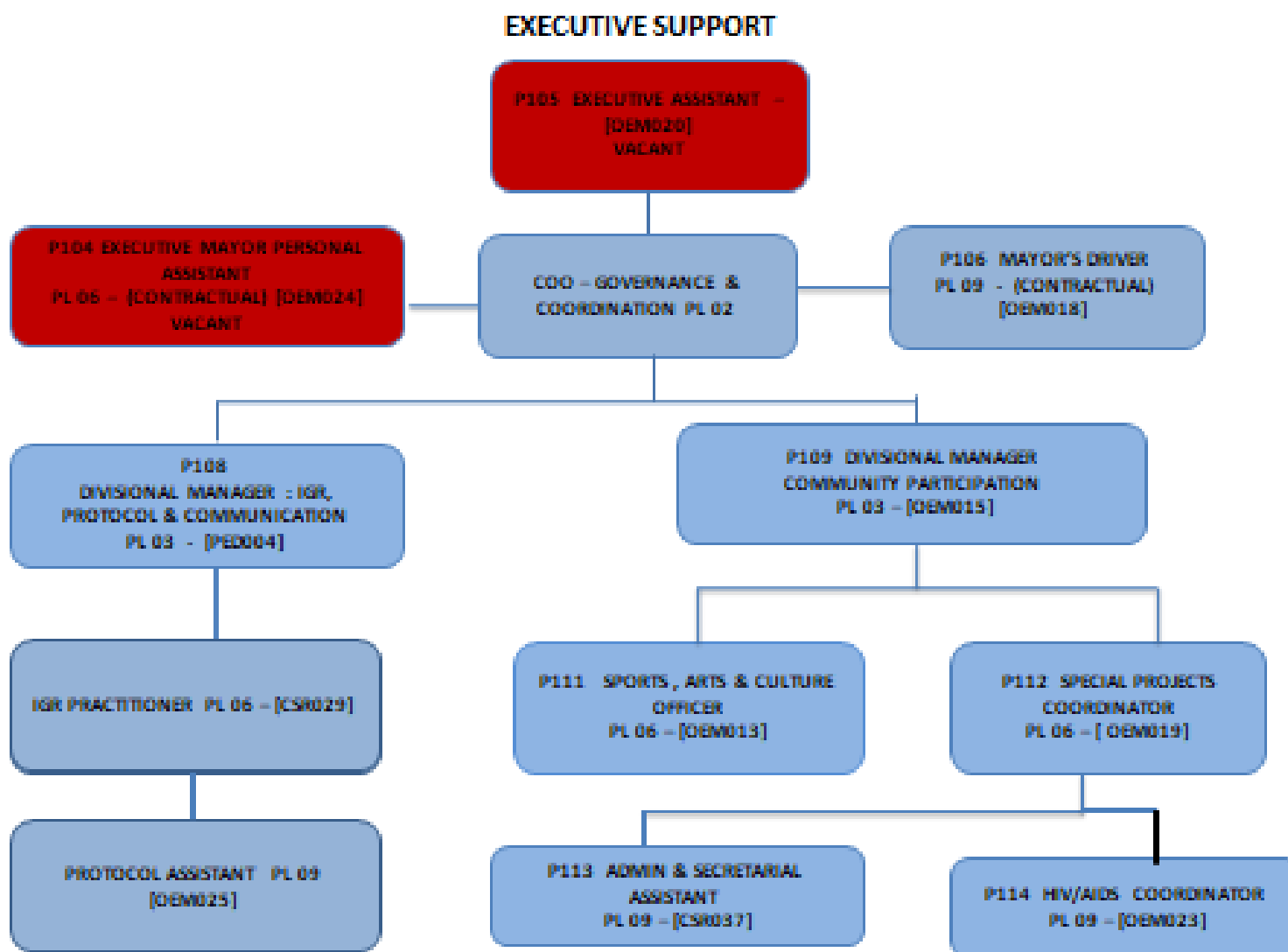
INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT



APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023

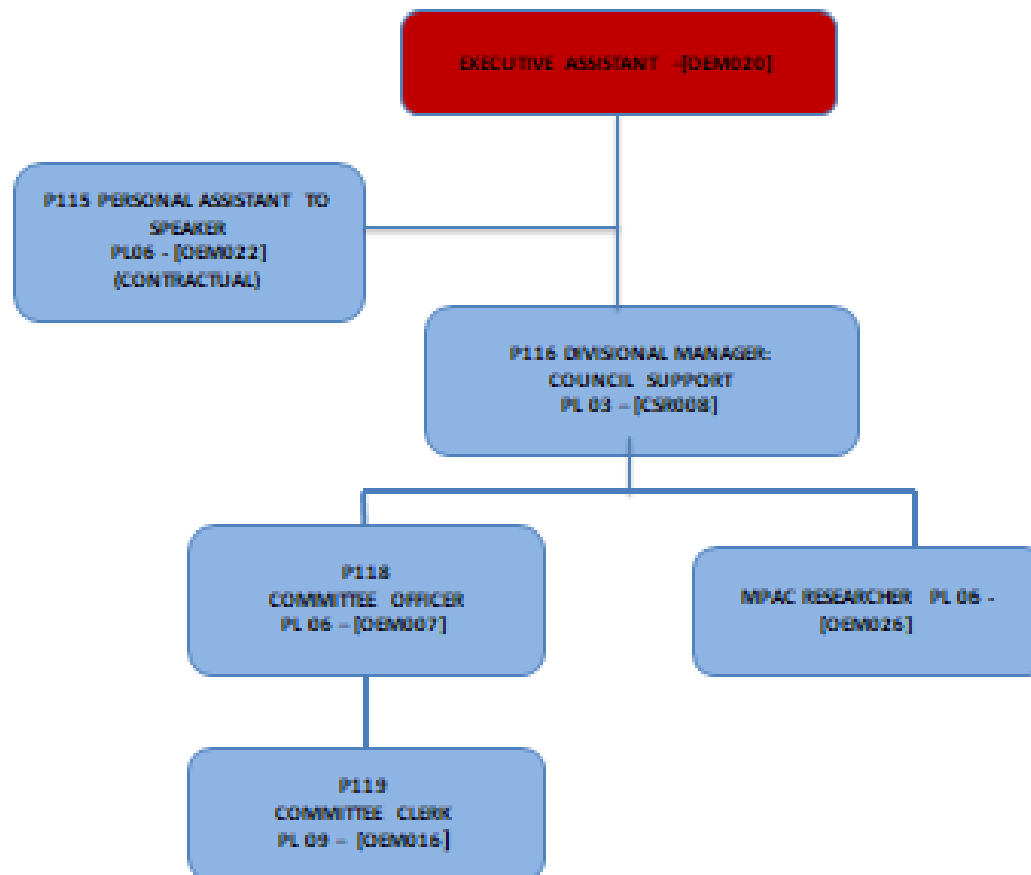


© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP



APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023

OFFICE OF THE SPEAKER



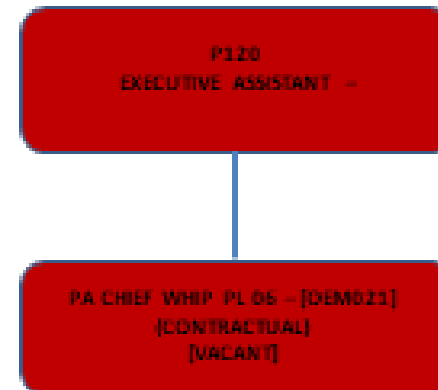
APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

OFFICE OF THE CHIEF WHIP



APPROVED WDM ORGANOGRAM 2022/2023



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

7.2 FILLING OF CRITICAL POSTS

MUNICIPALITY	MUNICIPAL MANAGER	CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER	MANAGER INFRASTRUCTURE/ TECHNICAL	MANAGER CORPORATE SERVICE	MANAGER DEVELOPMENT PLANNING	MANAGER SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT AND COMMUNITY SERVICES
Waterberg	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
Bela-Bela	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Modimolle-Mookgopong	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Mogalakwena	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Lephalale	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
Thabazimbi	Yes	No	No	No	Yes	Yes
Total	6/6	3/6	3/6	5/6	3/6	5/6



7.3 VACANCIES RATE AS AT 31 MARCH 2022

VACANCIES AS AT 31 MARCH 2023	
OFFICE OF THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER	
Divisional Manager Strategic Support and Planning PL 02	Vacant (01/09/2021)
Head Monitoring and Evaluation PL 06	New post (2022/2023)
BUDGET AND TREASURY	
Chief Financial Officer	Post advertised
Senior Salary Officer PL 05	Vacant (01/05/2021)
SCM Practitioner Clerical Assistant PL 11	Vacant (01/01/2022)
CORPORATE SUPPORT & SHARED SERVICES	
Divisional Manager ICT PL03	New post (2022/2023)
IT Helpdesk/Desktop Support PL 08	Vacant (01/01/2022)
Cleaner X 2	Vacant (new post)
PLANNING AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT	
Manager Planning & Economic Development	Post advertised
Slaughteres x 6 PL 13	Vacant
SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT AND COMMUNITY SERVICES	
Snr Environment and Air Quality Officer PL04	New post (FY: 2022/2023)

Environmental Health Practitioner X 2: / Modimolle/Mogakwena PL 08	Vacant (26/08/2021)
Fire Fighter Bela-Bela X2 PL 09	Vacant (01/03/2023)
Chief Fire Officer PL 04	Vacant (01/09/2021)
Disaster Management Coordinator X 3	Vacant (new post)
Junior Fire Fighter X 7	Vacant (new post)
EXECUTIVE SUPPORT	
PA Executive Mayor PL 06	Vacant (01/02/2022)
Executive Assistant PL 02	Vacant (01/09/2021)
PA Chief Whip PL 06	Vacant (01/12/2021)
TOTAL POSTS VACANT	35
TOTAL NUMBER OF POSTS	209
TOTAL NUMBER OF FILLED POSTS	174
	% VACANCIES = 16.7
	% FILLED = 83.2

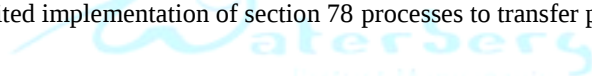


The District Municipality has twelve powers and functions conferred to it through section 84 sub-sections 1 of the Local Government Municipal Structures Act.

APT – Authority to Perform, PFM – Powers Performed by Municipality, ESP – External Service Provider S78 – Section 78 Process in terms of System Act Complete, SDA – Service Delivery Agreement in Place

Functions of the municipality according to the Constitution, the Municipal Structures Act and Systems Act	ATP	PFM	ESP or Other Sphere of Govt.	S78	SDA
Air pollution	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No
Bulk sewage purification and main sewage disposal	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Cemeteries and Crematoria	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Municipal roads	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Education	No	No	No	No	No
Fire-Fighting Services	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Local Economic Development	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Municipal Abattoir	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No
Municipal Airports	Yes	No	No	No	No
Municipal Health Services	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes
Municipal Public Transport Planning	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Municipal Public Works	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Municipal Planning	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Safety and Security	No	No	Yes	No	No
Social Development	No	No	Yes	No	No
Sports, Arts and Culture	No	No	Yes	No	No
Refuse removal, refuse dumps and solid waste	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No

The implementation of the development mandate is comprised mainly by limited financial and human resources capacity, unavailability of institutional plan, limited options to retain skilled and technical staff members and limited implementation of section 78 processes to transfer powers and functions.



To implement the powers and functions of the municipality, there are oversight committees established to ensure accountability and transparency of municipal processes. The political oversight role of council is performed by Council functionaries that are established in terms of the Municipal Structure Act.

7.4 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (PMS)

The measurement of the outcome of integrated development planning at local government can be realized when municipalities establishes performance management systems that are integrated and seamless to the IDP. Performance management system is developed for the purpose of improving the public service (i.e. through increased economy, efficiency and effectiveness in service delivery) and to reinforce accountability, so that organisations are clearly held to account for the resource they use, and the outcomes achieved. At local government the system is consists of developing the IDP aligned to the budget, development of SDBIP, reporting, assessment, performance auditing, appraisal and community participation in monitoring performance.

There are consecutive steps taken by municipalities to develop performance management system. The development of the system is still at an infancy level as municipalities are still struggling to develop a system that entrench good governance to improve service delivery. The performance assessment is still conducted at top management level with the limitation of cascading the system to all individual employees.

Organisational Performance Management System

Waterberg District Municipality has established its automated Performance Management System in 2009 with the Service Provider, Institute for Performance Management. WDM has a Balanced Score Card. The components of a Performance Management as envisaged by section 41 of the Municipal System Act, are in existence such as:

- Key Performance Indicators
- Measurable Performance Targets
- Monitoring of Performance
- Performance Assessments
- Regular Reporting
- Performance Agreements
- Performance Auditing

Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan is used as the monitoring and management tool which implement an IDP. The SDBIP has 33 KPIs excluding the new B2B indicators, which are spread over the seven departments of the municipality. A performance framework and policy have been reviewed to accommodate changes precipitated by the legislation.

Individual Performance Management System

Section 54 and 57Section Managers sign Performance Agreements within one month of their employment. To hold them accountable they also develop their Performance Plans in line with the SDBIP, which they are review on a quarterly basis.

Those who perform outstandingly preceded by the approval of Oversight Report are entitled to performance bonuses; on condition such bonuses were budgeted for the same financial year.

Performance Management System (PMS) Key Issues and Challenges:

- Inadequate baseline information to monitor progress for implementation of IDP
- Limited involvement of communities to monitor the performance of municipalities.
- Performance management is not cascaded to all municipal employees. It is limited to top management.

7.5 SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

On an annual basis, the Waterberg District Municipality develops the Workplace Skills Plan and Annual Training Report, which the training committee must endorse for Council to approve before sending to LGSETA on or before 30 April. Up to date we have timeously submitted the WSP to LGSETA. On a quarterly basis, a training report is submitted to LGSETA which is used to monitor the implementation of the WSP. The training includes the development of not only lower placed employees but also senior managers, Councillors and Traditional Leaders.

The types of training interventions that are offered in the municipality are amongst others in-house training, on-the job training, workshops etc. with accredited services providers. The Municipality also encourages employee self-development by offering conditional grant (bursaries). We have employees who has managed through the conditional grant to achieve their under and post graduates qualifications.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 100: TRAINING NEEDS IDENTIFIED

Division	Training identified
Infrastructure Development	Routine road maintenance Non-motorized planning and design Design and construction of surfaced low volume roads
Social Services	CPD points for Municipal Health Practitioners Food Safety and Quality Solid Waste Management Occupational Health and Hygiene Environmental Management
Corporate Support and Shared Services	Supervisory Skills Charging Disciplinary Hearings Managing Stress and Improving Productivity Computer Training Absenteeism and Sick leave abuse Records management Project Management
Office of the Municipal Manager	Conducting an audit from Cradle to the Grave Risk Management Courses PMS Courses IDP courses Leadership and Management Courses
BTO	SCM Courses Municipal Finance Management Program Cash-flow management
Executive Support	Leadership skills MPAC and MFMP IDP Skills for councillor Protocol and etiquette Strategic Management Gender Mainstreaming



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

TABLE 102: NUMBER OF OFFICIAL CAPACITATED IN TERMS OF THE WORKPLACE SKILL PLAN

NUMBER OF OFFICIAL CAPACITATED IN TERMS OF THE WORKPLACE SKILL PLAN

Period	Training provided/Ongoing	No of Officials/ Cllrs.	Status	Intervention	Name of Service provider
Jul-Sep 2022	Leadership Development	6 Officials 6 Councillors	Completed	Skills Programme	In Transformation Initiative
Oct-Dec 2022	Mentorship Programme	10 Officials	Ongoing	Mentorship	National Business Initiative (NBI) in collaboration with Exarro.
Oct-Dec 2022	Performance Management Programme	10 Councillors	Completed	Skills Programme	SALGA
Oct-Dec 2022	SCM Diploma levels 2 and 4	5 officials	Ongoing	Full qualification	Chartered Institute of procurement and supply
Oct-Dec 2022	Monitoring and Evaluation	3 Officials 3 Councillors	Completed	Skills Program	WITS University ABSA and SALGA
Jan-March 2023	EPWP Workshop	2 officials	Completed	Workshop	Public Works
Jan-March 2023	Performance Management Programme	2 Officials	Completed	Skills Programme	COGHSTA
Jan – March 2023	Municipal Finance Management Programme	8 Officials	Ongoing	Learnership	Excellent Minds
Jan – March 2023	Advanced Excel Training	2 Officials	Completed	Skills Programme	COGHSTA
Jan – March 2023	Records Management	2 Officials	Complete	Skills Programme	COGHSTA
Jan 2023	BCOM PPM	1 official	Ongoing	Bursary	WDM

Jan 2023	ND Fire Tech	1 official	Ongoing	Bursary	WDM
Jan 2023	B Public Man	1 official	Ongoing	Bursary	WDM
Jan 2023	B HRD	1 official	Ongoing	Bursary	WDM
Jan 2023	ND Local Government	1 official	Ongoing	Bursary	WDM

7.6 SUCCESSION PLAN AND RETENTION PLAN

Succession and Retention plan are still lacking.

INSTITUTIONAL & ORGANIZATIONAL DEVELOPMENT CHALLENGES

- Inadequate institutional capacity due to lack of resources to fund the organizational structure
- Lack of service delivery by – laws and implementation
- Office space

7.7 COMPLAINTS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

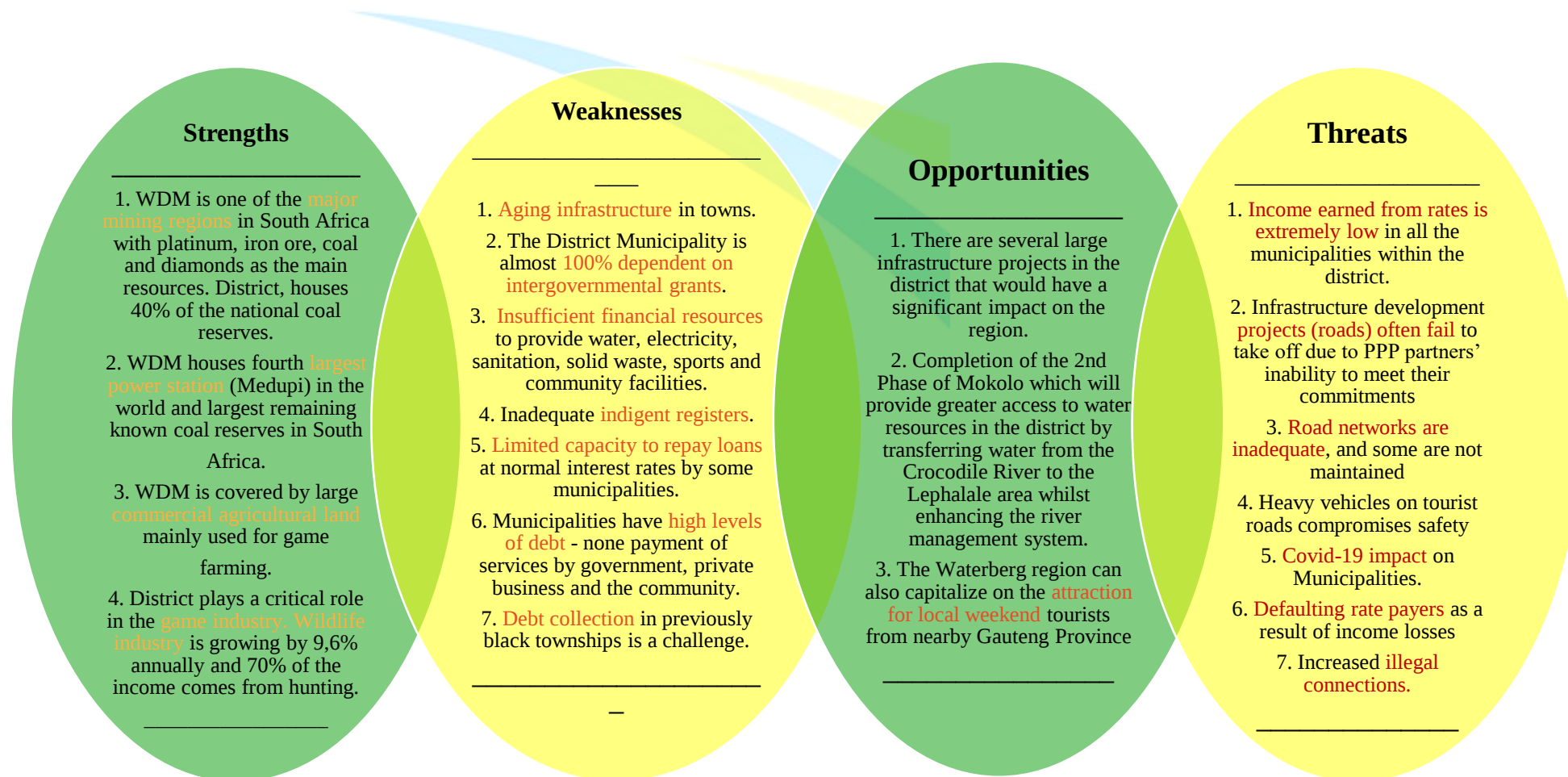
The Municipality has a complaints Management system which is functional and it respond to complaints and compliments from the community.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

7.8 WDM SWOT ANALYSIS



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Strengths

#	KPA	ATTRIBUTE
1	Spatial Rationale	Functional GIS platform
2	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	None
3	Local Economic Development	District-Wide Local Economic Development strategy
4	Financial Viability and Management	Uniformed & Functional Financial system
5	Good Governance and Public Participation	None
6	Municipal Transformation and organisational development	Compliant Employment Equity plans Uniformed & Functional Human Resources system

Weaknesses

#	KPA	ATTRIBUTE
1	Spatial Rationale	Integrated Development Planning Integrated & Compliant Spatial Development framework
2	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	Grant spending Poor forward planning
3	Local Economic Development	Implementation of Local Economic Development strategy Enforcement of By-Laws
4	Financial Viability and Management	Grant dependency Enforcement of By-Laws
5	Good Governance and Public Participation	Inter-Governmental Relations structures
6	Municipal Transformation and organisational development	Sound Management practices Vacant key positions i.e. Fire & Air Quality Services High staff turnover



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Opportunities

#	KPA	ATTRIBUTE
1	Spatial Rationale	Land access for development Regional landfill site
2	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	EPWP for job creation
3	Local Economic Development	Growth point Public Private Partnerships
4	Financial Viability and Management	Broad revenue base i.e. farms and game reserves Emission license
5	Good Governance and Public Participation	None
6	Municipal Transformation and organisational development	None

Threats

#	KPA	ATTRIBUTE
1	Spatial Rationale	Informal settlements Urbanization i.e. dolomitic areas
2	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	Deteriorating service delivery standards Community unrest
3	Local Economic Development	High levels of unemployment, especially among the youth Economic exclusions
4	Financial Viability and Management	Lack of political will to maintain District mandates
5	Good Governance and Public Participation	Unintegrated IGR structures
6	Municipal Transformation and organisational development	Institutional relevance



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

CHAPTER 8 – CROSS CUTTING ISSUES (DISASTER MANAGEMENT)

8.1 DISASTER RISK ANALYSIS

Disaster Management Act No. 57 of 2002, Amended Disaster Management Act No. 16 of 2015, National Disaster Management Policy Framework of 2005, The Reviewed Waterberg District Disaster Management Framework & Plan dated December 2014; etc. Please note that their implications are highly critical because thorough proactive planning without taking them into cognizance might have undesirable consequences or devastating or disastrous outcomes either man-made or natural.

Risk Analysis-Refer to the approved Reviewed Waterberg District Framework & Plan dated December 2014 which is found from the WDM website;

Mapping of hazard/risks in accordance with their prevalence-Also refer to the approved Waterberg District Disaster Management Framework & Plan dated December 2014 which is found from the WDM website;

Risks or hazards profiling at our Ward level-This is quite a very difficult or tricky question to be fairly answered now much as there is that positive acknowledgement from the IDP Office that Disaster Risk Management was neglected by the third sphere of Government for a longer time whereby it was mostly prioritised, but not budgeted for accordingly. PDMC-CoGHSTA during 2013/14 financial year did managed to develop their local disaster management plans wherein they were all requested to table them on or before their respective Councils in vain. Meaning that the high level indication for tangible hazard profiling at the Ward level within the Waterberg District is currently non-existence or totally not there, hence our new approach towards comprehensive Review of the Waterberg District Disaster Management Framework & Plan whereby myself, Acting Manager SDCS and the PDMC-CoGHSTA (Mr Mike Moja) have jointly embarked on a robust consultative processes with our 4 National Key Points (i.e. Mokolo Dam Pump Station, Tom Burke Solar Plant, Eskom-Medupi & Eskom-Matimba) that urgently needs to be incorporated in our planning initiatives as they were all visited during January 2019. It is very critical to ensure the final approval of an amount of R500 000.00 during 2019/20 financial year in order to be able to take the Disaster Risk Management Chapter within the IDP to the highest level in adherence to the prescriptives of the applicable legislation; Capacity in terms of quantity & quality from our locals-Thabazimbi local municipality is having 04 Disaster Management Coordinators (i.e. not sufficient or not equal to the tasks), Lephalale local municipality is only having 01 Disaster Management Coordinator (i.e. not equal to the tasks being so exposed to floods, domestic fires, drought, road accidents, etc.), Mogalakwena (the most exposed one with various categorised hazards with a high population figure), Bela-Bela & Modimolle-Mookgopong local municipalities are all not having dedicated personnel for directly dealing with Disaster Risk Management, hence no operating or capital budgets being set aside on a continuous basis/deliberately or intentionally which is too bad towards balanced effective service delivery (i.e. disaster risk reduction strategies not be easily achieved under the circumstances); and

High level risks/hazards at our cross borders-The last conducted Disaster Risk Assessments was undertaken at Stockpoort Port of Entry, Groblers Bridge Port of Entry, Platjan Port of Entry & Zanzibar Port of Entry (they all fall within Lephalale connecting to our neighbouring country of Botswana) during 2009/10 financial year whereby all identified risks and/or capital projects were not fairly implemented as a result of Waterberg District Municipality losing water authority status as it was directly devolved to our local municipalities (i.e. devastating downgrading which requires to be urgently politically reviewed in order to protect the WDM from dying a painful. slow death).



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

8.2 MUNICIPAL PRIORITIZATION

KPA	Summary by order of priority
Spatial	1. SDF Review 2. DMPT Coordination 3. GIS Maintenance
Social	1. Review of the Air Quality Management Plan 2. Review of the Disaster Management Plan 3. Rehabilitation of then Bela Bela Fire Station
Economic	1. SMME Development and Support 2. Tourism Development 3. Agricultural Development
Environment	1. Promulgation of ByLaws 2. Ambient Air Monitoring Station 3. Development of the Regional Land fill site
Infrastructure	1. intergrated WSDP for District 2. Intergrated ITP Review
Financial	
Institutional	1. ICT Equipment 2. Pool Vehicles 3. Automation of PMS



CHAPTER 9 - STRATEGIC PHASE

9.1 STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

KPA	Strategies objectives
Spatial Rationale	To coordinating spatial transformation.
Basic Service Delivery	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to services.
Local Economic Development	To create a conducive environment for radical economic development.
Financial Management & Viability	To effectively and efficiently manage finances and resource mobilisation.
Good Governance & Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management & governance systems
Transformation & Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital

The table below seeks to summarise departmental and stakeholders' presentations that painted the status quo of the District and its Local Municipalities in a form of prevailing challenges and mitigating circumstances against each National KPA.

KPA	CHALLENGE	STRATEGIES
Spatial Rationale	Dysfunctional spatial patterns	The SPLUM By-laws needs to be revised and customised
	Illegal occupation of land/ land invasion	Development of integrated Spatial Development Framework Formalisation of informal settlements to inform spatial hierarchy
Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	Lack of funding and identifying new projects	Obtain licence to be a WSA Acquire rights to implement Rural Household Sanitation for the entire district
	Lack database for service providers	Procure O & M service providers as and when required (electrical maintenance, plumbing, air conditioners and civil work)

KPA	CHALLENGE	STRATEGIES
		Provision for implementation of O & M projects
	Excessive Overtime payment due to shortage of staff	Appointment of additional junior fire fighters using the amount budgeted for overtime
	The Social Development & Customer Care function is under capacitated	Review organisational structure and align to IDP. Match and place municipal officials according to competency levels.
	Lack of infrastructure to house the firefighting stations	Refurbish the donated fire station in Bela Bela Construction of a fire station in Thabazimbi
	Absence of By Laws to regulate core functions	Promulgation of firefighting, Municipal Health and Air Quality Management By Laws
	Office accommodation for EHP's located in various local municipalities (excessive rental payment)	Engage local municipalities to accommodate EPHs operating within their jurisdiction
	Unlicensed landfill sites (full to capacity)	Development of the Regional Landfill site
Local Economic Development	Compromised quality services at the abattoir	Upgrading, Marketing & Public Private Partnership Alternatively Lease the abattoir
	Red tape and slow turnaround time from funding institutions	Establishment of a One stop shop
	Lack of public transport ranking facilities	Land acquisition and budget allocation by relevant authorities
Financial Viability and Management	Unable to raise own income because the district is not a water nor electricity service rendering municipality. The District Municipality remains grant dependent	Develop financial model that will encourage own income base Seek other sources of revenue to fund projects, especially fire fighting vehicles and related equipment. There is a need to diversify more sources of revenue.
	Alignment of 2018/19 Annual Budget captured on mSCOA version 6.2	mSCOA committees to meet regularly in order to address any challenges Timeous interaction with Munsoft to address any challenges
	Excessive personnel costs	Review and cost organisational structure to be proportional with to income

KPA	CHALLENGE	STRATEGIES
		Monitor personnel spending patterns Transfer excess personnel to support distressed Local Municipalities
	Poor audit status	Improve accountability through a proper consequence management
Good Governance and Public Participation	Dysfunctional IGR structures Poor participation of community members in the affairs of the municipality	Development of the IGR Protocol Framework document Reconfiguration of some IGR structures
	Poor participation of community members in the affairs of the municipality	Development of the Public Participation Strategy
	Lack of integrated planning	Systemic approach to integrated planning and monitoring of programmes
	Ward Committee Coordination	Capacity building programmes for ward committees to promote good governance at the local level
Municipal Transformation and organisational development	The organisational structure is not aligned to the IDP priorities	Review organisational structure and align to IDP. Match and place municipal officials according to competency levels.
	Lack of a system to track performance and recognise, reward and award incentives	Develop talent management strategy and automate performance management system



9.2 OPERATIONAL STRATEGIES

Strategy is about choice, which affects outcomes. The nature of the strategy adopted and implemented emerges from a combination of the structure of the organisation, the type of resources available and the strategic priorities being pursued. There is strategic consistency when the actions of an organisation are consistent with the expectations of the community. It is therefore critical that the identified strategies be linked to the different KPAs governing local government institutions. The following strategies have been identified to ensure the attainment of the identified outcomes and priorities within the WDM.

KPA	Resolution	Programme/ Project	STRATEGIES		
			Short term - 1-2 Years	Medium term - 2-3 Years	Long term - 3-5 Years
Spatial Development	Conduct a district-wide land audit	Conduct District Wide Land Audit	Appointment of Service Provider Develop the Land Audit Report	Implementation	Implementation
	Municipalities to initiate the process of transferring the ownership of land from national and province to the WDM	Initiate a processes of transferring the ownership of national and provincial Land to WDM		Engagement and transferring land with the Relevant Department	Engagement and transferring land with the Relevant Department
	Engage mining houses to look into the possibility of them availing under-utilized land they own for possible development programs and projects.	Engage mining house on unutilized land for development programme and projects	Engage Mining House	Project & Programme Implementation	Project & Programme Implementation
	Ensure that there is integrated and functional district-wide GIS	District to develop intergraded and functional District wide GIS	Engage DBSA and COGTA to assist with the functional District Wide GIS	Implementation of District wide GIS	Implementation of District wide GIS
	Consider the development of Social Housing Guidelines and the potential of a District Housing Agency at a district level should be explored	District to consider the development of social housing guidelines and potential of a District Housing Agency at District level	Development of Feasibility Study	Implementation	Implementation
	The Waterberg District Municipality Council needs to engage the Land Claims Commissioner to fast track the land claims process in order to support with the following: •Formalising informal settlements •Rural development programmes •Land for infrastructure and economic development	WDM engage land claim commission to speed up land claims in the District to assist in formalizing informal settlement, Rural development and land for infrastructure development.	Engage the Land Claim Commission	Implementation of the projects	Implementation of the projects

	Plan for and engage the relevant parties to make the case for the devolution of functions to the district municipality: •district roads •human settlements and housing delivery •bulk infrastructure; i.e.water & sanitation, energy, telecommunications infrastructure •Transport planning and transport services; buses, taxis etc	Engage relevant authorities to transfer the following function to the District 1 District roads 2 Human settlement and housing 3 Bulk Infrastructure Water & sanitation Energy and telecommunication - Transport planning	Engage the Relevant Authorities	Implementation	Implementation
	Resuscitate the smart city development in WDM	Resuscitate the Smart City development in Waterberg	Appointment of Service provider to develop feasibility study	Implementation	Implementation
	Improved utilisation of open spaces and beatification of towns	Improve utilization of open spaces and beatification of towns	Appointment of Service provider to develop feasibility study	Implementation	Implementation

KPA	Resolution	Programme/ Project	STRATEGIES		
			Short term - 1-2 Years	Medium term - 2-3 Years	Long term - 3-5 Years
Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	Invest in Human Capital – Training All EHPs in Environmental Management Inspectorate	To ensure that there is adequate capacity to deal with incidents, emergencies and disasters	Filing up of all available budgeted posts	The ratio of EHP's per community to be adhered to (shortage as per WHO 1: 10 000=39)(shortage as per National Norm 1: 15000=16) Compliance with SANS 10090	The ratio of EHP's per community to be adhered to (shortage as per WHO 1: 10 000=39)(shortage as per National Norm 1: 15000=16) Compliance with SANS 10090
	Enforcement of Polluter Pay Principle.	To establish preparedness, prevention, adaptation and mitigation strategies as the focus of all the units of SDCS;	Availing of required resources Continuous education campaigns to the communities and all stakeholders	Availing of required resources Continuous education campaigns to the communities and all stakeholders	Continuous education campaigns to the communities and all stakeholders
	Speed up Finalisation of Bylaws for enforcement purposes	Intensify training of EHP on environment management inspections	Recruitment and training of EHP's in disease	Assessment and planning of monitoring networks.	Assessment and planning of monitoring

			outbreak prone areas. Procurement of portable less complex and affordable equipments.		networks.
	Prioritise Review of Air Quality Management Plan, Integrated Waste Management Plan and Environmental Framework,	Finalize bylaws for enforcement purposes.	Capasitation of air quality management.	Development of climate change adaptations and mitigation strategies	Campaigns on adaptations and mitigating strategies
	The Municipality should consider appointing additional EHPs in line with the regulations and World Health Organisation standards.	Review of Air Quality Management Plan, Integrated Waste Management Plan and Environmental Framework	Developing Regional Landfill site. Enforce compliance on air polluters for revenue enhancement	WDM to appoint more EHP as per regulation and WHO standards.	Enforce compliance on air polluters for revenue enhancement
	Make provision for dedicated budget for Disaster Centres and Fire Stations.	Conducting Public Education. Finalisation of standard operating procedures(SOP's). Finalization of By-laws. Delicate budget for Fire Services.	Procurement of loose equipment & tools to 6 stations. To comply with National Fire Codes and Standards(SANS 10090) in terms of personnel	Procurement of 3x 6000L water tenders/tankers. Procurement of 4x Rapid Intervention Vehicles(RIV)	Building of three bay Fire Stations in Thabazimbi and Mookgophong. Building of satellite Fire Stations in Northam, Rebene, Vaalwater, Pienaarsrivier, Steenbokpan/Bulgerivier, Witpoort.
	Speed up the process of developing the Regional Landfill Site.	Intensification of public awareness and campaigns	Establishment, raining and utilisation of Volunteer unit	Delicate budget for Disaster Management	Intensification of public awareness and campaigns
	Identify five impactful Catalytic Infrastructure Projects	Lack of intergraded bulk water	WDM develop compressive water service development plan	Implement the plan	Implement the plan
	Engage Private Sector in funding Catalytic Projects.	Lack of alternative source of energy	Waterberg District Municipality develop Energy master plan and identify catalytic project	Implement the plan	Implement the plan
	Priotise budgeting for Operations and Maintenance.	No waste management projects and lack of review of Integrated waste plan	All Municipalities develop budget for waste management and review of waste management plan	Implementation of waste management plan	Implementation of waste management plan

KPA	Resolution	Programme/ Project	STRATEGIES		
			Short term - 1-2 Years	Medium term - 2-3 Years	Long term - 3-5 Years
Local Economic Development	Municipalities should enter into MOU arrangements with the Department of Small Business Development to avail under-utilised infrastructure/buildings to the department to be utilised by youth SMMEs for manufacturing purposes.				
	Prioritise Review/Development of LED strategies District Wide	LED Coordination: Review/Development of District Wide LED Strategies	Source funding	Develop/review 2 LED Strategies	Develop/Review 2 LED Strategies
	Establishment of the District SMME Coordinating Council through SEDA in partnership with municipalities				
	Consider the feasibility of the development of a dry port/ logistic hub opportunity within the district, particularly Modimolle – as a long term plan through the One Plan (DDM).				

KPA	Resolution	Programme/ Project	STRATEGIES		
			Short term - 1-2 Years	Medium term - 2-3 Years	Long term - 3-5 Years
Financial Management & Viability	Explore the outdoor advertisement potential as a revenue generation mechanism	Explore outdoor advertisement potential as revenue generation mechanism	Develop advertise strategy	Implementation of advertise strategy	Implementation of advertise strategy
	Effective management of indigent register	Develop effective management of indigent register	Develop building programme Capacity local Municipalities	Local municipalities to implement strategy to review their indigents registers	Local municipalities to implement strategy to review their indigents registers
	Improve revenue management and collection				
	Consider the implementation of shared services for governance committees	Explore possibilities of share services for governance committees such as	Engage Local Municipalities on share	Implementation of the MOU	-

	such as Risk and Audit Committees where applicable.	Risk and Audit committees	services and signed MOU		
	Reduce unavoidable use of consultants, particularly where municipalities have capacity	Develop strategy to capacitate BTO for preparation of Financial Statements	Development of the strategy to capacitate BTO	Implementation of the strategy	-
		Develop plan to phase out Consultants in the preparation of FS.	Coordinate summit with all Local Municipalities to develop strategy using Waterberg as benchmarking	Implementation of summit resolution starting in house FS preparation by all Local Municipalities	Implementation of summit resolution starting in house FS preparation by all Local Municipalities
		Unfunded mandate for Municipal Health and Fire Fighting Services	Establish internal term to develop Concept document that will entail financial implications to be presented to National Treasury and COGTA	Engage with National treasury and COGTA	-

KPA	Resolution	Programme/ Project	STRATEGIES		
			Short term - 1-2 Years	Medium term - 2-3 Years	Long term - 3-5 Years
Municipal Transformation & Organizational Development	Advocating for digitalisation of local government operations and services	Municipality to immigrate to digitalization of its operation and services	Develop strategy for digitalization	Implement strategy	Implement strategy
	Cascading of Performance Management System to beyond the Section 56 managers	Cascading PMS to lower positions to enhance performance	Develop strategy for different options and method	Implement the strategy	-
	Develop skills development programmes that support the new economy (inclusive of industry 4.0/4IR) that encompass municipal employees and community members	Develop District wide skills development programme that is responsive to current economic needs. Eg Mining and Agricultural skills	Conduct visibility study about current status qou of Waterberg. Conduct District wide kills audit	Conduct District wide skills Audi for all local municipalities	-
	Explore the possibility of managing the output of employee rather than time	Utilization of consultants to compliment the capacity of the municipalities			
	Use of consultants strategically to complement the capacity of municipalities				
	Support and participate in the	Support and participate in the	Develop strategy for	Implement the best	-

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

	provincial broadband network programmes.	Provincial Broadband network programmes	different options available	practice	
	Strengthen the information and records management capability within the district and local municipalities	Strengthen and improve information and record management capacity within WDM and Local Municipalities	Develop strategy on various options and conduct research on best practise	Implement strategy	Implement strategy

9.3 DEVELOPMENTAL STRATEGIES AND STRATEGIC ALIGNMENT

It is a requirement that in developing a municipal integrated development plan, its strategies must be aligned to those of other spheres of government. In the language of the IDP, it is about horizontal and vertical alignment.

NDP/MTSF	LDP	WDM OBJECTIVES
Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life (NDP Chapter 8)	OUTCOME 8: Human Settlement Development: Limpopo will create functionally integrated, balanced and vibrant urban settlement through usage of all spatial planning instruments	Enforcement of SPLUMA and Implementation of spatial planning and land use policies i.e. SDF, LUMS, EMF etc.
Protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources (NDP Chapter 5)	OUTCOME 10: Environmental Protection: Limpopo to transit to an environmentally sustainable, climate change resilient, low carbon economy and just society will be well under way	Implementation of Environmental Management Plan , ICLEI LAB Wetland Programmes- Rehabilitation of wetlands, land care management, Waterberg Biosphere Management Plan
Create a better South Africa, a better Africa and a better world (NDP Chapter 7)	OUTCOME 11: Regional Integration: Collaborate with developed economies [neighbouring countries or across Provinces] for increased access to markets and resources by various industrial sectors in the province	Benchmarking, best practices, investing in Waterberg: inward and outward missions, export awareness programmes, market access linkages

NDP/MTSF	LDP	B2B	WDM OBJECTIVES
An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network (NDP Chapter 4)	OUTCOME 6: Competitive Economic Infrastructure: Limpopo needs to invest in a network of economic infrastructure designed to support medium and long term economic objectives. The focus should be on road network, rail network, ICT Broadband, energy, bulk water infrastructure	Delivering Basic Services	Development of infrastructure plan to guide on implementation of infrastructure projects to address the backlogs

A long and healthy life for all (NDP Chapter 10)	OUTCOME 2: Long and Healthy Life: Limpopo must provide primary health care to reduce mortality rates, filling of critical posts and enhancing health information systems	Putting people first. Delivering Municipal services – (basic services)	Some of the causes of deaths in Waterberg- diarrhoeal diseases (in children), poor sanitation conditions, unsafe water, etc
			Outbreak of diseases is also a concern-hence Environmental Health – Water quality monitoring, food safety & control. First line of defence against communicable diseases-control & monitor, prevent further occurrences MHS- Strengthening health System effectively Empowering of communities through awareness campaign
Protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources (NDP Chapter 5)	OUTCOME 10: Environmental Protection: Limpopo to transit to an environmentally sustainable, climate change resilient, low carbon economy and just society will be well under way	Putting people first. Delivering Municipal services – (basic services)	WDM due to the various mining industries, is a producer of greenhouse gases. Environmental challenges to be addressed in the 3 identified hotspots. WDMAQMP-emission inventory compiled for monitoring Integrated Waste Management Plan - will guide in monitoring of waste management system in the locals

NDP/MTSF	LDP	WDM OBJECTIVES
Decent employment through inclusive economic growth (NDP Chapter 3)	OUTCOME 4: Decent employment through inclusive growth: Dealing with challenges of unemployment, inequality and creating a more inclusive society. Implementation of the NGP and IPAP, Limpopo Industrial Master Plan, Green Economy Plan to create jobs and grow the economy	Jobs created through local economic development initiatives: Implementation of the District LED Strategy, Sustainability of Business Development Forum, continued implementation of the CWP Programme and EPWP, ICLEI LAB Wetlands Programme, implementation of Agri-park, sustainability of SPP.
Vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing to food security for all (NDP Chapter 6)	OUTCOME 7: Comprehensive Rural Development: Limpopo will have rural areas which are spatially, socially and economically integrated and where there is potential for economic growth, food security and jobs as a result of agrarian transformation and infrastructure development	Job Creation & Food security: implementation of the Agri-park Programme, Capacity Building Programmes for Emerging Farmers and Land reform



NDP/MTSF	LDP	B2B	WDM OBJECTIVES
Responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system (NDP Chapter 13)	OUTCOME 9: Developmental Local Government: Limpopo will enforce a developmental local government that is accountable, focused on citizen's priorities and capable of delivering high quality services consistently and sustainably through cooperative governance	Sound Institutional and Administrative capabilities	To effectively manage and improve financial sustainability A clean , accountable , transparent , responsive, effective and efficient Municipal financial management system
An efficient, effective and development oriented public service (NDP Chapter 13)	OUTCOME 12: Developmental Public Service: Need for well run and effectively coordinated provincial institutions with skilled public servants who are committed and capable of delivering high quality services.	Sound Institutional and Administrative capabilities	Developmental Public Service: Need for well run and effectively coordinated municipalities with skilled public servants who are committed and capable of delivering high quality services
A long and healthy life for all (NDP Chapter 10)	OUTCOME 2: Long and Healthy Life: Limpopo must provide primary health care to reduce mortality rates, filling of critical posts and enhancing health information systems	Delivering Municipal Services	Quality Health Care for all: The district must ensure provision of quality health care for all within its jurisdiction Advocate the application of 5km radius in terms of providing health care services
All people in South Africa are and feel safe (NDP Chapters 12 and 14)	OUTCOME 3: All People are Safe: People living in Limpopo must feel safe at home, at school, at work and enjoy community life without fear.	Putting people first	Community safety: Municipalities in Waterberg District to conduct safety audits and develop community safety plan
Responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system (NDP Chapter 13)	OUTCOME 9: Developmental Local Government: Limpopo will enforce a developmental local government that is accountable, focused on citizen's priorities and capable of delivering high quality services consistently and sustainably through cooperative governance.	Ensuring Good governance	To develop & implement integrated management & governance system
An efficient, effective and development oriented public service (NDP Chapter 13)	OUTCOME 12: Developmental Public Service: Need for well run and effectively coordinated provincial institutions with skilled public servants who are committed and capable of delivering high quality services	Putting people first	To empower the community and instill the sense of ownership for development
Decent employment through inclusive economic growth (NDP Chapter 3)	OUTCOME 4: Decent employment through inclusive growth: Dealing with challenges of unemployment, inequality and creating a more inclusive society. Implementation of the NGP and IPAP, Limpopo Industrial Master Plan, Green Economy Plan to create jobs and grow the economy.	Building capable local government	To develop attract and retain best human capital
Skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path (NDP Chapter 9)	OUTCOME 5: Skilled and Capable workforce: Limpopo will have access to education and training of the highest quality. The education, training and innovation systems should produce highly skilled labour force. R&D should be expanded.	Building a capable local government.	To develop attract and retain best human capital
Responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system (NDP Chapter 13)	OUTCOME 9: Developmental Local Government: Limpopo will enforce a developmental local government that is accountable, focused on citizen's priorities and capable of delivering high quality services consistently and sustainably through cooperative governance.	Good governance	To develop and implement integrated management and governance system

9.4 FIVE YEAR DISTRICT WIDE STRATEGIC OUTCOMES & TARGETS

DEVELOPMENTAL PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	KPA	STRATEGIC OUTCOME	PERFORMANCE INDICATORS	BASE-LINE	2021/22	2022/23	2023/2024	2024/2025	2025/2026
Integrated planning	To facilitate access and transform land and rural tourism development	SR	Alignment	Number of highly rated IDPs	7	7	7	7	7	7
				Percentage of Alignment of Budget & IDP	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
				Percentage of SDF & land Use Management system developed & approved in line with the SPLUMA	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
Bulk infrastructure	To coordinate and monitor infrastructure development for provision and access to services	BSD	Quality service delivery	Percentage of households with access to basic level of water	94%	95%	96%	96%	96%	96%
				Percentage of households with access to electricity	87%	88%	89%	90%	90%	90%
				Percentage of households with access to solid waste	48%	50%	50%	50%	60	65%
				Percentage of households with access to basic level of sanitation	86%	88%	90%	90%	90%	90%
				Number of municipalities which achieved blue drop status	1	4	6	7	7	7
				Number of municipalities which achieved green drop status	1	4	6	7	7	7
				Percentage of electricity saved	4%	10%	10%	10%	10%	10%
				Percentage of	50%	65%	70%	80%	80%	80%
Project management										

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

				municipalities' budget actually spent of capital projects						
			Quality service delivery	Percentage of municipality's budget spent on maintenance of infrastructure	4%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%
				Number of Jobs created through LED initiatives	538	700	750	800	900	1000
				Percentage of LED strategy aligned to the Provincial & National LED strategy/framework	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
				Number of Jobs created through EPWP	320	400	500	600	700	800
				Number of green projects initiated	0	6	6	6	6	6
				Number of cooperatives supported	60	70	80	90	100	120
				Number of municipalities whose debt collection exceeds 80%	2	4	5	6	7	7
				Percentage of cost coverage	28%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
				Percentage of Operating budget variance in terms of SDBIP	9%	10%	10%	10%	10%	10%
				Percentage of Capital budget variance in terms of SDBIP	8%	10%	10%	10%	10%	10%
				Percentage of Adjustments budget submitted within timeframe	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
				Percentage of Timeous submission of Annual	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

				Financial Statements						
		FVM	Management	Number of municipalities which participate in an integrated financial system	2	3	5	7	7	7
Community awareness		GGPP	Improved Community involvement	Number of functional ward committees	70	79	79	79	79	79
				Number of municipalities which convene community feedback meetings	7	7	7	7	7	7
Clean audit	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	GGPP	Auditing	Number of municipalities with clean audit outcome	1	3	7	7	7	7
Good Governance	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	GGPP	Adherence to legislative requirements	Percentage of Submission of Annual Performance Report (Sec 46 MSA) by 31 August	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
				Percentage of Submission of Annual Report (Sec 121 MFMA) & adopted	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
				Percentage of Approved SDBIP aligned with the IDP & Budget	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
			Governance	Number of municipalities with functional Municipal Public Accounts Committees	7	7	7	7	7	7
				Number of council meetings held	4	4	4	4	4	4

Municipal Health	To preserve and protect natural resources and promote public health	BSD	Sustainable livelihoods	Number of municipalities with licensed landfill sites	15	8	8	8	8	8
				Percentage of budget spent on maintenance of infrastructure	2%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%
Environmental management				Number of Environmental management plans reviewed	1	1	1	1	1	1
Competency development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	TOD	HRM	Number of people from EE groups employed in the three highest levels of management in compliance with EE plan	80%	95%	95%	95%	95%	95%
				Percentage of a municipality's budget actually spent on implementing its workplace skills plan	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%
				Number of municipalities which consistently implement HIV/AIDS workplace strategy	0	7	7	7	7	7
				Percentage of Approved and funded Organogram aligned with the IDP	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
Clean audit		GGPP	Institutional excellence	Number of municipalities with clean audit	1	3	7	7	7	7
				Number of municipalities with effective Audit Committees	7	7	7	7	7	7
Intergovernmental relations	To develop and implement integrated and	GGPP		Number of municipalities which attend DIGF meetings	7	7	7	7	7	7

	governance systems									
				Number of municipalities employing a credible performance system	4	3	5	6	7	7



9.5 2022/2023 INSTITUTIONAL SERVICE DELIVERY INDICATORS AND TARGET

No	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2022/23	Annual Target 2023-2024	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence
1.	Spatial rationale	To coordinate spatial transformation	Integrated Planning	Number of Highly rated IDP	1	1X highly rated IDP attained by 30 June 2024	N/A	N/A	N/A	1 highly rated IDP	CoGHSTA IDP Analysis report
2.	Spatial rationale	To coordinate spatial transformation	Integrated Planning	Number of IDP (s) Approved by council by 31 May 2024	1/1	1X 2023/24 IDP Approved by 30 June 2024	N/A	N/A	1 Draft IDP 31 March 2024	1 Final IDP 31 May 2024	Approved IDP with Council resolution
3.	Spatial rationale	To facilitate access and transform land and rural tourism development	Integrated planning	Number of DMPT Meeting held	13/4	12 X DMPT Meeting held by 30 June 2024	3	3	3	3	12X Set of Invitation Agenda Minutes Attendance register
4.	Basic service delivery	To preserve and protect natural resources and promote public health	Municipal Health	Number of Food outlets issued with certificate of compliance	94	80 X Food outlets issued with certificate of compliance by 30 June 2024	20	20	20	20	80 X Set of Signed copies of certificates
5.	Basic service delivery	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development	Municipal health	Number of permitted land fill site monitored	9/9	9 X Permitted land fill site monitored by 30 June 2024	9	9	9	9	9 X 4 Sets of Reports on Permitted land fill site monitored & Schedule of

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

No	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2022/23	Annual Target 2023-2024	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence
		for the provision and access to services.									permitted landfill site monitoring sessions
6.	Basic Service Delivery	To preserve and protect natural resources and promote public health	Air quality management	Number of ambient air quality monitoring reports submitted	6	4X ambient air quality monitoring reports submitted by 30 June 2024	1	1	1	1	4X air quality monitoring reports
7.	Basic delivery service	To coordinate and monitor infrastructure development for the provision and access to service	Disaster Management	Number of Disaster Management stakeholder consultative meetings held	8	4 X Disaster Management stakeholder consultative meetings held by 30 June 2024	1	1	1	1	4 X Set of Invitation Agenda Minutes Attendance register & Schedule of Meetings
8.	Basic service delivery	To coordinate and monitor infrastructure development for the provision and access to	Fire fighting	Number of Fire-fighting reports submitted by local municipalities	20	20 X Fire-fighting reports submitted by local municipalities by 30 June 2024	5	5	5	5	20 X Set of Fire-fighting Quarterly reports
9.	Financial management and viability	To effectively manage finances and resource mobilization.	Expenditure Management	Percentage of Operating budget variance in terms of SDBIP	20,31%	≤10% of Operating budget variance attained by 30 June 2024	≤10%	≤10%	≤10%	≤10%	Annexure B Financial Report

No	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2022/23	Annual Target 2023-2024	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence
10.	Financial management and viability	To effectively manage finances and resource mobilisation.	Reporting	Number of section 71 MFMA report submitted within timeframe	12/12	12 X 71 MFMA report submitted within 10 working days of start of the each Month	3	3	3	3	12 X Set of Submission letters or email & Schedule of MFMA 71 Submission Schedule
11.	Local Economic Development	To create a conducive environment for radical economic development.	Economic development	Number LED forum meeting held	4	4 X LED forum meeting held by 30 June 2024	1	1	1	1	4 X Set of Attendance register, Agenda, Minutes and invitations
12.	Local Economic Development	To create a conducive environment for radical economic development.	Economic development	Percentage of LED Forums resolutions implemented	100% 9/9	100% LED forums resolutions implemented by 30 June 2024	100%	100%	100%	100%	LED Forum(s) resolution register
13.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management & governance systems	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of section 72 Report (s)-Mid-year Budget and performance Assessment Report submitted	1/1 25/01/2023	1 X (MFMA S72 Report) Mid-year Budget and performance Assessment Report submitted by 25 January 2024	N/A	N/A	1	N/A	Submission letters to NT/PT & EM with acknowledgement letters & A Copy of Mid-year Budget and performance Assessment Report

No	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2022/23	Annual Target 2023-2024	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence
14.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management & governance systems	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of Submission of Annual Performance Report (APR) and AFS .	1/1	1X APR and AFS submitted to AGSA by 31 August 2023.	1	N/A	N/A	N/A	1 X Copy of Submission letter with acknowledgement
15.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	AG -Audit outcome/Opinion	Unqualified	Unqualified attained by 31 November 2023	N/A	N/A	Unqualified	N/A	Audit Report
16.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	Percentage AG material audit queries resolved	100% 10/10	100% of Prior Year material audit queries resolved by 30 June 2024	N/A	20%	60%	100%	2022/23 Post Audit action plan
17.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	Percentage Identified risk resolved within timeframes as specified in risk plan	50% 9/18	100% of Identified risk resolved within timeframes as specified in risk plan by 30 June 2024	25%	50%	75%	100%	Risk register
18.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and	Auditing	Percentage of internal audit findings resolved	70% 14/20	100% of internal audit findings resolved by 30 June 2024	25%	50%	75%	100%	Internal audit action plan

No	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2022/23	Annual Target 2023-2024	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence
	tion	governance systems									
19.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	Number of Audit committee meetings held	4	4 X Audit committee meetings held by 30 June 2024	1	1	1	1	4 X Set of Minutes and Attendance register with the Schedule of Meetings
20.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	Percentage of Audit Committee recommendations implemented	83% 5/6	100% of Audit Committee recommendations implemented by 30 June 2024	100%	100%	100%	100%	Audit Committee recommendations Register
21.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Governance	Percentage Council resolutions implemented within timeframes	88.29% 83/94	100% Council resolutions implemented by 30 June 2024	100%	100%	100%	100%	Council resolutions implemented register
22.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance	Public Participation	Number of IDP Representative Forum meetings convened	4/4	4 X IDP Representative Forum meetings convened by 30 June 2024	1X Approval of IDP Review Process	1X Analysis phase	1 X Preparation for Tabling of the 2023/24 Draft IDP for Adoption	1 X Preparation for Tabling of the 2023/24 Final IDP for Approval	4 X Set of Invitations, Agenda, minutes & attendance register with Schedule of the meetings

No	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2022/23	Annual Target 2023-2024	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence
23.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance	Governance	Percentage of MPAC resolutions implemented	100% 6/6	100% MPAC resolutions implemented by 30 June 2024	100%	100%	100%	100%	MPAC Resolution register
24.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance	Governance	Number of 2020/21 Oversight report(s) approved by council	1	1 X 2020/21 Oversight report(s) approved by council by 31 march 2024	N/A	N/A	N/A	1	Council resolution with 2020/21 Oversight Report
25.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Human Resources Management	Number of Senior Management with signed Performance Agreements	6	6 X Senior Management with signed Performance Agreements by 31 July 2023	6	N/A	N/A	N/A	6 X Copies of Signed Performance Agreements
26.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Capacity building and Training (HRD)	Number of officials and Councillors capacitated in terms of the workplace skills plan (WSP)	21	25 X Officials and Councillors capacitated in terms of the workplace skills plan by end June 2024	5	5	5	10	Copies of the Attendance registers and Schedule of training activities attended
27.	Transformation and Organisational	To Improve, attract, develop and retain best	Occupational Health and Safety	Number of OHS Committee meetings held	New	4 X OHS Committee meetings held by 30 June 2024	1 OHS Meeting	1 OHS Meeting	1 OHS Meeting	1 OHS Meeting	4 X Set of Attendance registers with Schedule of the Meetings

No	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2022/23	Annual Target 2023-2024	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence
	Development	human capital									
28.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To improve Administration and Governance Capacity	Information and Communication Technology	Number of ICT Steering Committee Meeting Held	4	4 X ICT Steering Committee Meeting Held by 30 June 2024	1	1	1	1	4 X Set of Attendance registers with Schedule of the Meetings
29.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Organisational Development	Number of approved 2024/25 SDBIP by the Executive Mayor	100% 15 June 2022	1 X 2023/24 SDBIP Approved by the EM by the 28 June 2024	N/A	N/A	N/A	1 X approved 2024/235 SDBIP	Copy of the Approved SDBIP
30.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of 2021/22 Annual Performance evaluation conducted	0/1	1X 2023/24 Annual Performance evaluation conducted by 30 June 2024	N/A	N/A	N/A	1	Attendance register and Schedule of Annual Performance Evaluations
31.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of Annual report (sec 121) adopted & submitted to MEC	100% approved 30 May 2023	1 X Annual Report (sec 121) adopted & submitted to MEC by 31 March 2024	N/A	N/A	100% Approval of final 21/22 AR	N/A	Council resolution & submission letter

No	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2022/23	Annual Target 2023-2024	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence
32.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To improve Administration and Governance Capacity	Legal Services	Number of litigation reports compiled and submitted to council	2	4 X litigation reports compiled and submitted to council by 30 June 2024	1	1	1	1	4 X Set of Litigation Reports with Council Resolution
33.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To improve Administration and Governance Capacity	Human Resource Management	Number of LLF meetings held by end June 2024	4	1 X LLF meetings held by end June 2024	1	1	1	1	4 X Set of Attendance register Minutes



CHAPTER 10 - PROJECT PHASE

10.1 WATERBERG DISTRICT 2022/23 TO 2024/25 PROJECTS

Project Name	Department	Final Budget 2023/24	Final Budget 2023/25	Final Budget 2025/26
Economic Development & Tourism				
Informal Settlement Study		-	-	-
		-	-	-
Road & Storm Water				
Road Asset Management System	ID	2 281 000	2 290 000	2 373 000
		2 281 000	2 290 000	2 373 000
Municipal Support & Institutional Development				
Local Government Financial Management Grant	BTO	1 000 000	1 000 000	1 000 000
ICT Equipment	CSSS	-	-	-
Procurement	CSSS	-	-	-
		1 000 000	1 000 000	1 000 000
		3 281 000	3 281 000	3 373 000



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

10.2 CATALYTIC PROJECTS AND/OR PROGRAMMES FOR IMPLEMENTATION WITHIN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY.

Item	Project Name	Municipal Area	Source	Short term	Medium term	Long term	Total
1	Smart City Development at Lephalale	Lephalale	External/Private	R575 000 000	287 500 000	287 500 000	1 150 000 000
2	Renewable Energy/Energy Mix Development	All	External/Private	7 000 000 000	3 500 000 000	3 500 000 000	14 000 000 000
3	Upgrading of Bulk Water Infrastructure	All	External/Private	500 000 000	250 000 000	250 000 000	1 000 000 000
4	Digitization of Government	All	External/Private	650 000 000	325 000 000	325 000 000	1 300 000 000
5	Agro-processing- Integrated Livestock Value Chain Development Initiative	All	External/Private	12 500 000 000	6 250 000 000	6 250 000 000	25 000 000 000
6	Road to Rail Infrastructure Development	All	External/Private	1 075 000 000	537 500 000	537 500 000	2 150 000 000
7	Development and Construction of DLabs within Waterberg	Waterberg	External/Private	52 000 000	-	-	52 000 000
8	Wild Life Economy Development	All	External/Private	5 000 000 000	2 500 000 000	2 500 000 000	10 000 000 000
9	Comprehensive Urban Management Programme	All	External/Private	65 000 000	32 500 000	32 500 000	130 000 000
10	Development of Motor City in Modimolle	Modimolle-Mookgophong	External/Private	10 000 000 000	5 000 000 000	5 000 000 000	20 000 000 000
11	Waste Management Project	Modimolle-Mookgophong	External/Private	500 000 000	250 000 000	250 000 000	1 000 000 000
TOTAL				37 865 000 000	18 932 500 000	18 932 500 000	75 782 000 000



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

10.3 WATERBERG NATIONAL ONE PLAN CATALYTIC PROJECTS

Item	Project Name	Municipal Area	Source	Short term	Medium term	Long term	Total
1	Mokolo Crocodile (West) Water Augmentation Project (MCWAP) by 2027	Waterberg	NDWS		16,000,000,000		16,000,000,000
2	MCWAP Phase 2A project. The project comprises of two components, namely a water transfer component and a river management component	All	NDWS	12,500,000,00			12,500,000,000
3	ORWRDP 2B: Water pipeline from Flag Boshielo Mogalakwena	Mogalakwena	LWUA			6.600,000,000	6.600,000,000
4	Lebalelo Raw and Potable Water Infrastructure Development Project. Phase 2B+ raw water supply	All	NDWS		6,500,000,000		6,500,000,000
5	Development of Telecom Infrastructure strategy (encourage investment by Telcom companies)	All	NDCOM			2,000,000,000	2,000,000,000
6	Construction of recycling plants	All	NDEFF			1,250,000,000	1,250,000,000
7	MPRS1: Tobias Zyn Loop to Sasol Zebediela Plaza Road Development	Mogalakwena	SANRAL	1,021,000,000			1,021,000,000
8	MPRS1: Tobias Sasol Zebediela Plaza to Rietvley Road Development	Mogalakwena	SANRAL	1,021,000,000			1,021,000,000
9	DILPS: Mmadikiri River to Lephalale Road Development	Lephalale	SANRAL	838,554,541			838,554,541
10	DNURT: Kranskop Plaza to Modimolle Road Development	Modimolle-Mookgophong	SANRAL	700,500,000			700,500,000
11	DNURT: N11 Modimolle to Tobias ZynLoop: Road Development	Modimolle-Mookgophong	SANRAL	700,500,000			700,500,000
12	DILPS: Vaalwater to Mmadikiri River Road Development	Modimolle-Mookgophong	SANRAL	646,777,342			646,777,342

13	DILPS: Tooyspruit to BelaBela Addition of pave shoulders	BelaBela	SANRAL	528,500,000			528,500,000
14	Support the land restitution initiative within the Waterberg Distrct	All	NDALRR D	500,500,000			500,500,000
TOTAL				18,457,331,883	22,500,000,000	9,850,000,000	50,807,331,883

NB: It is advisable to refer to the One Plan on Annexure A: List of all projects, as nuances in the detailed project database will shed better light on a detailed level.

10.4 WATERBERG PROPOSED PROJECT

10.4.1 PLANNING, ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

Dept	Strategic Objective	Project name	Estimated Budget	Source of Funding	2023/24	2024/2025	2025/2026
PED	To co-coordinate and implement spatial planning and land use management	ITP Development (Integrated Transport Planning)	R1 000 000	External/Private	R1 000 000	-	-
		Human Settlement Strategy	R800 000	External/Private	R800 000	-	-
		DEVELOPMENT OF GIS PORTAL (Website for land information)	R510 000	External/Private	R510 000	-	-
		Permanent Licences for GIS for Local Municipalities	R73 000	External/Private	R73 000	-	-
		Transport Planning Coordination Programs	R100 000	External/Private	R100 000	R120 000	R130 000
	To create an enabling environment for a sustainable economic development	LED Strategy	R1 000 000	External/Private	R1 000 000	-	-
		Tourism Development	R1 650 000	External/Private	R500 000	R550 000	R600 000
		SMME Development	R1 800 000	External/Private	R500 000	R600 000	R700 000
		Investor Package & Investment Conference	R800 000	External/Private	R800 000	-	-
	To shape an economically viable and complying abattoir	Abattoir Marketing	R450 000	External/Private	R100 000	R150 000	R200 000

10.4.2 CORPORATE SERVICES

Department	Strategic Objective	Project name	Estimated Budget	Source of Funding	2023/24	2024/2025	2025/2026
CSSS		Supply and Installation of Hyper-Converged Disaster Recovery Solution	3 000 000	WDM	3 000 000		
		Firewall and VPN Install	200 000	WDM			
		Remote Administration Software licence	50 000	WDM	50 000		
		Supply and installation of UPS backup power	250 000	WDM	250 000		
		Renewal of anti Virus licence	450 000	WDM	150 000	150 000	150 000
		ICT Equipment	1 800 000	WDM	300 000	300 000	300 000
		Upgrading of Council Chamber boardroom and recording equipment	400 000	WDM			
		Access control and security IP cameras installed at all WDM sites	800 000	WDM	300 000		
		Rewiring of the network cables and replacement of network switches for WDM head office and Modimolle and Lephalale Disaster Centres	800 000	WDM	800 000		
		The installation of Fiber internet at the Modimolle and Lephalale Disaster Centre and VPN routers to connect directly to head office	800 000	WDM	350 000		
		Exchange SSL Certificate	50 000	WDM	50 000		
		ICT Strategy	1 500 000	WDM			
		Cloud Office 365 Implementation	1 800 000	WDM	600 000	600 000	600 000
		Records Management System	2 500 000	WDM		2 500 000	
		Fleet Mangement System	500 000	WDM			
		Review of organizational structure and job profiles (Job Specifications, analysis, and discriptions)	1 200 000	WDM			
TOTAL			16 100 000		5 850 000	3 550 000	1 050 000



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

10.4.3 SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

Department	Strategic Objective	Project name	Estimated Budget	Source of Funding	2023/24	2024/2025	2025/2026
SDCS		The Supply and Delivery of Humanitarian Relief Materials (i.e. 800 Blankets, 200 Mattresses and 70 Army Tents	1 700 000	WDM	900 000		
		Undertake comprehensive district-wide community based disaster risk assessment	1 500 000	WDM	1 000 000		
		Bi-annual Review of the Waterberg District Disaster Management Framework and Plan		WDM	To be done inhouse		
		Proposal of 3x 6000Liters water tenders/tankers(± R4.5m each= R13.5m).	13 500 000	WDM			
		3x Rapid Response Vehicles (RIV) (±R3.1m each= R9.3m).	9 300 000	WDM			
		Stack Monitoring Equipment - R300 000	320 000	WDM			
		Development of Integrated waste management plan - R 900 000		WDM	To be done inhouse		
		Instant Sampling Kits for food and water	520 000	WDM			
		Information Boards	50 000				
		Bela Bela Fire station	5 000 000				
TOTAL			32 110 000				



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

10.4.4 INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT

Dept	Strategic Objective	Project name	Estimated Budget	Source of Funding	2022/2023	2023/2024	2024/2025	Summary Proposed scope of works
ID	To provide and improve infrastructure development and basic service delivery	Refurbishmnet of WDM main building, Lephalale fire station and Modimolle disaster/fire station	R4 853 000.00	WDM	R2 150 000,00	R1 645 000,00	R1 058 000,00	1) Bending moment redistribution-Concrete columns-increase load. 2) Critical cracks to be closed to avoid collapse. 3) Foundation- re-strengthen sub- corner dynamics.4) Replace roof with new IRB 3mm. 5) Allow roof drainage opening at Executive Mayors section to avoid flooding. 6) Refurb plumbing works. 7)Paint and Finishings. Also a council resolution
		Construction of of Steel Carpots at Lephalale DMC	R750 000.00	WDM	R750 000,00	R	R	1) SQ Tube 75 75 x 1, 6x6, 0m SABS X 120. 2) IRB Sheet Galvanised 0,50mm pm X 440. 3)Tec screw washer 6 x 19 and 65 mm X 40. 4) Red oxide paint and gReen paint for steel X 400L. 5) Ready mix concrete bag x 400kg. 6) Roof paint green (5 years gurantee) x 380L
		Refurbishment of Lephalale Fire Station building	R 3 462 851.25	WDM	R	R1 731 425,63	R1 731 425,63	1) Repairs of Cracks on Walls and columns. 2) Build Expansion and contractions joints. 3)Repalce existing Roof with corrugated Iron 3mm IBR. 4)Intesify defects on Foundations . 7) Paint work and Finishings
		Refurbishment of WDM Abattoir building	R19 843 968.75	WDM	R	R5 000 000,00	R5 000 000,00	1) Lairage and Pen defects 2) Refurb Incinerator. 3) Creack seal, replace damaged windows in the Change rooms and Storeroom. 4) Paint work and Finishings 5) Upgrade the ovarall refrigeration system to modern TTOD.
		Rural Road Asset Management System	R6 947 000,00	RRAMSG	R2 284 000,00	R2 290 000,00	R2 373 000,00	
TOTAL					R5 184 000,00	R10 666 425,63	R10 162 425,63	

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

10.5 2023/2024 SECTOR DEPARTMENTS PROJECTS

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

Item	Project / Programme Name	District Municipality	Project Start Date	Project End Date	Total Project Cost	Total Expenditure to date from previous years	2023/24	2024/25	2025/26
1	MOKGALAKWENA CLUSTER	Waterberg	01 May 2023	31 Mar 2024	900000	0	900000	0	0
2	WATERBERG CLUSTER	Waterberg	01 May 2023	31 Mar 2024	300000	0	300000	0	0
3	Raowele Secondary	Waterberg	01 Apr 2014	30 Mar 2024	24358000	16533706	947261	0	0
4	K.K. MONARE PRIMARY	Waterberg	01 Apr 2014	30 Jun 2024	20102000	12789597	1953096	2906192	0
5	MPADI SECONDARY	Waterberg	01 Apr 2014	30 Jun 2024	21640000	7510444	2018875	2037751	0
6	KHUTJANG PRIMARY SCHOOL	Waterberg	01 Apr 2013	30 Mar 2024	922500000	7751562	2222543	0	0
7	Ellisras Hoerskool	Waterberg	01 May 2023	31 Mar 2028	12000000	0	2200000	1000000	2745000
8	CIRCUIT OFFICE- MOUTSE	Waterberg	01 Apr 2014	30 Mar 2024	32256000	31697	171018	0	0
9	Kgakgala Prim School	Waterberg	30 Sep 2015	31 Mar 2026	12864899	8815190	650000	2000000	5499511
10	Suswe Primary	Waterberg	01 Apr 2018	31 Mar 2025	32418003	2386044	119591	398638	451287
11	Given Mangolo Primary	Waterberg	01 Apr 2018	30 Jun 2026	29595409	462752	784257	176457	0
12	Mashobela Secondary	Waterberg	01 Apr 2018	31 Mar 2026	29595409	215067	888074	199816	8
13	Matsibe Secondary	Waterberg	01 Apr 2018	31 Mar 2026	25942530	1841709	309263	309263	54
14	Modimolle 2 Primary	Waterberg	01 Apr 2018	31 Mar 2026	26401101	254461	213766	285021	11
15	Mokhari Combined school	Waterberg	01 Apr 2018	31 Mar 2026	38745630	2648179	356634	802427	35

16	Rekhuditse Secondary School	Waterberg	01 Apr 2018	31 Mar 2026	254595409	215067	276096	310608	346
17	Mathulamisha Secondary School	Waterberg	04 Jan 2020	31 Mar 2025	920000	524857	272137	306154	0
18	Manoe Secondary	Waterberg	30 Jun 2019	31 Mar 2025	8235879	539269	1000000	1852012	0
19	Motjere Secondary	Waterberg	04 Jan 2020	31 Mar 2025	329572	497447	1154187	384729	0
20	Mafasa Secondary	Waterberg	04 Jan 2020	31 Mar 2025	920000	507962	764484	254828	0
21	Radibaki Primary	Waterberg	30 Jun 2019	31 Mar 2025	1260000	328102	60255	22595	0
22	Segale Primary	Waterberg	30 Jun 2019	31 Mar 2026	3060238	272767	1494457	560421	1681265
23	Thabang Primary	Waterberg	30 Jun 2019	31 Mar 2025	5342425	320232	1805450	1146360	0
24	Tlou - Matlala Secondary	Waterberg	30 Jun 2019	31 Mar 2025	4516061	301655	682252	649809	0
25	Tshebedi Secondary (Now Konyama primary)	Waterberg	04 Jan 2020	31 Mar 2026	1205200	352281	341167	137927	383813
26	MAKOBÉ CLUSTER (MATLALANE BALTIMORE, MOGALAKWENA CIRUICT OFFICES (CIR) 11013 Construction of Municipal and Civil Services at Makobe Circuit Office (as per Final Compl. Cert.).	Waterberg	01 Apr 2015	31 Mar 2024	6174000	20731	200000	0	0
27	Mokolo Primary	Waterberg	03 Feb 2018	31 Mar 2026	8148837	140710	1213706	1580139	4740419
28	Raserite Primary	Waterberg	03 Feb 2018	30 Mar 2026	3857110	494757	823222	683708	2051125
29	Bysonderheid Laerskool (Replaces Masedi Secondary	Waterberg	03 Feb 2018	31 Mar 2024	2260000	443272	2139728	371599	0

30	Ramokhutlwane Combined School	Waterberg	03 Feb 2018	31 Mar 2025	640000	71017	1253914	1417971	0
31	Tsheesebe Primary	Waterberg	01 Mar 2019	31 Mar 2026	1710516	424357	514463	192923	578771
32	Segoboko Secondary	Waterberg	20 Feb 2019	31 Mar 2026	4783565	416235	1340094	877535	2632606
33	RADINONG SECONDARY SCHOOL	Waterberg	01 Apr 2014	31 Mar 2024	11306000	0	1447168	0	0
34	TETEMA SECONDARY SECONDARY	Waterberg	01 Apr 2014	31 Mar 2026	5512647	0	1152647	0	0
35	Ulando Combined School	Waterberg	04 Jan 2020	31 Mar 2024	3348146	2362557	985590	0	0
36	Mmadikana Secondary	Waterberg	04 Jan 2020	31 Mar 2024	3324000	4340108	1000000	0	0
37	MAPALEDI PRIMARY SCHOOL	Waterberg	13 Oct 2020	31 Mar 2024	4183692	3489399	694293	0	0
38	FEDILE SECONDARY SCHOOL	Waterberg	03 Aug 2020	31 Mar 2024	3234153	1874531	777686	0	0
39	Gojela Secondary	Waterberg	04 Aug 2020	31 Mar 2024	1976166	1678552	297613	0	0
40	Ben Hlongwane Secondary	Waterberg	04 Aug 2020	31 Mar 2024	1099203	1009379	1000000	0	0
41	MASWAHLANE PRIMARY SCHOOL	Waterberg	13 Oct 2020	31 Mar 2024	3115725	2957428	228336	0	0
42	Raserite Secondary	Waterberg	04 Jan 2020	31 Mar 2024	2025474	1874115	151362	0	0
43	Lenkwane Primary	Waterberg	17 Aug 2020	31 Mar 2024	2718860	2682813	711	0	0
44	MORAKOLO SECONDARY SCHOOL	Waterberg	03 Aug 2020	31 Mar 2024	3470182	3462411	7770	0	0

45	BAKENBERG SECONDARY SCHOOL	Waterberg	03 Aug 2020	31 Mar 2024	4539165	4034836	4600	0	0
46	ALFRED MASIBE PRIMARY SCHOOL	Waterberg	04 Aug 2020	31 Mar 2024	4399422	4333830	65592	0	0
47	ZWANANI PRIMARY SCHOOL	Waterberg	03 Aug 2020	31 Mar 2024	4181498	2427969	990286	0	0
48	MOTLHASEDI PRIMARY SCHOOL	Waterberg	03 Aug 2020	31 Mar 2024	2869522	2532548	336973	0	0
49	IKITSENG PRIMARY SCHOOL	Waterberg	03 Aug 2020	31 Mar 2024	4629231	3967792	226087	0	0
50	Baitswe Secondary	Waterberg	04 Jan 2020	31 Mar 2024	2760316	2526596	65450	0	0
51	Monala Primary School	Waterberg	01 Apr 2021	31 Mar 2026	25763595	0	1010000	1773595	5276384
52	SERUPA PRIMARY	Waterberg	01 Feb 2022	31 Mar 2025	5684022	17633	966555	849958	0
53	Leeupoort Laerskool(Replaces Luvhaivhai Sec)	Waterberg	01 Feb 2022	31 Mar 2025	6111628	0	564212	1521404	0
54	MAZWE SECONDARY SCHOOL	Waterberg	01 May 2022	30 Jun 2025	2036364	10694	1328471	1328471	0
55	MPEDI SECONDARY	Waterberg	30 Nov 2022	31 Mar 2024	4015514	0	702456	0	0
56	MALEYA SECONDARY	Waterberg	30 Nov 2022	31 Mar 2024	4301905	0	748467	0	0
57	KAALLEEGTE PRIMARY	Waterberg	30 Nov 2022	31 Mar 2024	3688584	0	1469835	0	0
58	KGOTSORO PRIMARY	Waterberg	30 Nov 2022	31 Mar 2024	4038924	0	843622	0	0
59	LEBONE SPECIAL NEEDS	Waterberg	30 Nov 2022	31 Mar 2024	4725621	0	832754	0	0

60	LECHABA PRIMARY	Waterberg	30 Nov 2022	31 Mar 2024	4192519	0	878587	0	0
61	MOROBA PRIMARY	Waterberg	30 Nov 2022	31 Mar 2024	4367233	0	67046	0	0
62	MOSESANE BALOYI PRIMARY	Waterberg	30 Nov 2022	31 Mar 2024	4980554	0	888162	0	0
63	Dimpe Secondary (replaces MASWIKANANOKO PRIMARY)	Waterberg	01 Apr 2022	31 Mar 2028	3679101	0	1721624	0	0
64	ABBOTSPOORT PRIMARY	Waterberg	01 Apr 2022	30 Mar 2030	3749419	0	1562617	0	0
65	RABODITSE SECONDARY	Waterberg	01 Apr 2022	30 Mar 2030	3639472	0	1319028	0	0
66	E.A. DAVIDSON PRIMARY	Waterberg	01 Apr 2022	30 Mar 2030	3748084	0	1043590	0	0
67	KLIPSPRUIT PRIMARY	Waterberg	01 Apr 2022	30 Mar 2030	3748084	0	1597552	0	0
68	NELLY PRIMARY SCHOOL (REPLACES DITLOU PRIMARY)	Waterberg	01 Apr 2022	31 Mar 2028	4652245	0	1989493	0	0
69	HECTOR PETERSEN PRIMARY	Waterberg	01 Apr 2014	31 Mar 2024	22026000	19720145	1084013	0	0
70	Roedtan Combined	Waterberg	30 Jun 2019	31 Mar 2026	23371181	12727381	2150000	169209	135367
71	RALELEDU SECONDARY	Waterberg	01 Apr 2020	31 Mar 2024	9124000	61921	1161679	0	0
72	MOSHIRA PRIMARY	Waterberg	01 Apr 2014	31 Mar 2024	7520000	0	962560	0	0
73	TSELAPEDI PRIMARY	Waterberg	10 Dec 2010	30 Mar 2024	10305000	4881579	1577571	0	0
74	SEKGODIWA PRIMARY	Waterberg	01 Apr 2011	01 Apr 2024	8410000	0	0	0	0
75	MMAMAKWA PRIMARY	Waterberg	01 Apr 2014	30 Mar 2024	6545000	28330	0	0	0
76	MATSIABABA HIGH	Waterberg	01 Apr 2014	30 Jun 2023	7444000	163344	0	0	0

77	Marken Primary School	Waterberg	01 Apr 2019	31 Mar 2024	4192222	2609469	1815158	0	0
78	Mahlasedi primary(new site)	Waterberg	01 Apr 2014	30 Mar 2024	5742000	714191	1885550	0	0
79	LAERSKOOL ALMA	Waterberg	01 Apr 2014	30 Mar 2024	5276000	361695	1704155	0	0
80	Kgobuki Primary School	Waterberg	30 Jun 2017	30 Mar 2024	4357189	3731339	1883271	0	0
81	Krause Farm Primary School	Waterberg	01 Apr 2015	31 Mar 2024	21318000	8492215	1879482	0	0
82	Reahlahlwa Combined	Waterberg	01 Apr 2019	31 Mar 2024	2550000	0	463684	0	0
83	Frederick Langa Secondary School (Phase 1)	Waterberg	01 Apr 2019	31 Mar 2024	12000000	0	3750000	0	0
84	Mapitikana Primary	Waterberg	01 Apr 2019	31 Mar 2025	1400000	1449654	1476540	1158847	0
85	Rantjie Lower Primary	Waterberg	01 Apr 2019	31 Mar 2025	1940000	904050	2207002	1402334	0
86	Nakonkwetlou Secondary	Waterberg	31 Mar 2019	31 Mar 2024	4058624	3382764	1880053	0	0
87	Ramokgabudi Secondary	Waterberg	01 Apr 2019	31 Mar 2025	4190442	270808	810766	646287	0

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT AND COMMUNITY SAFETY

Programme	District Municipality	Project Description	Project Start Date	Project Completion Date	Budget 2023/24	2024/25	2025/26
Transport Regulation	All Districts	Maintenance of traffic facilities	01/04/2020	31/03/2025	6,688	8000	8,000



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth

Transport Operations	All Districts	Subsidized bus service	April 2022	March 2024	R 773 605 m	Budget not yet determined New Contracts to be introduced	Budget not yet determined New Contracts to be introduced
Transport Operations	All Districts	Public Transport Operating Licensing	Ongoing (Service)	Ongoing (Service)	52 262 m	Budget not yet confirmed	Budget not yet confirmed
Provincial Secretariat for Police Service	All District	YCOP: SAPS supervised patrols by identified youth	Ongoing (Service)	Ongoing (Service)	R12 900m	Budget not yet confirmed	Budget not yet confirmed
Provincial Secretariat for Police Service	All District	CPTED: Cleaning and clearing of contract crime hotspot	Ongoing (Service)	Ongoing (Service)	R7 194M	Budget not yet confirmed	Budget not yet confirmed
Provincial Secretariat for Police Service	All District	Community in Blue	Ongoing (Service)	Ongoing (Service)	R13 095	Budget not yet confirmed	Budget not yet confirmed
Provincial Secretariat for Police Service	All District	Community Safety programmes: Rural safety, Violence against vulnerable groups, Drugs and substance abuse, Volunteerism and Public Participation	Ongoing (Service)	Ongoing (Service)	R25.995	Budget not yet confirmed	Budget not yet confirmed



DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT, ENVIRONMENT & TOURISM

Infrastructure	Project Description	Local Municipality	Status	Latitude	Longitude	Starting date	End date	Total Project Cost	Actual Exp. 2022/23
<i>(Department of Forestry and Fisheries and Environment Affairs)</i>	15km galvanised fence, alterations and renovations of chalets, Restaurant building, store room, laundry room, braai area, hostel block, conference hall, upgrading of swimming pool, construction of new buildings: 20 staff accommodation units, one reserve manager's house gate house and administration buildings. Upgrading of infrastructure such as mechanical reticulation, electrical reticulation and upgrading of water reticulation at Masebe NR	Mogalakwena	Construction	23°38'33.1"S	28°34'29.8"E	01/03/2023	01/03/2024	R45m	R 0.00
Infrastructure (National Department of Tourism)	Refurbishment of ablution facilities, Upgrading of water infrastructure, Maintenance of office at the gate, Reinstallation of signage, Replacement of burnt boardwalks at Makapans Valley WHS	Mogalakwena	Construction	24°09'31.1"S	29°10'37.1"E	01/01/2023	30/06/2023	R 2.5m	R 0.00

DEPARTMENTS ARTS, SPORTS AND RECREATION

NAME OF LOCAL MUNICIPALITY	NAME OF DISTRICT	PROJECTS AND PROGRAMMES FOR 2022/23 F/Y	BUDGET
Thabazimbi Municipality	Waterberg District	Maintenance of existing Library Thabazimbi Library	R1,504,000,00
Lephalale Municipality	Waterberg District	Maintenance of existing Library Lephalale Library	R674,000,00
Belabela Municipality	Waterberg District	Construction of new Library Botshabelo Library	R6,603,000,00

ESKOM

Munic Name	Project Name	Planned Capex	YTD Capex	Planned Connections	Actual Connections	Comments
Lephalale	Mashemong Ext	R5 012 702.42	R1 946 092	250	0	Project in progress
Lephalale	Seleka 4 Ext	R1 775 499.20	R892 115	77	0	Project handed Over
Lephalale	Shongoane 3 Ext	R1 291 272.14	R1 032 153	50		Project in progress
Total Lephalale		R 8 079 473.76	R3 870 360	377	0	
Mogalakwena	Mzombani	R 3 007 621.45		368	0	Project in progress –awaiting concrete poles
Mogalakwena	Phafola Ext	R 1 314 330.57		157	0	Finalising the design detail

Mogalakwena	Gilead Substation	R2 506 351.21				ERA approved and awaiting contractor appointment.
Total Mogalakwena		R 6 828 303.23	525	0		

10.6 WATERBERG – BUDGET SUMMARY

CHAPTER 11 - INTERGRATION PHASE

Integration takes place in the form of the various sector plans which are considered when crafting strategies and identifying projects which the municipality will eventually execute.

11.1 STATUS OF SECTOR PLANS

FOCUS	YEAR OF REVIEW
Spatial Development Framework	In place and adopted by council in 2021
Disaster Management Plan	2020/21 review/update (as it is done bi-annually.)
District Integrated Transport Plans	2013/14 (Five Years)
Local Economic Development Strategy	In place and adopted by council. Reviewed in 2014.
Communication Strategy	In place and adopted by council.
Public participation Strategy	Awaiting consolidation of inputs and approval by council

Finance Strategy	Addressed in Finance Chapter of IDP (locals should have their own), IDP not found lacking so due to already strained funds available for IDP, this is not a priority project. Finance Strategy should include Revenue Enhancement Strategy, but we are fully dependent on grants.
Performance Management Framework	Reviewed 2022/23 FY.
PMS	No electronic system manually captured.
Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan	Reviewed together with IDP & Budget 2022/23 FY.
Organisational Structure	Reviewed 2021
Draft 2023/24 Budget	Review, together with IDP 2023/24FY.
Workplace Skills Plan	WSP review process underway and will be submitted to LGSETA by the 30 April 2022.
Employment Equity Plan	In place and adopted by Council 2022/23
Road Master Plan - infrastructure Investment framework	The municipality does not have the plan
Record Management Plan	-
HRM&D Strategy	In place.
Waste Management Plan	Reviewed and submitted to LEDET for approval by MEC.
Fraud Risk Management Strategy -Whistle blow policy -Fraud Respond plan -Code of conduct of municipal employees and council	Reviewed (every financial year).
Financial Plan	The Budget is the WDM financial plan (incl. MTREF).
Capital Investment Plan	In place.
Tourism Development Strategy	

Agricultural Strategy	LED strategy in place (incorporates all the sectors).
Environmental Management Plan	Reviewed and submitted to LEDET for approval by MEC.
HIV /Aids Plan	In place.
Air Quality Management Plan	Management plan and Emission Inventory Completed.
Health Plan	-
Social Crime Prevention Strategy	-
Risk management Strategy	Reviewed.
IDP	Reviewed
Sport Arts & Culture	-
Integrated Transport Plan	ITP in place

NB: All these Sector Plans are accessible at WDM and can be made available on request.

11.2 STATUS OF SECTOR PLANS AND YEAR REVIEWED PER MUNICIPALITY

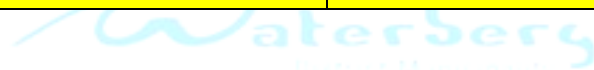
Municipality	IDP	SDF	SPLUMA	LED
Thabazimbi	Annually	2014	2022-2023	2021-2025
Lephalale	Annually	2022-2023	2022-2023	2022
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Annually	2010	2019	2021-2025
Belabela	Annually	2019	2019	2009
Mogalakwena	Annually	2019	2018	2018

© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

Municipality	Water Master Plan	Sanitation Master Plan	Energy Master Plan	Human Settlement Plan
Thabazimbi	2017	2016	2014	Not Available
Lephalale	2015	2019	2018	2018
Modimolle-Mookgophong	2020	2018	Not Available	2010-2015
Belabela	2013	2016	Not Available	2009
Mogalakwena	2016	2019	Not Available	2019

Municipality	Infrastructure Investment plan	Fraud and Anti-corruption strategy	Communication strategy	Workplace Skills Plan
Thabazimbi	Not Available	Not Available	2019	30 April Every Year
Lephalale	2018	2021	2021-2022	30 April Every Year
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Not Available	2020	2016	30 April Every Year
Bela-bela	2014	2009	2018	30 April Every Year
Mogalakwena	2013	2018	2019	30 April Every Year

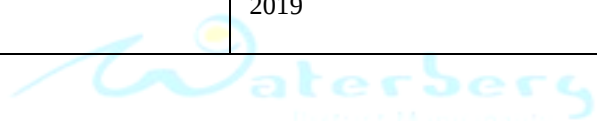
Municipality	Employment Equity Plan	Risk Management Strategy	Road and Storm Water Master Plan	Integrated Transport Plan
--------------	------------------------	--------------------------	----------------------------------	---------------------------



Thabazimbi	2019	2019	Not Available	Not Available
Lephalale	2019-2020	2021	2018	2019
Modimolle-Mookgophong	2020-2021	2021-2022	Not Available	Not Available
Belabela	2020-2021	2019	2016	2009
Mogalakwena	2020-2021	2020-2021	Not Available	2018

Municipality	Integrated Environmental Plan	Integrated Waste Management	Assets Management Plan	Complain Management System
Thabazimbi	Not Available	2019	Not Available	Not Available
Lephalale	2022	Not Available	2019	2021
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Not Available	2019	2013	2018
Belabela	2006	2014	2017	2019
Mogalakwena	2019	Not Available	2018	2014

Municipality	Public Parcipation Strategy	Revenue Enhancement Strategy	Water Service Dev Plan	Road and Storm Water Operational and manitanance Plan
Thabazimbi	Not Available	Not Available	2012	2016
Lephalale	2022	2019	2018	2017



Modimolle-Mookgophong	2016	2019	Not Available	2018
Belabela	Not Available	2019	2014	2016
Mogalakwena				2016

Municipality	Tourism Development Strategy	Disaster Management Plan	Air Quality Master Plan
Thabazimbi	2019	2019	Not Available
Lephalale	2018	2019	2019
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Not Available	2020	Not Available
Belabela	Not Available	2019	Not Available
Mogalakwena	Not Available	2018	Not Available

CHAPTER 12 - APPROVAL PHASE

Final 2023/24 IDP document was approved Council on the 30 May 2023.



© Waterberg District Municipality 2023/2024 IDP

on the Go for Growth